



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

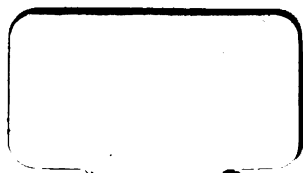
### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08157029 7











**C. SALLUSTII CRISPI**  
**OPERA:**

**ADAPTED TO THE HAMILTONIAN SYSTEM**

**BY A**

**LITERAL AND ANALYTICAL TRANSLATION.**

**BY**

103 ✓  
**JAMES HAMILTON,**

**AUTHOR OF THE HAMILTONIAN SYSTEM.**

---

**A NEW AND MORE ACCURATE EDITION.**

**CAREFULLY REVISED, CORRECTED, AND OMISSIONS SUPPLIED; AND  
WHAT IS OBSCURE OR UNINTELLIGIBLE, IN HAMILTON'S  
TRANSLATION, EXPLAINED.**

**THOMAS CLARK.**

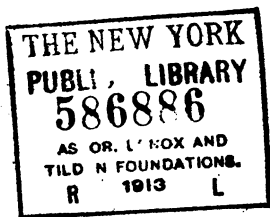
**PHILADELPHIA:**  
**CHARLES DESILVER,**

**No. 714 CHESTNUT STREET.**

**W. B. K E E N,**  
**148 LAKE STREET, CHICAGO.**

**1860.**





---

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1857, by  
CHARLES DESILVER,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern  
District of Pennsylvania.

---

2207 W33  
21804  
VBA321

## PREFACE.

---

THIS American edition of Hamilton's interlinear Sallust has been carefully revised, the errors corrected, and the omissions in the London edition supplied; for, without the greatest care on the part of the translator, such omissions often occur in interlinear translations. These omissions are indicated, in this edition, by placing the English words in brackets [ ] under the Latin, as, page 40:

Permixture vino.  
[Mingled with wine.]

Permixture vino has, through oversight, been omitted in the text; so also in page 45:

Genere atque formâ præterea;  
[In lineage and beauty surpasser;]

and in page 50:

Pro magnitudine rei publicæ.  
[For the greatness of the republic.]

Here are three important omissions in the space of ten pages; and these omissions occur nearly in the same proportion throughout the London edition.

By a strict adherence to the Hamiltonian plan of translating, many English sentences will be formed, not only very uncouth, but also often unintelligible.

This Hamilton has sometimes sought to obviate, by adding explanatory sentences in parenthesis ( ), as :

Quid reliqui habemus.

What of remaining have we. (What have we left).

But still he has left many sentences unintelligible, or nearly so. Such sentences the American editor has explained by adding words or sentences included in brackets [ ] instead of the parentheses ( ) of Hamilton, as :

Iipse esse cum telo, item jubere alios;

He himself was with a weapon, also to order others; [he himself was armed,

Festinare dies que noctes.

and ordered others to be so]. To hasten days and nights. [He was actively employed day and night.]

In the following sentences, though explanatory words have been inserted by Hamilton, still the sentences are left obscure; and the American editor has found it necessary to explain them by sentences in brackets, [ ], as :

Familiarem rem deesse nobis etiam ad necessaria.  
Private things (property) to be wanting to us even to (for) necessary

Ulti maxumè  
(matters). [While we want the necessities of life] : Having avenged chiefly

nostrum sanguinem. . . . . Alia  
(best) our blood. [After having sold our lives dearly.] Another

licentia est aliis. . . . .  
(different) license is to different (persons); [There is a difference in the freedom of action.]

It was necessary to make similar explanations also in a great many other sentences throughout the book.

THOMAS CLARK.

# TESTIMONIALS

AS TO

THE MERITS OF

## The Interlinear Translation of the Classics.

---

*Testimony of celebrated men in favour of the interlineary system of translations, as being best adapted for learning a language.*

MILTON.—We do amiss to spend seven or eight years merely in scraping together as much Latin and Greek as might be learned easily and delightfully in one year.

If, after some preparatory grounds of speech by their certain forms got into memory, they were led to the *praxis* thereof in some chosen short book *lessoned thoroughly to them*, [that is, read and translated to them], which would bring the whole language quickly into their power. This I take to be the most natural and most profitable way of learning languages.

[Children] should begin with the chief and necessary rules of some good grammar, either that now used, or any better; and while this is doing, their speech is to be fashioned to a distinct and clear pronunciation, as near as may be to the Italian, especially in the vowels. Next, to make them expert in the usefulest points of grammar, some easy and delightful book should be read to them.

[By this, Milton means that the teacher should read some easy Latin book to his pupils, and translate and explain it repeatedly, until they understand such Latin book, and can themselves translate it.]

JOHN LOCKE, author of the "Essay on the Human Understanding."—When I consider what ado is made about a little Latin and Greek, how many years are spent in it, and what a noise and business it makes to no purpose, I can hardly forbear thinking that the parents of children still live in fear of the schoolmaster's rod, which they look on as the only instrument of education; as a language or two to be his whole business. How else is it possible that a child should be chained to the oar, seven, eight, or ten of the best years of his life, to get a language or two, which, I think, might be had at a great deal cheaper rate of pains and time, and be learned almost in playing.

[The first project of Locke] is to trouble the child with no grammar at all, but to have Latin as English has been, without the perplexity of rules, talked into him, for, if you will consider it, Latin is no more unknown to a child, when he comes into the world, than English; and yet he learns English without a master, rule, or grammar; and so might he Latin, too, as Tully did, if he had somebody always to talk to him in this language. And when we so often see a French woman teach an English girl to speak and read French perfectly in a year or two, without any rule of grammar, or anything else but prattling to her, I cannot but wonder how gentlemen have overseen this way for their sons. If, therefore, a man could be got, who, himself speaking good Latin, would always be about your son, talk constantly to him, and suffer him to speak and read nothing else, this would be the true and genuine way, and that which I would propose, not only as the easiest and best, wherein a child might, without pains or chiding, get a language which others are wont to be whipt for at school six or seven years together; but also as that wherein, at the same time, he might have his mind and manners formed, and be instructed in all other parts of knowledge of things that fall under the senses, and require little more than memory. But if such a man cannot be got who speaks good Latin, the next best thing is to have him taught as near this way as may be, which is by taking some easy and pleasant book, such as *Æsop's Fables*, and writing the English translation (made as literal as can be) in one line, and the Latin words which answer each of them, just over it in another. These let him read every day, over and over again, till he perfectly understands the Latin; and then go on to another Fable,

till he is also perfect in that, not omitting what he is already perfect in, but sometimes reviewing that to keep it in his memory.

The formation of the verb first, and afterwards the declensions of the nouns and pronouns, perfectly learned by heart, facilitate his acquaintance with the genius and manner of the Latin tongue, which varies the signification of verbs and nouns, not as the modern languages do, by particles prefixed, but by changing the last syllable. More than this of grammar, I think, he need not have, till he can read himself Sanctii Minerva.

As he advances in acquiring a knowledge of words, he must advance, *pari passu*, in obtaining a thorough and critical knowledge of grammar. When by this way of interlining Latin and English one with another, he has got a moderate knowledge of the Latin tongue, he may then be advanced a little farther, to the reading of some other easy Latin book, such as Justin, or Eutropius; and, to make the reading and understanding of it the less tedious and difficult to him, let him help himself with the English translation. Nor let the objection, that he will then know it only by rote, fright any one. This, when well considered, is not of any moment against, but plainly for, this way of learning a language. For languages are only to be learned by rote; and a man who does not speak English and Latin perfectly by rote, so that having thought of the thing he would speak of, his tongue, of course without thought of rule or grammar, falls into the proper expression and idiom of that language, does not speak it well, nor is master of it. Languages were made, not by rules of art, but by accident, and the common use of the people; and he that speaks them well has no other rule but that, nor anything to trust to but his memory, and the habit of speaking, after the fashion learned from those that are allowed to speak properly, which, in other words, is only to speak by rote.

SYDNEY SMITH.—The Hamiltonian system, on the other hand: 1st. Teaches an unknown tongue by the closest interlinear translations, instead of leaving a boy to explore his way by the lexicon or dictionary. 2d. It postpones the study of grammar till a considerable progress has been made in the language, and a great degree of practical grammar has been acquired. 3d. It substitutes the cheerfulness and competition of the Lancasterian

system for the dull solitude of the dictionary. By these means a boy finds he is making a progress, and learning something from the very beginning. He is not overwhelmed with the first appearance of insuperable difficulties; he receives some little pay from the first moment of his apprenticeship, and is not compelled to wait for remuneration till he is out of his time. The student, having acquired the great art of understanding the sense of what is written in another tongue, may go into the study of the language as deeply and as extensively as he pleases. The old system aims at beginning with a depth and accuracy which many men never will want, which disgusts many from arriving even at moderate attainments, and is a less easy, and not more certain road to a profound skill in a language, than if attention to grammar had been deferred to a later period.

In fine, we are strongly persuaded that, the time being given, this system will make better scholars; and, the degree of scholarship being given, a much shorter time will be needed. If there is any truth in this, it will make Mr. Hamilton one of the most useful men of his age; for, if there is anything which fills reflecting men with melancholy and regret, it is the waste of mortal time, parental money, and puerile happiness, in the present method of pursuing Latin and Greek.



*Virgil, Horace, Cæsar, Cicero, and Sallust, have already been published on the interlinear plan, and will be succeeded by the other classics (Greek as well as Latin) as speedily as is consistent with accurate preparation, and the importance of the undertaking.*

CHARLES DESILVER,

714 Chesnut Street, Phila.

KEEN & LEE,

148 Lake Street, Chicago.

# SALLUSTII CATILINA.

## SALLUST'S CATILINE.

~~~~~

DECET omnis (omnes) homines, qui student  
 It becomes all men, who study  
 sese præstare cæteris animalibus, niti  
 themselves to excel to other animals, to endeavour with [their]  
 summâ ope ne transeant vitam silentio  
 utmost might (that) they may not-pass [their] life in silence  
 veluti pecora, quæ natura finxit prona atque  
 even-as cattle, which nature has formed prone and  
 obedientia ventri. Sed omnis nostra vis est  
 obedient to the belly. But all our force is  
 sita animo et corpore. Utimur imperio animi,  
 situate in mind and body. We use the command of the mind,  
 magis servitio corporis. Alterum est  
 more (than) the service of the body. The other (the one) is  
 commune nobis cum Dîs, alterum cum belluis.  
 common to us with the gods, the other with beasts.  
 Quo videtur mihi rectius quærere gloriam opibus  
 By which it seems to me more-right to seek glory by the powers  
 ingenii quam virium, et quoniam  
 of the understanding than of forces (bodily strength), and since  
 vita ipsa, quâ fruimur est brevis efficere  
 the life self, which we enjoy is short to effect [make]  
 memoriam nostri quam maximè longam.  
 the memory (remembrance) of us as most long.  
 Nam gloria divitiarum et formæ  
 [Endure most long.] For the glory of riches and of shape



est fluxa atque fragilis; virtus habetur  
(beauty) is fleeting and frail; virtue is had

clara que æterna. Sed magnum certamen  
(accounted) bright and eternal. But a great contest

fuit diu inter mortalis (mortales), ne militaris  
has been a long-time between mortals, whether military

res procederet magis vi corporis, an  
thing (æctics) would advance more by force of body, or

virtute animi. Nam et priusquam incipias  
by virtue of mind. For and (even) before-that thou mayest begin

est opus consulto, et ubi  
(thou beginnest) (there) is need with (of) deliberation, and when

consulueris facto  
thou mayest have deliberated (hast deliberated) of deed [need of doing]

mature. Ita utrumque indigens per se, alterum  
seasonably. So either (is) defective by self, the other

eget auxilio alterius. Igitur initio  
(the one) wants the aid of the other. Therefore in the beginning

reges (nam id fuit primum nomen imperii in  
kings (for that has been the first name of government in

terris) diversi pars exercebant  
the lands) (world) different (in disposition) part did exercise

ingenium, alii corpus: etiam tum vita  
the understanding, others the body: also then the life

hominum agitabatur sine cupiditate, sua  
of men was spent without covetousness, their-own

satis placebant cuique. Verò postea quam  
were-sufficiently-pleasing [to] every-one. But after that

Cyrus in Asiâ, Lacedæmonii et Athenienses  
Cyrus in Asia, (and) the Lacedæmonians and Athenians

in Græciâ, coepère subigere urbes atque nationes;  
in Greece, began to subdue cities and nations;

habere lubidinem dominandi causam  
to have [began to consider] the lust of ruling a cause

belli, putare maxumam gloriam in  
of war, [and] to think [that] the greatest glory [was] in

maximo imperio; tum demum compertum est  
the greatest command; then at length it was found

periculis atque negotiis, ingenium plurimum posse  
 by dangers and affairs, [that] the understanding to be most-powerful  
 in bello. Quòd si virtus animi  
 (could effect most) in war. But if the virtue of the mind  
 regum atque imperatorum valeret, ita in  
 of kings and of commanders might prevail, [equally] so in  
 pace ut in bello, humanæ res haberent sese  
 peace as in war, human things would have themselves  
 æquabilis atque constantius; neque  
 (would be) more-even and more-steady; neither  
 cerneres aliud ferri aliò, neque  
 wouldst thou perceive another (one thing) to be borne elsewhere, neither  
 omnia mutari ac misceri. Nam imperium  
 all (things) to be changed and to be mingled. For government  
 retinetur faciliè iis artibus, quibus initio  
 is retained easily by those arts, by which in the beginning  
 partum est. Verum ubi pro labore, desidia;  
 it was-acquired. But when instead-of labour, idleness;  
 pro continentia et æquitate, libido atque  
 instead-of continence and equity, lust and  
 superbia invasère, fortuna immutatur simul  
 pride came-in (seized), fortune is changed together  
 cum moribus. Ita imperium transfertur semper à  
 with manners. So authority is transferred always from  
 minus bono ad quemque optimum. Quæ  
 (the) less good (man) to each best. Whatever  
 homines arant, navigant, ædificant,  
 (things) men plough, navigate, build, (agriculture, navi-  
 omnia parent virtuti. Sed  
 gation, architecture), all obey to virtue (mental powers). But  
 multi mortales, dediti ventri, atque somno, indocti  
 many mortals, addicted to the belly, and to sleep, untaught  
 que inculti, transiêre vitam sicuti  
 and unpolished, have passed life as (persons)  
 peregrinantes: quibus profecto contra naturam  
 travelling: to whom indeed [contrary to nature] (their)  
 corpus fuit voluptati, anima oneri. Ego  
 body has been for pleasure, the soul for a burden. I

æstumo vitam que mortem eorum juxta, quoniam  
estimate the life and death of them equally, since

siletur de utrâque. Verùm enimvero  
it is silent (nothing is said) concerning each. But truly

is demum videtur mihi vivere et frui animâ, qui,  
he at length appears to me to live and to enjoy life, who,

intentus aliquo negotio, quærit famam præclari  
intent on some business, seeks the fame of illustrious

facinoris aut bonæ artis. Sed in magnâ copiâ  
enterprise or of good art. But in the great abundance

rerum, natura ostendit aliud iter  
of things, nature points-out another (different) journey (course)

alii. Est pulchrum benefacere reipublicæ,  
to another (person). It is fair to do-well to the republic,

etiam benedicere est haud absurdum. Licet  
also to speak-well is not absurd. It is-lawful

feri clarum vel pace vel bello: et multi  
to be made illustrious either by peace or by war: and many

laudantur, qui fecêre, et qui scripsêre facta  
are praised, who have done, and who have written deeds

aliorum. Ac tametsi par gloria haudquaquam  
of others. And although equal glory by-no-means

sequatur scriptorem et actorem rerum, tamen  
may follow (follows) the writer and actor of things, yet

videtur quidem mihi in primis arduum scribere res  
it seems [indeed to me] particularly difficult to write things

gestas: primùm, quòd facta sunt exæquanda  
carried-on (history): first, because deeds are to-be-equalled

dictis; dein quia plerique putant  
by sayings (language); afterwards because most think

delicta, quæ reprehenderis, dicta  
the faults, which thou mayest have reprovèd, (to be) said from

malevolentia et invidia; ubi memores de magnâ  
ill-will and envy; when thou mayest record of the great

virtute bonorum; quæ quisque putet  
virtue of good (men); whatever (things) each may think

facilia factu sibi, accipit æquo  
(thinks) easy to be done to (by) himself, he receives with even

**animo; supra ducit pro falsis, veluti**  
 mind; beyond (that) he leads (deems) [all] for false, [or] as  
**ficta. Sed ego, adolescentulus, initio latus sum**  
 feigned. But I, a very-young-man, in the beginning was-borne  
**studio\* ad Rempublicam; que ibi multa**  
 by inclination to the Republic; and there many (things)  
**fuere adversa mihi. Nam audacia, largitio,**  
 have been adverse to me. For boldness, bribery,  
**avaritia, vigeabant pro pudore, pro abstinentiâ,**  
 covetousness, did flourish instead-of modesty, instead-of abstinence,  
**pro virtute; quæ tametsi animus**  
 instead-of virtue; which (things) although (my) mind  
**insolens malarum artium, aspernabatur;**  
 unaccustomed of (to) bad arts, did despise;  
**tamen imbecilla ætas, corrupta ambitione, tenebatur**  
 yet (my) weak age, corrupted by ambition, was held  
**inter tanta vitia. Ac cum dissentirem ab**  
 among so-great vices. And when I would dissent from  
**reliquis malis moribus, nihilominus eadem cupido**  
 the rest (others') bad manners, nevertheless the same desire  
**honoris, quæ vexabat cæteros, fama et invidia**  
 of honour, which did harass the rest, fame and envy  
**(vexabant) me. Igitur ubi animus requievit ex**  
 (did harass) me. Therefore when (my) mind rested from  
**multis miseriis atque periculis, et decrevi**  
 many miseries and dangers, and I resolved [that] (my)  
**reliquam ætatem habendam procul**  
 remaining age to-be-had [should] (be passed) at-a-distance  
**à Republicâ, non fuit consilium**  
 from the Republic (public affairs), it has not-been (my) design  
**conterere bonum otium socordiâ atque desidiâ; neque**  
 to consume good leisure in sloth and idleness; nor  
**verò agere ætatem, intentum servilibus**  
 truly to act (spend) age (my life), intent on servile  
**officiis, colendo agrum aut venando: sed**  
 offices, in cultivating field (land) or in hunting: but

\* Or, from study, which it appears is the author's meaning, from what follows; "sed à quo incepto studioque me mala ambitio," &c.

regressus eodem, à quo incepto que  
 having returned to the same (pursuit), from which undertaking and  
 studio, mala ambitio detinuerat me, statui  
 study, bad ambition had detained me, I resolved  
 perscribere res gestas Romani  
 to write-through things carried-on (the achievements) of the Roman  
 populi carptim, uti quæque videbantur digna  
 people with-selection, as each did seem worthy (of)  
 memoriâ: magis eò, quòd animus erat  
 memory: more on-this-account, because (my) mind was  
 liber mihi à spe, metu, partibus Reipublicæ.  
 free to me from hope, fear, [and the] factions of the Republic.  
 Igitur absolvam paucis de  
 Therefore I will acquit (dispose) in a few (words) concerning [I will  
 conjuratione Catilinæ quam  
 relate in a few words] the conspiracy of Catiline as  
 verissumè potero. Nam existumo id facinus  
 most-truly [as] I shall be-able. For I think that enterprise  
 in primis memorabile novitate sceleris atque  
 particularly memorable from the novelty of (its) wickedness and  
 periculi: de moribus cujus hominis pauca  
 danger: concerning the morals of which man a few (things)  
 sunt explananda, prius quam faciam initium  
 are to-be-explained, before-that I may make (I make) a beginning  
 narrandi.  
 of relating.

Lucius Catilina, natus nobili genere,  
 Lucius Catiline, born (descended) of a noble race,  
 fuit magnâ vi et animi et corporis,  
 was (a man) (of) great strength and (both) of mind and of body,  
 sed malo que pravo ingenio. Intestina bella,  
 but (of) a bad and depraved disposition. Intestine wars,  
 cædes, rapinæ, civilis discordia fuere grata huic  
 slaughters, rapines, civil discord were agreeable to this  
 ab adolescentiâ; que ibi exercuit  
 (man) from (his) youth; and there (in them) he exercised  
 suam juventutem. Corpus patiens inediæ,  
 his youth. (His) body (was) patient of hunger,

algoris, vigiliæ, supra quàm est  
 of cold, of watchfulness (want of sleep), beyond than (what) is  
 credibile cuiquam: animus audax, subdolanus,  
 credible to any-one: (his) mind adventurous, crafty,  
 varius, simulator ac dissimulator cujuslibet rei,  
 changeable, a counterfeiter and dissembler of any thing,  
 appetens alieni, profusus sui; ardens in  
 desirous of another's (property), lavish of his own; ardent in  
 cupiditatibus; satis eloquentiæ, parum sapientiæ;  
 desires; (he had) sufficient of eloquence, little of wisdom;

vastus animus semper cupiebat immoderata,  
 (his) vast mind always did desire extravagant,  
 incredibilia, nimis alta. Post dominationem  
 incredible, (and) too high (things). After the domination

Lucii Sullæ, maxuma lubido republicæ  
 (usurpation) of Lucius Sylla, a very-great lust (ambition) of the republic

capiundæ invaserat hunc, neque  
 to be-taken (of seizing the republic) had seized him, nor

habebat quidquam pensi quibus  
 had he any of thought [nor did he care] by what

modis assequeretur id, dum pararet regnum  
 means he might attain that, while he should procure the kingdom

sibi. Ferox animus agitabatur magis que  
 for himself. (His) fierce mind was agitated more and

magis in dies, inopiâ familiaris rei,  
 more daily, from want of familiar thing (private property),

et conscientiâ scelerum; utraque quæ auxerat  
 and a consciousness of crimes; both which he had increased

his artibus, quas memoravi supra:  
 by those arts (practices), which I have recorded above:

præterea corrupti mores civitatis incitabant,  
 moreover the corrupt manners of the state did incite (him),

quos, luxuria atque avaritia, pessuma mala,  
 which (manners), luxury and avarice, the worst evils,

ac diversa inter se, vexabant.  
 and different between themselves, did harass (did pervert).

Res ipsa videtur hortari, quoniam  
 The thing (subject) self seems to exhort (me), since

tempus admonuit de moribus civitatis,  
 time (the occasion) has reminded (me) of the manners of the state,  
 repetere supra ac disserere paucis  
 to retrace above [farther back] and discuss in a few (words)  
 instituta majorum domi que militiæ,  
 the institutions of (our) ancestors at-home and abroad [in war],  
 quomodo habuerint rempublicam,  
 in-what-manner they may have had (they managed) the republic,  
 que quantam reliquerint, et disserere  
 and how-great they may have left (they left it), and [to discuss]  
 ut paulatim immutata, facta sit  
 how by-degrees having been changed, it may have been made  
 pessuma ac flagitiosissima ex  
 (it became) the worst and most-disgraceful from (having been)  
 pulcherrimâ.  
 the fairest.

Trojani, sicut ego accepi, initio,  
 The Trojans, as I have received (have heard), in the beginning,  
 condidère atque habuère urbem Romam;  
 (first) built and had (inhabited) the city Rome;  
 qui, Æneâ duce, profugi vagabantur  
 who, Æneas (being their) leader, [as] exiles did wander  
 incertis sedibus; que cum his  
 in uncertain seats (having no fixed habitation); and with these  
 Aborigines, agreste genus hominum, sine legibus,  
 the Aborigines, a rustic race of men, without laws,  
 liberam atque solutum. Postquam hi  
 free and loosed (unrestrained). After-that they  
 convenère ibi in una mœnia dispari  
 assembled there into one (the same) walls (city) of different  
 genere, dissimili linguâ, viventes alius alio  
 race, of dissimilar language, living one (each) in a different  
 more, est incredibile memoratu, quam facile  
 custom, it is incredible to-be-recorded, how easily  
 coaluerint. Sed postquam  
 they may have coalesced (they incorporated). But after-that  
 res eorum aucta civibus, moribus,  
 the thing (state) of them having been increased by citizens, morals

agris, videbatur satis prospera, que  
 (moral institutions), lands, did appear sufficiently prosperous, and  
 satis pollens, invidia orta est ex opulentia,  
 sufficiently powerful, envy arose out-of opulence,  
 sicuti pleraque mortalium habentur.  
 as most of mortal (things) are had (are conducted).

Igitur reges que finitimi populi  
 Therefore kings and neighbouring peoples (people) (began)  
 tentare bello. Pauci ex amicis esse auxilio.  
 to-try (them) in war. A few of (their) friends to be for aid

Nam cæteri, perculsi metu, aberant  
 (brought them aid). For the rest, stricken with fear, kept-alooof  
 à periculis. At Romani, intenti domi. que  
 from dangers. But the Romans, intent at-home and  
 militiæ, festinare, parare, alius  
 of war (abroad), (began) to hasten, to prepare, the other (one)

hortari alium ire obviam hostibus; tegere  
 to exhort another to go towards the enemies; to protect  
 libertatem, patriam, que parentes armis.  
 liberty, (their) country, and parents with arms.

Post ubi propulerant pericula virtute  
 Afterward when they had repulsed dangers by virtue (valour)  
 portabant auxilia sociis atque amicis; que parabant  
 they did carry aids to allies and friends; and did prepare  
 amicitias magis beneficiis dandis quàm  
 (procure) friendships rather by favours to-be-given than  
 accipiundis.

to be received. [Rather by giving, than by receiving favours.]

Habebant legitimum imperium, regium nomen  
 They did have a legitimate government, a royal name

imperii: delecti quibus corpus erat infirmum  
 of government: chosen (men) to whom the body was weak

annis, ingenium validum sapientiâ,  
 by years, (their) understanding strong with wisdom,

consultabant reipublicæ. Hi, vel  
 did consult (legislate) for the republic. These, either from (their)

ætate vel similitudine curæ, appellabantur  
 age or from the similitude of (their) care, were called



**Patres.**      **Post**      **ubi**      **regium**      **imperium,**      **quod**  
 Fathers.      Afterwards      when      the royal      government,      which

**initio**      **fuera**t      **libertatis**  
 in the beginning      had been (established) (for the sake)      of liberty

**conservandæ, atque reipublicæ augendæ, convertit**  
 to-be-preserved,      and      of the republic to-be-increased,      turned

**in superbiam que dominationem,**      **more**  
 (itself) into      pride      and      tyranny,      (their) practice

**immutato, fecere sibi annua imperia,**  
 having been changed, they made for themselves annual governments,

**binos imperatores: eo modo putabant humanum**  
 two      rulers:      by that means they did think      the human

**animum posse minimè inolescere per licentiam.**  
 mind      to-be-able      least to-grow-insolent through excess-of-power.

**Sed eâ tempestate cœpere quisque extollere**  
 But      at that      time      they began      each      to extol

**se magis que magis, que habere**  
 (exert) himself      more      and      more,      and      to have (his)

**ingenium in promptu: nam boni**  
 understanding in readiness:      for good [and talented] (men)

**sunt suspensiores regibus quàm mali; que**  
 are      more-suspected to kings      than      bad [and stupid]; and

**aliena virtus est semper formidolosa his.**  
 strange (another's) virtue is always formidable to these.

**Sed est incredibile memoratu, quantum civitas**  
 But it is      incredible      to be recorded,      how-much      the state

**creverit brevì, libertate**  
 may have increased (increased)      in a-short-time,      liberty

**adeptâ: tanta cupido gloriæ incesserat.**  
 having been obtained:      so-great      a desire of glory      had come-in.

**Jamprimum juvenus, simul-ac erat**  
 Now-first      the youth,      as-soon-as      it was (they were)

**patiens belli, discebat in castris militiam**  
 able-to-endure      war,      did learn      in      the camps      war

**usu per laborem; que habebat lubidinem**  
 from habit through exercise;      and      did have      pleasure

**magis in decoris armis, et militaribus equis, quàm**  
 rather in beautiful arms, and military horses, than

in scortis atque conviviis. Igitur labos erat non  
 in harlots and banquets. Therefore labour was not  
 insolitus talibus viris, non-ullus locus asper aut  
 unusual to-such men, not-any place rough or  
 arduus; armatus hostis non formidolosus:  
 difficult (inaccessible); an armed enemy [was] not formidable:  
 virtus domuerat omnia. Sed maxumum certamen  
 virtue had subdued all (things). But a very-great contest  
 gloriæ erat inter ipsos: quisque properabat ferire  
 for glory was among them: each did hasten to strike  
 hostem, ascendere murum, conspici dum faceret  
 the enemy, to scale the wall, to be-beheld whilst he might do  
 tale facinus: putabant eas divitias,  
 (did perform) such enterprise: they did think these riches,  
 eam bonam famam, que magnam nobilitatem.  
 that good fame, and great nobility (distinction).  
 Erant avidi laudis, liberales pecuniæ; volebant  
 They were desirous of praise, liberal of money; they did will  
 ingentem gloriam, honestas divitias. Possem  
 (wished for) great glory, honourable riches. I could  
 memorare in quibus locis Romanus populus  
 to relate in what places the Roman people  
 fuderit maxumas copias hostium parva  
 may have routed (routed) very-great forces of the enemies with a small  
 manu; quas urbes munitas naturâ  
 band; what cities fortified by nature (they) [the Roman people]  
 ceperit pugnando, ni ea res  
 may have taken (they took) in-fighting, unless that thing  
 traheret nos longius ab incepto. Sed  
 would draw us farther (too far) from (our) undertaking. But  
 profectò fortuna dominatur in omni re; ea celebrat  
 indeed fortune controls in every thing; she celebrates  
 que obscurat cunctas res magis ex lubidine  
 and eclipses (depresses) all things rather from caprice  
 quàm ex vero. Res gestæ  
 than from truth (merit). The things carried-on (deeds)  
 Atheniensium, sicut ego existumo, fuere satis  
 of the Athenians, as I think, have been sufficiently

amplæ que magnificæ; verùm tamen aliquanto  
 ample (great) and magnificent; but however by somewhat  
 minores quàm feruntur famâ: sed quia  
 less than they are borne (represented) by fame: but because  
 magna ingenia scriptorum provenere ibi,  
 great understandings (abilities) of writers sprang-up there,  
 facta Atheniensium celebrantur per terrarum  
 the deeds of the Athenians are celebrated through the whole  
 orbem pro maxumis. Ita virtus eorum, qui  
 world for the greatest. So the virtue of those, who  
 fecere ea, habetur tanta, quantum  
 have done those (things), is accounted so-great, as  
 præclara ingenia potuere extollere  
 the brilliant understandings (of their writers) have been able to extol  
 ea, verbis. At ea copia nunquam  
 them [by their writings]. But that abundance (of writers) never  
 fuit Romano populo: quia quisque  
 has been to the Roman people: because each  
 prudentissimus erat maxumè negotiosus: nemo  
 most-skillful (man) was most active: no-one  
 exercebat ingenium sine corpore: quisque  
 did exercise the understanding without the body: each  
 optumus malebat facere quam dicere;  
 best (man) did rather-wish to do than to say [and to have];  
 sua benefacta laudari ab aliis, quam ipse narrare  
 his-own good-deeds to be praised by others, than he to relate  
 aliorum. Igitur boni mores  
 (those) to others. Therefore good manners (practices)  
 colebantur domi, que militiæ  
 were celebrated [cultivated] at-home, and at-war (in the camp) (their)  
 concordia erat maxuma, avaritia minuma, jus  
 unanimity was very-great, (their) selfishness very-small, justice  
 que bonum valebat apud eos non magis legibus  
 and good did prevail among them not more by laws  
 quàm naturâ. Exercebant jurgia,  
 than by nature. They did exercise (practise) contentions,  
 discordias, similtates cum hostibus; cives certabant  
 discords, feuds with the enemies; citizens did vie

civibus de virtute. Erant  
 with citizens concerning virtue [in deeds of valour]. They were  
 magnifici in suppliciis deorum, parci  
 magnificent in (their) worships (worship) of the gods, frugal  
 domi, fideles in amicos. Curabant  
 of (at) home, faithful toward (their) friends. They did manage  
 que se que rempublicam his duabus artibus,  
 both themselves and the republic by these two arts  
 audaciâ in bello, æquitate, ubi pax  
 (practices), by boldness in war, by equity, when peace  
 evenerat. Quarum rerum ego habeo hæc maxuma  
 had happened. Of which things I have these very-great  
 documenta, quòd in bello vindicatum est  
 proofs, that in war it-was-vindicated (punishment was  
 sæpiùs in eos, qui pugnaverant in hostem  
 visited) oftener on those, who had fought against the enemy  
 contra imperium, que qui revocati, excesserant  
 contrary-to command, and who having been recalled, had departed  
 tardiùs prælio, quàm qui  
 more slowly (too slowly) from battle, than (on those) who  
 ausi-erant relinquere signa, aut pulsi  
 had-dared to leave-behind (their) standards, or having been repulsed  
 cedere loco: vero agitabant imperium  
 to retire from place (their post): but they did conduct the government  
 in pace, magis beneficiis quàm metu, injuriâ  
 in peace, rather by kindnesses than by fear, an injury  
 acceptâ, malebant ignoscere quam  
 having been received, they did rather-wish to pardon than  
 persequi. Sed ubi respublica crevit labore  
 to avenge (it). But when the republic increased by industry  
 atque justitiâ, magni reges domiti bello;  
 and justice, [when] great kings (were) conquered in war;  
 feræ nationes, et ingentes populi subacti  
 savage nations, and great peoples (people) subdued  
 vi, Carthago, æmula Romani imperii,  
 by force, [when] Carthage, the rival of the Roman empire,  
 interiit ab stirpe, cuncta  
 perished from (its) stem, (was wholly destroyed), [when] all

maria que terræ patebant, fortuna cœpit sævire  
 seas and lands did lie-open, fortune began to rage  
 ac miscere omnia. Otium, divitiæ,  
 and confound all (things). Peace, [repose] riches, (things)  
 optandæ aliis, fuere oneri que  
 to be wished to others, [for by some] were for a burden (a burden) and  
 miseræ iis, qui facile toleraverant dubias  
 wretchedness to those, who easily had endured doubtful (critical)  
 atque asperas res. Igitur primò cupido pecuniæ,  
 and rough things. Therefore at-first the desire of money,  
 dein imperii, crevit: ea fuere quasi materies  
 then of oommand, increased: those were as-if the source  
 omnium malorum. Namque avaritia subvertit fidem,  
 of all evils. For avarice overturned faith,  
 probitatem, que cæteras bonas artes; pro  
 honesty, and other good arts (qualities); instead-of  
 his edocuit superbiam crudelitatem, negligere  
 these it taught (them) pride, cruelty, to neglect  
 deos, habere omnia venalia; ambitio subegit  
 the gods, to have all things venal; ambition compelled  
 multos mortales fieri falsos; habere aliud  
 many mortals to be made (become) false; to have one  
 clausum in pectore, aliud promptum in  
 (thing) shut-up in the breast, another ready on (the)  
 linguâ; æstimare amicitias que inimicitias non  
 tongue; to estimate friendships and enmities not  
 ex re, sed ex commodo;  
 according-to the thing (moral worth), but according-to advantage;  
 que habere bonum vultum magis quam  
 and to have a good (fair) countenance rather than (an honest)  
 ingenium. Hæc primò crescere paulatim,  
 disposition. These at-first (began) to increase by-degrees,  
 interdum vindicari. Post ubi contagio, quasi  
 sometimes to be punished. Afterwards when the contagion, as-if  
 pestilentia invasit, civitas immutata:  
 a pestilence invaded (them), the state (was) changed:  
 inperium factum crudele que intolerandum,  
 the government (was) made cruel and intolerable,

ex justissimo que optumo. Sed primò ambitio  
from the most-just and the best. But at-first ambition

exercebat animos hominum magis quàm avaritia :  
did exercise the minds of men more than avarice:

quod vitium tamen erat propius virtutem.  
which vice [of ambition] however was nearer-to virtue.

Nam bonus ignavus æquè exoptant sibi  
For the good (and) the indolent equally wish for themselves

gloriam, honorem, imperium, sed ille  
glory, honour (preferment) authority, but he [the ambi-

nititur verâ viâ ;  
tious man] (the former) endeavours (for them) in the true way [by ho-

quia bonæ artes desunt huic,  
nourable means]; because good arts (qualities) are-wanting to this

contendit dolis atque fallaciis.  
(the latter), [avarice], he strives (for them) by deceits and fallacies.

Avaritia habet studium pecuniæ, quam nemo  
Avarice has a zeal [and desire] of money, which no

sapiens concupivit. Ea, quasi imbuta malis  
wise (man) has coveted. It, as-if imbued with bad

venenis, effœminat corpus que virilem animum: est  
poisons, enervates the body and manly mind: is

semper infinita, insatiabilis: neque minuitur  
always unbounded, insatiable: neither is [it] lessened

copiâ neque inopiâ. Sed postquam Lucius Sulla,  
by plenty nor by want. But after Lucius Sylla,

republicâ receptâ armis, habuit malos  
the republic having been recovered by arms, had bad (unsuccess-

eventus ex bonis initiis; omnes rapere  
ful) results from good beginnings; all (began) to-plunder

trahere: alius cupere domum, alius  
to-draw (to take away): another (one) to covet a house, another

agros. Victores habere neque modum  
lands. [That] the conquerors to have [had] neither manner (bounds)

neque modestiam: facere fœda que  
nor modesty (moderation): to do [and did] disgraceful and

crudelia facinora in civis. Huc  
cruel crimes against (their) fellow-citizens. Hither

accedebat quòd Lucius Sulla, contra  
did come (to this was to be added), that Lucius-Sylla, contrary-to

morem majorum, habuerat exercitum,  
the custom of (our) ancestors, had (treated) the army,

quem ductaverat in Asiâ, luxuriosè que nimis  
which he had often-led in Asia, intemperately and too

liberaliter, quòd faceret fidum sibi.  
liberally, in-order-that he might make (it) faithful to himself.

Amœna, voluptaria loca facilè molliverant ferocis  
Pleasant, voluptuous places easily had enervated the fierce

(feroces) animos militum in otio. Ibi primùm  
minds of the soldiers in peace. There first

exercitus Romani populi insuevit amare,  
the army of the Roman people became-accustomed to love,

potare, mirari signa, pictas tabulas,  
to drink, to admire signs, (statues), painted tablets (pictures),

cœlata vasa; rapere ea privatim et publicè,  
carved vases; to plunder those (things) privately and publicly,

spoliare delubra, polluere omnia sacra que  
to rob shrines (temples), to pollute all (things) sacred and

profana. Igitur hi milites, postquam adepti-sunt  
profane. Therefore these soldiers, after they obtained

victoriam, fecere nihil reliqui  
a victory, made nothing of remaining (left nothing)

victis. Quippe secundæ res fatigant  
to the vanquished. For [indeed] prosperous things . fatigue (try)

animos sapientium; ne illi temperarent  
the minds of the wise; much less could they-moderately-enjoy

victoriæ, moribus corruptis. Postquam  
victory, (their) manners having been corrupted. After

divitiæ cœpere esse honori, et gloria,  
riches began to be for honour (an honour), and glory,

imperium, potentia sequebatur eas: virtus cœpit  
authority, power did follow them: virtue began

hebescere, paupertas haberi probro,  
to languish, poverty to be had (accounted) for a disgrace,

innocentia duci pro malevolentia. Igitur ex  
innocence to be deemed for ill-will. Therefore out-of

divitiis, luxuria, atque avaritia, cum superbiâ,  
riches, luxury, and avarice, with pride,

invasere juventutem. Rapere, consumere,  
invaded the youth. (They began) to plunder, to consume,

pendere sua parvi, cupere aliena;  
to esteem their-own (things) of little (value), to desire others;

habere pudorem, pudicitiam, divina atque humana  
to have modesty, chastity, divine and human

promiscua, nihil pensi, neque  
(things) promiscuous (undistinguished), nothing of regard, nor  
moderati.

of moderation. [They disregarded these things, and acted without re-

Est pretium operæ quum  
strait]. It is a reward of labour (it is worth while), when

cognoveris domos atque villas  
thou shalt have known (have viewed) houses and villas

exædificatas in modum urbium, visere templa  
built-up in the manner of cities, to visit the temples

deorum, quæ nostri majores, religiosissimi mortales,  
of the gods, which our ancestors, most-devout mortals,

fecere. Verùm illi decorabant delubra deorum  
made. But they did adorn the temples of the gods

pietate, suas domos gloriâ; neque eripiebant  
with piety, their-own houses with glory; nor did they snatch

quidquam victis præter licentiam  
any (thing) from the vanquished, except the privilege of (doing)

injuræ. At hi, contrâ ignavissimi homines,  
injury. But these, on-the-other-hand, most-indolent men,

adimere, per summum scelus, omnia ea  
(began) to take-away, through the utmost wickedness, all those

sociis quæ fortissimi viri victores  
(things) from (their) allies which the bravest men (when) conquerors

reliquerunt hostibus, proinde-quasi facere  
left to (their) enemies, just-as-if to do

injuriam, id esset demum uti imperio.  
an injury, that might be at-length (truly) to use authority.

Nam quid memorem ea, quæ sunt credibilia  
For why may I relate those (things), which are credible



nemini, nisi his, qui videre; montes  
 to no-one, unless to those, who have seen (them); [that] mountains  
 esse subversos, maria constrata à  
 [have] to be overturned, seas covered-over (built upon) by  
 compluribus privatis? Quibus divitiæ videntur  
 many private (persons)? To whom riches appear  
 mihi fuisse ludibrio: quippe properabant abuti  
 to me to have been for mockery: for they did hasten to abuse  
 per turpitudinem, quas licebat habere  
 through baseness. (the riches), which it was lawful to have  
 honestè. Sed non minor lubido stupri, ganæ,  
 honourably. But no less a lust of impurity, debauchery,  
 que cæteri cultûs, incusserat. Viri  
 and [of] other-such habit, had invaded (them). Men (began)  
 pati muliebria: mulieres habere  
 to suffer (admit) womanish (practices): women to have  
 pudicitiam in propatulo: exquirere omnia  
 chastity in common: to search-out all (things)  
 terrâ que mari, causâ vescendi, dormire priusquam  
 by land and by sea, for-the-sake of feeding, to sleep before-that  
 cupido somni esset: non opperiri famem  
 inclination of sleep might-be (to them): not to-wait-for hunger  
 aut sitim, neque frigus neque lassitudinem; sed  
 or thirst, neither cold nor lassitude; but  
 antecapere omnia ea luxu. Hæc incendebant  
 to anticipate all those by luxury. These (things) did inflame  
 juventutem ad facinora, ubi familiares opes  
 the youth to crimes, when family (private) resources  
 defecerant. Animus imbutus malis artibus,  
 had failed (them). The mind imbued with bad arts (practices),  
 haud facîle carebat lubidinibus: eò erat  
 not easily did refrain-from lusts: on-this-account it was  
 profusiùs deditus quæstui atque sumptui  
 the more-lavishly addicted to acquisition and expenditure  
 omnibus modis.  
 in all manners.

In tantâ que tam corruptâ civitate, Catilina  
 In so-great and so corrupted a state, Catiline

habebat, (id quod erat facillimum factu), catervas  
 did have, (that which was very-easy to-be-done), troops  
 omnium flagitiosorum atque facinorosorum  
 of all wicked and desperate (fellows)  
 circum se, tanquam stipatorum. Nam quicumque  
 around himself, as-if body-guards. For whatsoever  
 impudicus, adulter, ganeo laceraverat  
 unchaste (person), adulterer, debauchee had squandered (his)  
 patria bona manu, ventre, pene; quique  
 paternal goods by hand, belly (luxury), lust; whosoever  
 conflaverat grande alienum æs,  
 had swelled-up (contracted) a great other's brass (debt),  
 quo redimeret flagitium aut  
 by which he might redeem (purchase pardon for) wickedness or  
 facinus; præterea omnes undique parricidæ,  
 crime; besides all [from everywhere the] parricides,  
 sacrilegi convicti judiciis aut timentes  
 sacrilegious (wretches) convicted in trials or fearing  
 iudicium pro factis; ad-hoc quos  
 trial for (their) deeds; to-this (moreover) (those) whom  
 manus atque lingua alebat perjurio et civili  
 (their) hand and tongue did support by perjury and civil  
 sanguine; postremò, omnes quos flagitium, egestas,  
 blood; lastly, all whom villany, want,  
 conscius animus, exagitabat, hi erant proximi que  
 a guilty mind, did harass, these were the nearest and  
 familiares Catilinæ. Quòd si quis etiam vacuus  
 familiar to Catiline. But if any-one even (yet) free  
 à culpâ, inciderat in amicitiam ejus, efficiebatur  
 from fault, had fallen into the friendship of him, he was made  
 facile par que similis cæteris quotidiano usu atque  
 easily equal and like to the rest by daily habit and  
 illecebris. Sed appetebat maxumè familiaritates  
 allurements. But he sought-after chiefly the intimacies  
 adolescentium: animi eorum molles et fluxi ætate,  
 of young-men: the minds of these soft and frail by age,  
 haud difficulter capiebantur dolis. Nam uti  
 not difficultly were taken (ensnared) by wiles. For as

studium cujusque flagrabat ex ætate,  
the inclination of each did glow from age, (he began)

præbere scorta aliis, mercari canes atque  
to afford harlots to others (some), to buy hounds and

equos aliis: postremò, parcere neque sumptui  
horses for others: finally, to spare neither expense

neque suæ modestiæ, dum faceret  
nor his-own modesty (character), provided he could make (them)

obnoxios que fidos sibi. Scio nonnullos fuisse,  
subservient and faithful to himself. I know some to have been,

qui ita existumarent, juventutem, quæ  
who thus would think (thought), the youth, which

frequentabat domum Catilinæ, habuisse pudicitiam  
did frequent the house of Catiline, to have-had modesty

parùm honestè: sed hæc fama valebat magis  
little (not) honourably: but this report did prevail more

ex aliis rebus, quàm quòd id foret compertum  
from other things, than that it might be (it was) found-out

cuiquam. Jamprimum Catilina, adolescens,  
(known) to any-one. First-of-all Catiline, a young-man,

fecerat multa nefanda stupra cum nobili  
had done (committed) many abominable impurities with a noble

virgine, cum sacerdote Vestæ, et alia  
virgin, with a priestess of Vesta, and other (things)

hujuscemodi, contra jus que fas: postremò,  
of this-kind, against human-law and divine-law: lastly,

captus amore Aureliæ Orestillæ, cujus bonus  
taken with love of Aurelia Orestilla, of whom a good-man

unquam laudavit nihil præter formam; quòd  
ever praised nothing except (her) beauty; because

ea, timens privignum adultæ ætate, dubitabat  
she, fearing a stepson (of) mature age, did hesitate

nubere illi, creditur pro certo fecisse vacuum  
to marry to him, he is believed for certain to have made an empty

domum, necato filio, scelestis nuptiis. Quæ  
house, [his son being killed], for the wicked nuptials. Which

res quidem videtur mihi in primis fuisse causa  
thing indeed seems [to me] chiefly to have been the cause

**facinoris maturandi.** **Namque**  
 of the enterprise to-be-hastened (of hastening the conspiracy). For  
**impurus animus, infestus diis que hominibus,**  
 (his) impure mind, hostile to gods and to men,  
**poterat sedari neque vigiliis neque quietibus:**  
 was able to be allayed neither by watchings nor by rests (rest):  
**conscientia ita vexabat excitam mentem. Igitur**  
 his conscience so did harass (his) disturbed mind, Therefore  
**color ei, exsanguis, oculi foedi, incessus**  
 complexion (was) to him pale, eyes foul, (his) gait  
**modo citus, modo tardus: vecordia inerat prorsus**  
 now quick, now slow: madness was-in throughout  
**in facie que vultu.**  
 in (his) appearance and countenance. [His features indicated fury  
**Sed edocebat juventutem mala**  
 and malignity]. But he did teach the youth wicked  
**facinora, quam, ut diximus suprâ, illexerat: ex**  
 crimes, which, as we have said above, he had allured: out-of  
**illis commodare falsos testes que**  
 them (he began) to accommodate (to furnish) false witnesses and  
**signatores; habere fidem,**  
 signers (forgers); [and to instruct them] to have (hold) faith,  
**fortunas, pericula vilia. Post, ubi**  
 fortunes, dangers (as) insignificant. Afterwards, when  
**attriverat famam atque pudorem eorum,**  
 he had worn-away (ruined) the character and shame of them,  
**imperabat alia majora. Si caussa peccandi**  
 he did enjoin other greater (crimes). If an opportunity of sinning  
**minùs-suppetebat in præsens, nihilominus**  
 did-not-offer for the present, nevertheless (he ordered  
**circumvenire, jugulare insontes sicuti sontes.**  
 them) to beset, and to murder the innocent as-if guilty.  
**Scilicet, ne manus aut animus torpesceret per**  
 Forsooth, lest the hand or mind might become-sluggish through  
**otium; erat malus atque crudelis potiùs gratuitò.**  
 disuse; he was bad and cruel rather gratuitously  
**Catilina confisus his amicis**  
 (without a purpose). Catiline having relied to (on) these friends

que sociis, simul quòd alienum æs  
and companions, at-the-same-time because others' brass (debt)

erat ingens per omnis (omnes) terras;  
was great through all lands (throughout the

et quòd plerique Sullani milites,  
whole country); and because [the greater part of] the Syllanian soldiers,

usi suo largiùs, memores rapinarum et  
having used their-own too-freely, mindful of rapines and

veteris victoriæ, exoptabant civile bellum;  
and of ancient victory, did eagerly-wish-for civil war;

cepit consilium reipublicæ  
he took design (entered into a design) of the republic

opprimundæ. Nullus exercitus  
to be oppressed (of oppressing the republic). No army (was)

in Italiâ: Cneius Pompeius gerebat bellum in  
in Italy: Cneius Pompey did carry-on war in

extremis terris: magna spes ipsi petundi  
remotest lands: a great hope (was) to him of seeking

consulatum; senatus sanè intentus nihil:  
the consulship; the senate indeed intent (on) nothing:

omnes res tutæ que tranquillæ: sed ea  
all things (were) safe and quiet: but those (things)

prorsus opportuna Catilinæ. Igitur circiter  
(were) altogether favourable to Catiline. Therefore about

Junias kalendas, Lucio Cæsare et Caio  
the Junian kalends (first of June), Lucius Cæsar and Caius

Figulo consulibus, primò appellare  
Figulus (being) consuls, (he began) first to address

singulos, hortari alios, tentare alios;  
single (persons individually), to exhort some, to try others;

docere suas opes, rempublicam  
to teach (to inform them of) his-own resources, [that] the republic

imparatam, magna præmia conjurationis.  
[was] unprepared, [and] the great rewards of the conspiracy.

Ubi quæ voluit explorata-sunt satis,  
When (the matters) which he willed were considered sufficiently,

convocat omnis (omnes) in unum, quibus  
he convokes all into one (place), to-whom

inerat maxuma necessitudo et  
there-was-in (who had) the greatest obligation-of-necessity and

plurimum audaciæ.  
most of boldness. [Who were the most needy and bold].

Ed convenere Senatorii ordinis, Publius  
Hither (there) assembled of the Senatorian order, Publius

Lentulus Sura, Publius Autronius, Lucius Cassius  
Lentulus Sura, Publius Autronius, Lucius Cassius

Longinus, Caius Cethegus, Publius et Servius Sullæ,  
Longinus, Caius Cethegus, Publius. and Servius Syllæ,

filii Servii, Lucius Vargunteius, Quintus Annius,  
sons of Servius, Lucius Vargunteius, Quintus Annius,

Marcus Porcius Læca, Lucius Bestia, Quintus Curius :  
Marcus Porcius Læca, Lucius Bestia, Quintus Curius :

præterea ex equestri ordine, Marcus Fulvius  
moreover of the equestrian order, Marcus Fulvius

Nobilior, Lucius Statilius, Publius Gabinus Capito,  
Nobilior, Lucius Statilius, Publius Gabinus Capito,

Caius Cornelius; ad hoc, multi ex coloniis,  
Caius Cornelius; to this (besides), many out-of the colonies,

et municipiis nobiles domi.  
and municipal (towns) noble (men of distinction) at-home. (There)

Erant præterea complures paulò occultius  
were moreover many somewhat more-secretly

participes hujusce consilii, quos spes dominationis  
partakers of this design, whom the hope of sway

hortabatur magis quam inopia aut alia necessitudo.  
did encourage more than want or other obligation.

Cæterùm pleraque juvenus, sed maxumè nobilium,  
But most-of the youth, but chiefly of the nobles

favebat inceptis Catilinæ. Quibus erat  
did favour to the undertakings of Catiline. To whom (there) was

copia vivere in otio vel magnificè,  
(they who had) the opportunity to live in peace either magnificently,

vel molliter, malebant incerta  
or softly (indulgently), they had-rather uncertain (things)

pro certis, bellum quàm pacem. Fuere item  
for certain, war than peace. (There) were likewise

*ea* tempestate, qui crederent *Marcum*  
 in that time (some), who would believe (did believe) Marcus

*Licinium Crassum* non fuisse ignarum *ejus*  
*Licinius Crassus* not to have been ignorant of that

*consilii*: quia *Cneius Pompeius*, invisus *sibi*,  
 design: because *Cneius Pompey*, odious to him,

ductabat magnum exercitum; voluisse  
 did often-lead a great army; to have willed (that he wished)

opes cujusvis crescere contra potentiam illius:  
 the resources of any-one to increase against the power of him:

simul confisum, si conjuratio valuisset  
 at-the-same-time having trusted, if the conspiracy might have prevailed

se fore facile  
 (had prevailed), himself to be about-to-be (that he would be) easily

principem apud illos.  
 chief among them.

Sed antea item pauci conjuravere in quibus  
 But before also a few conspired in (amongst) whom

Catilina: de qua dicam quam  
 (was) Catiline: of which (conspiracy) I shall speak as

verissime potero. Lucio Tullo, Marco Lepido  
 most-truly I-shall-be-able. Lucius Tullus, Marcus Lepidus (being)

consulibus, Publius Autronius, et Publius Sylla,  
 consuls, Publius Autronius, and Publius Sylla,

consules designati interrogati legibus  
 the consuls intended (elect) having been-questioned (tried) by the laws

ambitus, dederant poenas. Paulo-post  
 of bribery, had given (suffered) punishments. A little-after

Catilina reus pecuniarum repetundarum  
 Catiline guilty (accused) of moneys to be re-demanded (of extor-

erat-prohibitus petere consulatum; quod  
 tion) was prevented to seek the consulate; because

nequiverit profiteri intra  
 he had not-been-able to declare (enter his name as candidate) within

legitimos dies. Erat eodem tempore nobilis  
 the legitimate days. (There) was at-the-same time a noble

adolescens, Cneius Piso, summæ audaciæ, egens,  
 young-man, Cneius Piso, of the utmost boldness, needing,

factiosus, quem inopia atque mali mores  
 factious, whom want and bad morals (principles)

stimulabant ad rempublicam perturbandam.  
 did stimulate to the republic to-be-disturbed (to disturb the

Consilio communicato, cum  
 republic). (Their) design having been imparted (to each other), with

hoc, Catilina et Autronius, circiter nonas  
 this (youth), Catiline and Autronius, about the nones (the fifth)

Decembris, parabant interficere Lucium Cottam et  
 of December, did prepare to kill Lucius Cotta, and

Lucium Torquatum, consules, in capitolio, kalendis  
 Lucius Torquatus, the consuls, in the capitol, on the kalends

Januarii; ipsi, fascibus correptis,  
 (the first) of January; themselves, the fasces having been seized

mittere Pisonem cum exercitu ad  
 (by them), (prepared) to send Piso with an army to

duas Hispanias obtinendas.  
 the two Spains to-be-possessioned (to take possession of the two

Eâ re cognitâ, rursus transtulerunt  
 Spains). That thing having been known, again they transferred

consilium cædis in nonas  
 (deferred) (their) design of murder to the nones (the fifth)

Februarii. Jam, tum machinabantur perniciem  
 of February. Now, at-that-time they did plan destruction

non modò consulibus, sed plerisque senatoribus.  
 not only for the consuls, but most-of the senators.

Quòd, pessimum facinus foret patratum eo die  
 But, the worst act would be committed on that day

post urbem Romam conditam,  
 since the city Rome having been built, [foundation of the city],

ni Catilina maturâsset  
 unless Catiline might have hastened (had not Catiline been too hasty)

dare signum sociis pro curiâ. Quia  
 to give the signal to (his) companions before the senate-house. Because

armati nondum-convenerant frequentes,  
 armed (men) had-not-as-yet assembled numerous (in numbers),

ea res diremit consilium. Postea Piso  
 that thing broke-off (their) design. Afterwards Piso



missus-est quæstor pro Prætore  
was sent (as) treasurer for Pretor (with the authority of Pretor)

in citeriorem Hispaniam, Crasso adnitente;  
to hither Spain, Crassus exerting (using his in-

terest); because he had known him hostile to Cneius

Pompeio: tamen, senatus neque invitus dederat  
Pompey: however, the senate neither reluctant had given

provinciam: quippe  
the province: [the senate willingly gave him the province]: for

volebat fœdum hominem abesse procul  
it (they) did will a disgraceful man to be-absent at-a-distance

à republicâ: simul quia complures boni  
from the republic: at-the-same-time because many good (men)

putabant præsidium in eo, et jam-tum potentia  
did suppose a protection (to be) in him, and even-then the power

Cneii Pompeii erat formidolosa. Sed is Piso, faciens  
of Cneius Pompey was formidable. But that Piso, making

iter in provinciam occisus-est ab  
a journey (on his march) into the province was-killed by

Hispanis equitibus, quos ductabat in exercitu.  
Spanish cavalry, whom he did lead-often in (his) army.

Sunt qui ita-dicant  
[That he had in his army]. (There) are (those) who thus may say

barbaros nequivisse  
(who say) [that] the barbarians to have been-unable [were unable]

pati injusta, superba, crudelia imperia  
to endure the unjust (unreasonable), proud, cruel orders

ejus: autem alii illos equites, veteres que  
of him: but others (say that) those horsemen, old and

fidos clientes Cneii Pompeii, aggressos  
faithful dependants of Cneius Pompey, having attacked (attacked)

Pisonem voluntate ejus: præterea Hispanos  
Piso by the will of him (Pompey): moreover the Spaniards

nunquam fecisse tale facinus, sed antea  
never to have done (did) such a crime, but before-this

perpressos multa sæva imperia. Nos relinquimus  
having endured many harsh commands. We leave

eam rem in medio Dictum  
 that thing in the middle (undetermined). (It has been) said  
 satis de superiori  
 sufficiently (sufficient has been said) concerning the former  
 conjuratione.  
 conspiracy.

Catilina, ubi videt eos, quos memoravi antè,  
 Catiline, when he sees those, whom I have mentioned before,  
 convenisse, tametsi sæpe-egerat multa  
 to have assembled, although he had-often-transacted many (things)  
 cum singulis, tamen credens fore in  
 with each (of them), yet believing to-be-about-to-be to  
 rem appellare et cohortari universos  
 the thing (purpose) to address and encourage all  
 secessit in abditam partem ædium;  
 (collectively), retired into a secret part of the houses  
 atque, omnibus arbitris amotis procul,  
 (house); and, all witnesses removed at-a-distance,  
 habuit ibi orationem hujuscemodi:  
 had (delivered) there a speech of-this-kind:

Ni vestra virtus que fides foret satis  
 Unless your valour and faith might be (were) sufficiently  
 spectata mihi, opportuna res  
 beheld (tried) to (by) me, (this) favourable thing  
 cecidisset nequicquam: magna spes  
 would have happened to-no-purpose: [the] great hope  
 dominationis fuisset frustra in manibus:  
 of ascendancy would have been in-vain in (your) hands:  
 neque captarem incerta pro certis,  
 neither would I grasp-at uncertain (things) instead-of certain,  
 per ignaviam aut vana ingenia. Sed quia  
 through indolence or fickle dispositions. But because  
 cognovi vos fortes que fidos mihi, multis et  
 I have experienced you brave and faithful to me, on many and  
 magnis tempestatibus; eò animus ausus-est  
 great occasions; on-that-account (my) mind has dared  
 incipere maxumum atque pulcherrimum  
 to begin (undertake) the greatest and most-glorious

facinus; simul quia intellexi eadem  
 enterprise; at-the-same-time because I perceived the same (things)  
 esse bona que mala vobis, quæ mihi. Nam,  
 to be good and bad to you, which (are so) to me. For,  
 velle idem, atque nolle idem, ea est demum  
 to will the same, and not-to-will the same, this is finally  
 firma amicitia. Sed omnes jam-antea diversi  
 firm friendship. But (you) all already different  
 audistis, quæ ego agitavi  
 (separately) have heard (the things) which I have agitated in (my)  
 mente. Cæterùm animus accenditur magis in dies,  
 mind. But (my) mind is inflamed more on days  
 cùm considero quæ sit futura conditio  
 (daily), when I consider what may be the future condition  
 vitæ, nisi vindicamus nosmetipsos  
 of (our) life, unless we vindicate ourselves (assert our rights)  
 in libertatem. Nam, postquam respublica concessit  
 to liberty. For, after the republic yielded  
 in jus atque ditionem paucorum potentium,  
 into the rule and authority of a few powerful (persons),  
 reges, tetrarchæ esse semper vectigales illis:  
 kings, [and] tetrarchs (began) to be always tributary to them:  
 populi, nationes pendere stipendia:  
 peoples (people), [and] nations to pay taxes [to them]: (we)  
 omnes cæteri strenui, boni, nobiles atque ignobiles  
 all the rest strenuous, good, noble and ignoble  
 fuimus vulgus, sine gratiâ, sine auctoritate,  
 have been a rabble, without favour (interest), without authority,  
 obnoxii his quibus, si respublica valeret,  
 subservient to those to whom, if the republic might prevail  
 essemus formidini. Itaque omnis gratia,  
 (prevailed), we should be for a terror. Therefore all interest,  
 potentia, honos, divitiæ sunt apud illos, aut ubi  
 power, honour, riches are at (with) them, or where  
 volunt: reliquerunt nobis pericula, repulsas, judicia,  
 they will: they have left to us dangers, repulses, trials,  
 egestatem. Quæ quousque-tandem, fortissimi  
 want. Which (things) how-long, bravest

virī, patiemini? Nonne-præstat emori per  
men, will ye endure? Is-it-not-better to die by

virtutem, quàm amittere miseram atque inhonestam  
valour, than to lose a wretched and dishonourable

vitam per dedecus, ubi fueris  
life by disgrace, when thou mayest have been (hast been)

ludibrio alienæ superbiae? Verùm  
for a laughing-stock to strange (another's) pride? But

enimvero, prò fidem deùm atque hominum, victoria  
truly, O faith of gods and of men, victory

est nobis in manu; ætas viget,  
is to us in hand, [in our possession]; (our) age flourishes, (our)

animus valet: contrà omnia consenuerunt  
mind prevails: on-the-other-hand all (things) have-grown-old

illis annis atque divitiis. Est opus tantummodo  
to them in years and riches. (There) is need only

incepto, res expedit cætera.  
for a beginning, thing (the matter itself) will prepare the rest.

Etenim quis mortalium, cui est virile  
For who of mortals, to whom (there) is a manly

ingenium, potest tolerare divitias superare illis,  
disposition, can endure riches to abound to them,

quas profundunt in exstruendo  
[them to abound in riches], which they squander in building

mari, et montibus cœquandis,  
(narrowing) the sea, and mountains to-be-levelled (in levelling moun-

familiarem rem deesse nobis etiam  
tains), private thing (property) to-be-wanting to us even

ad necessaria.  
to (for) necessary (matters). [While we want the necessities of life].

Illos continuare binas domos aut  
(Who can endure) those to extend two (united) houses or

amplius: ullum familiarem larem  
more [in one]: any private household-god (abode)

nusquam nobis?  
no-where to-us? [While we have no where a home of our own].

Cùm emunt tabulas, signa, toreumata diruunt  
When they buy pictures, statues, chased-vessels (plate), pull-down

nova, ædificant alia: postremò, trahunt,  
 new (buildings), build others: finally, draw (consume),  
 vexant pecuniam omnibus modis; tamen  
 torture money [squander money] in all manners; yet  
 nequeunt vincere suas divitias summâ lubidine.  
 are-unable to exceed their riches by the utmost extravagance

At inopia est nobis domi, alienum-æs  
 (of expenditure). But want is to-us at-home, debt

foris, res mala, spes multo asperior.  
 abroad, thing (our situation) bad, hope by-much rougher (worse).

Denique, quid reliqui habemus  
 Finally, what of remaining have-we (what have we left)

præter miseram animam? Quin igitur  
 except a wretched life? But therefore

expergiscimini? En! illa, illa libertas, quam  
 do ye awake? Lo! that, that liberty, which

optâstis sæpe; præterea divitiæ, decus, gloria,  
 you have wished-for often; besides riches, honour, glory,

sita-sunt in oculis: fortuna posuit omnia ea  
 are-placed in eyes (view): fortune has placed all those (as)

præmia victoribus. Res, tempus,  
 rewards to the conquerors. The thing (circumstance), time,

pericula, egestas, magnifica spolia belli hortentur  
 dangers, want, the magnificent spoils of war may exhort

vos magis quàm mea oratio. Utemini me vel  
 you more than my speech. Ye shall use me either (as)

imperatore vel milite: neque animus neque  
 general or (fellow) soldier: neither (my) mind nor

corpus aberit à vobis. Consul agam, ut  
 body shall be-absent from you. (As) consul I shall-do, as

spero, hæc ipsa unâ vobiscum: nisi fortè  
 I hope, those very (things) together with you: unless by chance

animus fallit me, et vos parati-estis  
 (my) mind deceive me, and you have been prepared (disposed)

servire magis quàm imperare.  
 to serve rather than to command.

Postquam homines accepere ea,  
 After the men received (heard) those (things),

quibus omnia mala erant abundè, sed neque res  
to whom all evils were abundantly, but neither thing

neque ulla bona spes: tametsi videbatur  
(property) nor any good hope: although it did seem

illis magna merces movere quìeta; tamen  
to them a great reward to move quiet (things); notwithstanding

plerique postulare uti proponeret, quæ  
many (began) to require that he would propose, what

foret conditio belli: quæ præmia peterent  
would be the condition of war: what rewards they might seek

armis: quid que ubi opis aut spei haberent.  
by arms: what and where of resource or of hope they might have.

Tum Catilina polliceri novas tabulas  
Then Catiline (began) to promise new tablets (a remission of

proscriptionem locupletium, magistratus,  
debts, a proscription of the wealthy, magistrates,

sacerdotia, rapinas, omnia alia quæ bellum  
priesthoods, rapines, all other (things) which war

atque lubido victorum fert: præterea,  
and [the] lust of conquerors bears (brings): moreover,

Pisonem esse in citeriore Hispaniâ, Publium  
[that] Piso to be (was) in hither Spain, Publius

Sittium Nucerinum cum exercitu in Mauritanîâ,  
Sittius Nucerinus with an army in Mauritania,

participes sui consilii: Caium Antonium  
partakers of his design: [that] Caius Antony

petere consulatum, quem speraret  
to seek [sought] the consulship, whom he would hope (he hoped)

fore collegam sibi, hominem et  
to-be-about-to-be [would be a] colleague to himself, a man and

familiarem et circumventum omnibus  
(both) familiar and beset by all

necessitudinibus:

obligations: [his familiar acquaintance, and under many obligations to

se consulem facturum  
him]: himself (Catiline) consul about-to-make (would make)

initium agendi cum eo. Ad-hoc increpabat  
a beginning of acting with him. Besides he did revile

**maledictis** **omnes** **bonos :** **nominans**  
 [with imprecations] all good (men): naming  
**unumquemque** **suorum,** **laudare,** **admonere**  
 each of his own, (he began) to praise (him), to remind  
**aliū** **egestatis,** **aliū** **suae** **cupiditatis,**  
 one of (his) poverty, another of his desire,  
**complures** **periculi** **aut** **ignominiae,** **multos** **Sullanæ**  
 many of danger or disgrace, many of the Syllanian  
**victoriae,** **quibus** **ea** **fuerat** **praedae.** **Postquam**  
 of victory, to whom that had been for booty. After  
**videt** **animos** **omnium** **alacris (alacres);** **cohortatus,**  
 he sees the minds of all cheerful; having exhorted  
**ut** **haberent** **suam** **petitionem**  
 (them), that they would have his petition (canvass)  
**curæ,**  
 for a concern, [that they would exert themselves in his canvass for the con-  
**dimisit conventum.** **Fuere** **ea** **tempestate,**  
 sulship], he dismissed the assembly. There have been at that time,  
**qui** **dicerent** **Catilinam,** **oratione**  
 (those) who might say (said) [that] Catiline, the speech  
**habitâ,** **circumtulisse** **in** **pateris**  
 having been delivered, to have carried-about [carried about] in goblets  
**sanguinem** **humani** **corporis,** **permixtum** **vino** **cum**  
 the blood of a human body, [mingled with wine] when  
**adigeret** **populares** **sui** **sceleris** **ad**  
 he would force the accomplices of his wickedness to  
**jusjurandum;** **inde** **cum** **omnes** **degustavissent**  
 an oath; then when all might have tasted (had tasted)  
**post exsecrationem,** **sicuti** **consuevit** **fieri** **in**  
 after the execration (oath), as has been-wont to be done in  
**solemnibus** **sacris,** **aperuisse** **suum** **consilium;**  
 solemn sacred-rites, to have disclosed [his] design;  
**atque** **dicitare** **fecisse**  
 and to say-frequently [that they frequently said] to have done  
**eo,** **quò** **forent** **magis**  
 (that he did it) for-this-purpose, in-order-that they might be more  
**fidi** **inter** **se,** **consciū** **alius** **alii** **tanti**  
 faithful among themselves, (being) conscious one to another of so-great

facinoris. Nonnulli existumabant et hæc,  
 a crime. Some did think and (both) these (things),  
 et multa præterea ficta ab iis, qui credebant  
 and many besides feigned by those, who did believe  
 invidiam Ciceronis, quæ postea  
 the envy (hatred) of (against) Cicero, which afterwards  
 orta-est, leniri atrocitate sceleris eorum,  
 arose, to be assuaged by the heinousness of the wickedness of those,  
 qui dederant poenas. Ea res comperta-est  
 who had given (suffered) punishments. That thing has been found-out  
 nobis parùm pro  
 [to us] little (insufficiently) for (in proportion to) (its)  
 magnitudine.

greatness. [The proof seems not to us sufficient to decide in so weighty

Sed Quintus Curius fuit in eâ  
 an accusation]. But Quintus Curius was in that

conjuratiōe, natus haud obscuro loco,  
 conspiracy, born not in obscure place (honourably de-

coopertus flagitiis atque facinoribus; quem  
 scended), overwhelmed with villainies and crimes; whom

censores amoverant senatu gratiâ probri.  
 the censors had expelled from the senate on-account of disgrace.

Non minor vanitas quàm audacia  
 No less vanity [and indiscretion] than boldness

inerat huic homini: neque reticere  
 was-in [appertained] to this man: [nor] to keep-secret

quæ ipse audierat, neque  
 [could he keep secret] what (things) he had heard, nor

occultare suamet scelera; prorsus  
 to conceal [nor could he conceal] his-own crimes; [nor in-short

habebat quicquam pensi neque dicere neque facere.  
 had-he any care neither to say nor to do.]

Vetus consuetudo  
 [In short he cared not what he said or did]. An old habit

stupri erat ei cum Fulviâ, nobili muliere, cui  
 of intrigue was to him with Fulvia, a noble woman, to whom

cùm esset minùs gratus, quòd minùs-poterat  
 when he might be (he was) less agreeable, because he-was-less-able



largiri inopiâ, repentè glorians, polliceri  
to bestow from poverty, suddenly boasting, (he began) to promise

maria que montes, interdum  
seas and mountains, (to make great promises), sometimes

minari ferro ni foret obnoxia  
to threaten with iron (the sword), unless she would-be compliant

sibi: postremo, agitare ferociùs quàm solitus-erat.  
to him: in-fine, to-act more-rudely than he had been-wont.

At Fulvia, causâ insolentiæ Curii cognitâ,  
But Fulvia, the cause of the rudeness of Curius having been known,

habuit non occultum tale periculum reipublicæ: sed  
kept not secret such danger to the republic: but

auctore sublato, narravit compluribus quæ,  
the author having been suppressed, related to many what,

quo modo, audierat de conjuratione  
(and) in what manner, she had heard of the conspiracy

Catilinæ. Ea res imprimis accendit studia  
of Catiline. That thing chiefly kindled the zeals (zeal)

hominum ad consulatum mandandum Marco Tullio  
of men to the consulship to-be-committed to Marcus Tullius

Ciceroni. Namque antea  
Cicero. [To elect Cicero to the consulship]. For before

pleraque nobilitas æstuabat invidiâ, et credebatur  
most-of the nobility did boil with envy, and did believe

consulatum quasi pollui, si novus homo  
the consulship as-if to be defiled, if a new man (a person not

adeptus-foret eum. Sed ubi periculum  
noble) should have obtained it. But when danger

advenit, invidia atque superbia post-fuere.  
approached, envy and pride were postponed (of secondary

consideration). Igitur comitiis habitis, Marcus  
Therefore elections having-been-held, Marcus

Tullius et Caius Antonius declarantur consules.  
Tullius and Caius Antony are declared consuls.

Quod factum primò concusserat populares  
Which deed first had shaken the accomplices

conjurationis. Tamen furor Catilinæ neque  
of the conspiracy. However the rage of Catiline neither

minuebatur; sed agitare plura in-dies;  
was diminished; but (he began) to agitate more (things) every-day;

parare arma opportunis locis per Italiam;  
to prepare arms in convenient places through Italy;

portare mutuam pecuniam sumptam suâ aut  
to convey borrowed money taken on his-own or

fide amicorum, Fæsulas, ad quemdam Manlium;  
the credit of friends, to Fæsulæ, to a certain Manlius;

qui postea fuit princeps belli faciundi.  
who afterwards was chief of the war to-be-made (of making

war). Dicitur eâ tempestate adscivisse plurimos  
He is said at that time to have attached very-many

homines cujuscunque generis sibi; etiam aliquot  
men of every kind to himself; also some

mulieres, quæ primò toleraverant ingentis (ingentes)  
women, who first had supported great

sumptus stupro corporis; pòst ubi ætas fecerat  
expenses by prostitution of body; afterwards when age had made

modum tantummodo quæstui, neque luxuriæ,  
a bound only to gain, and-not to luxury,

conflaverant grande alienum-æs. Catilina  
they had contracted a great debt. Catiline

credebat se posse per eas sollicitare urbana  
did believe himself to be able through these to stir-up city

servitia incendere urbem, vel adjungere  
slaveries (slaves) to burn the city, or to attach [them]

sibi, vel interficere viros earum. Sed in his  
to him, or to murder the husbands of them. But among these

erat Sempronia, quæ sæpe commiserat multa facinora  
was Sempronia, who often had committed many acts

virilis audaciæ. Hæc mulier fuit satis fortunata  
of manly boldness. This woman was sufficiently happy

genere atque formâ, præterea viro et liberis:  
in lineage and beauty, moreover in a husband and children:

docta Græcis et Latinis literis: psallere,  
learned in Greek and Latin letters (literature): to sing,

saltare elegantius quàm est  
so dance [she could sing and dance] more-gracefully than is

necesse probæ: multa ilia quæ  
 necessary for a chaste (lady): (she knew) many other (things) which  
 sunt instrumenta luxuriæ: sed omnia  
 are instruments of luxury: but all (things) (were)  
 semper cariora ei quàm fuit decus atque pudicitia.  
 always dearer to her than was honour and chastity.

Discerneres haud facîle an parceret minùs  
 Thou couldst determine not easily whether she would spare less  
 pecuniæ an famæ; sic accensa lubidine ut  
 to money or character; so inflamed with lust that  
 peteret viros sæpius quàm peteretur.  
 she would seek men oftener than she would be sought (by them).

Sed ea sæpè antehac prodiderat fidem, abjuraverat  
 But she often before-this had betrayed faith, had forsworn  
 creditum, fuerat conscia cædis, abierat  
 credit (trust), had been guilty of murder, had gone  
 præceps luxuriâ atque inopiâ. Verum  
 headlong [into ruin] by luxury and by want. But

ingenium ejus haud absurdum:  
 the understanding of her (was) not foolish (despicable):  
 posse facere versus, movere jocum;  
 to be-able [she could] to make verses, to move (excite) jest;  
 uti vel modesto, vel molli, vel procaci sermone.  
 to use either modest, or delicate, or wanton discourse.

Prorsus, multæ facetiæ que multus lepos inerat  
 Altogether, many pleasantries and much wit was-in

His rebus comparatis, Catilina nihilominus  
 (her). Those things having been provided, Catiline nevertheless  
 petebat consulatum in proximum annum; sperans,  
 did seek the consulship for the next year; hoping,  
 si foret designatus, se usurum facîle  
 if he might be elected, [that] himself about-to-use easily

Antonio ex voluntate.  
 (would easily manage) Antony according-to (his) will.

Neque interea erat quietus, sed parabat insidias  
 Neither mean-time was-he quiet, but did prepare snares

Ciceroni omnibus modis. Tamen, dolus aut astutiæ  
 for Cicero in all manners. However, craft or wiles

neque-deerant illi ad-cavendum. Namque à  
were-not-wanting to him to-beware. For from

principio sui consulatûs, effecerat, pollicendo  
the beginning of his consulship, he had effected, by promising

multa per Fulviam, ut Quintus Curius, de  
many (things) through Fulvia, that Quintus Curius, of

quo memoravi paulò antè, proderet consilia  
whom I have recorded (spoken) a little before, might betray the designs

Catilinæ sibi. Ad-hoc perpulerat suum collegam  
of Catilinè to him. Besides he had forced his colleague

Antonium pactione provinciæ,  
Antony by the agreement (promise) of a province,

ne-sentiret contra rempublicam :  
that he would not-feel (entertain ill-will) against the republic :

habebat occultè præsidia amicorum atque clientium  
he did have secretly guards of friends and dependants

circum se. Postquam dies comitiorum venit, et  
about himself. When the day of elections came, and

neque petitio Catilinæ, neque insidiæ quas fecerat  
neither the suit of Catiline, nor the snares which he had made

consuli cessère prosperè, constituit facere bellum  
for the consul resulted favourably, he resolved to make war

et experiri omnia extrema, quoniam, quæ  
and to try all extreme (things), since, what (things)

tentaverat occultè, evenerant aspera que fœda.  
he had tried secretly, had happened rough and disgraceful.

Igitur dimisit Caium Manlium Fæsulas,  
Therefore he dismissed (sent) Caius Manlius (to) Fæsulæ,

atque in eam partem Etruriæ, quemdam Septimium,  
and to that part of Etruria, a certain Septimius,

Camertem in Picenum agrum, Caium Julium in  
a Camertian to the Picene land, Caius Julius to

Apuliam, præterea alium alio, quem que ubi  
Apulia, moreover another to-another-place, whom and where

credebat fore opportunum sibi. Interea  
he did believe to-be-about-to-be suitable to himself. Mean-time

moliri multa Romæ simul :  
(he began) to contrive many (things) at Rome at-the-same-time :

tendere insidias consuli; parare incendia;  
to lay snares for the consul; to prepare burnings;

obsidere opportuna loca armatis hominibus:  
to block-up convenient places with armed men:

ipse esse cum telo, item jubere alios,  
himself to be with a weapon, also to order others, [he himself was

hortari uti essent  
armed, and ordered others to be so], to exhort that they might be

semper intenti que parati; festinare dies que  
always intent and prepared; to hasten days and

noctes; vigilare;  
nights; [he was actively employed day and night]; to watch;

fatigari neque insomniis (pl.) neque labore.  
to be fatigued neither by-want-of-sleep nor by labour.

Postremo, ubi nihil procedit agitantī multa,  
Finally, when nothing succeeds [with him] projecting many

rursus convocat principes conjurationis  
(things), again he assembles the chiefs of the conspiracy

intempestâ nocte, per Marcum Porcium Læcam,  
in untimely night, through Marcus Porcius Læca,

que ibi questus multa de ignaviâ eorum,  
and there having complained many (much) of the indolence of them,

docet se præmisisse Manlium  
he informs (them) himself to-have-sent-before (despatched) Manlius

ad eam multitudinem, quam paraverat ad arma  
to that multitude, which he had prepared to arms

capiunda; item alios in alia opportuna  
to-be-taken (to take arms); also others to other convenient

loca, qui facerent initium belli; que se  
places, who might make (to make) a beginning of war; and himself

cupere proficisci ad exercitum, si  
to desire [that he desired] to-set-out to the army, if he might

oppressisset Ciceronem prius: eum  
have (had) destroyed Cicero before: him (Cicero)

officere multum suis consiliis.  
to obstruct much to his designs. [If he could destroy Cicero before

Igitur,  
he departed, as Cicero obstructed him much in his designs]. Therefore,

cæteris perterritis ac dubitantibus, Caius  
 the rest having been affrighted and hesitating, Caius  
 Cornelius, Romanus eques, pollicitus suam operam,  
 Cornelius, a Roman knight, having promised [his] assistance,  
 et cum eo Lucius Vargunteius, senator,  
 and with him Lucius Vargunteius, a senator, [they]  
 constituere eâ nocte paulò post, introire cum  
 appointed on that night a little after, to go-in with  
 armatis hominibus ad Ciceronem, sicuti salutatum,  
 armed men to Cicero, as [if] to salute  
 et confodere de-improviso imparatum,  
 [him], and to stab on-a-sudden (him) unprepared,  
 suæ domi. Curius, ubi intelligit quantum  
 at his-own house. Curius, when he understands how-great  
 periculum impendat consuli, properè enunciat  
 danger may depend (impends) to the consul, hastily declares  
 Ciceroni per Fulviam, dolum qui parabatur. Ita  
 to Cicero through Fulvia, the plot which was prepared. Thus  
 illi prohibiti januâ, susceperant tantum  
 they having been prohibited from the gate, had-undertaken so-great  
 facinus frustrâ. Interea Manlius sollicitare  
 a crime in-vain. Mean-time Manlius (began) to solicit  
 plebem in Etruriâ, cupidam  
 (excite to insurrection) the commonalty in Etruria, desirous  
 novarum rerum simul egestate, ac  
 of new things (a revolution) at-the-same-time from want, and  
 dolore injuriæ: quòd amiserat  
 resentment of injury: because (the common people) had lost (their)  
 agros que omnia bona dominatione Sullæ;  
 lands and all (their) goods by the usurpation of Sylla;  
 præterea latrones cujuscunque generis, quorum  
 moreover robbers of every kind, of whom  
 magna copia erat in eâ regione, nonnullos  
 a great plenty (number) was in that region, [also] some  
 ex Sullanis colonis, quibus lubido atque luxuria  
 of the Syllanian colonists, to whom lust and luxury  
 fecerant nihil reliqui ex magnis rapinis.  
 made nothing remaining (left nothing) out-of great plunders.

Cùm ea nunciarentur Ciceroni, permotus  
 When those (things) might be (were) told to Cicero, much-disturbed  
 ancipiti malo, quòd neque-poterat longiùs tueri  
 by the double evil, because he was-not-able longer to protect  
 urbem ab insidiis privato consilio,  
 the city from stratagems by private contrivance, [vigilance],  
 neque habebat satis compertum quantus exercitus  
 neither had he sufficiently found-out how-great the army  
 Manlii foret, aut quo consilio;  
 of Manlius might-be (was), or with what design; [what was its de-  
 sign]; he refers the matter to the senate, harassed (canvassed)  
 jam antea rumoribus vulgi. Itaque senatus  
 even before by the rumours of the mob. Therefore the senate  
 decrevit quod solet plerumque in atroci negotio,  
 decreed what is-wont generally in [an atrocious] business,  
 consules darent operam,  
 [in a dangerous emergency], (that) the consuls should give exertion,  
 ne respublica caperet quid detrimenti. Ea  
 lest the republic should take any of injury. That  
 maxuma potestas permittitur magistratui  
 very-great power is allowed to a (supreme) magistrate  
 per senatum, Romano more, parare exercitum,  
 by the senate, by Roman custom, to prepare an army,  
 gerere bellum, coercere socios atque cives omnibus  
 to carry-on war, to coerce allies and citizens in all  
 modis: habere summum imperium atque iudicium  
 manners: to have the chief government and judgment  
 domi que militiæ. Aliter jus earum  
 (civil rule) at-home and abroad. Otherwise privilege of those  
 rerum est nulli consuli sine jussu populi.  
 things is to no consul without command of the people.  
 Post paucos dies, Lucius Senius, senator, recitabat  
 After a few days, Lucius Senius, a senator, did read-aloud  
 in senatu literas quas dicebat  
 in the senate letters (a letter), which he did say (to have been)  
 allatas sibi Fœsulis, in quibus erat scriptum,  
 brought to him from Fœsulæ, in which was written, [that]

**Caium Manlium cepisse** **arma cum magnâ**  
 Caius Manlius to have taken [had taken] arms with a great

**multitudine ante sextam diem kalendarum**  
 multitude before the sixth day of the calends

**Novembris.** **Simul id quod solet**  
 of November (27th October). At-the-same-time that which is-usual

**in tali re, alii nuntiabant portenta atque**  
 in such thing (a case), some did announce omens and

**prodigia; alii conventus fieri, arma portari,**  
 prodigies; others assemblies to be made (held), arms to be conveyed;

**servile bellum moveri Capuæ atque in Apuliâ.**  
 a servile war to be excited at Capua and in Apulia.

**Igitur decreto senati, missi Quintus Marcius**  
 Therefore by a decree of the senate, were sent Quintus Marcius

**Rex Fæsulas; Q. Metellus Creticus in Apuliam**  
 Rex to Fæsulæ; Quintius Metellus Créticus into Apulia

**que ea loca circum. Hi utrique erant imperatores**  
 and those places around. These both were generals

**ad urbem; impediti ne triumpharent calumniâ**  
 to (near) the city; prevented lest they might triumph by the calumny

**paucorum,**  
 of a few, [both these were generals, without the walls of the city, pre-

**vented by the calumnies of a few, from having their triumph],** **quibus**  
 vented by the calumnies of a few, from having their triumph], to whom

**mos erat vendere omnia, honesta atque**  
 custom was to sell all (things), honourable and

**inhonesta. Sed prætores Quintus Pompeius**  
 dishonourable. But the pretors (were sent) Quintus Pompeius

**Rufus Capuam, Quintus Metellus Celer in Picenum**  
 Rufus to Capua, Quintus Metellus Celer to the Picene

**agrum: que permissum his, uti compararent**  
 land: and (it was) allowed to these, that they might levy

**exercitum pro tempore atque periculo. Ad-hoc**  
 an army according-to time and danger. Besides

**si quis indicâset de**  
 (they decreed) if any-one should have informed (had informed) of

**conjurazione quæ facta-erat contra rempublicam,**  
 the conspiracy which was made against the republic,



præmium, libertatem servo, et H. S. C.  
 a reward, (viz.) freedom to a slave, and a hundred-thousand  
 (centum sestertia); libero impunitatem ejus rei  
 sesterces; to a free-man impunity of that thing  
 et H. S. C. C. (ducenta sestertia); que item  
 and two-hundred-thousand sesterces; and also  
 decrevere, uti gladiatoriae familiae distribuerentur  
 they decreed, that the gladiator families should be distributed  
 Capuam, et in caetera municipia, pro  
 to Capua, and into other municipal-towns, according-to  
 opibus cujusque; vigiliae haberentur  
 the resources (strength) of each; watches should be kept  
 per totam urbem Romae, que minores  
 throughout the whole city of Rome, and the inferior  
 magistratus praessent eis. Quibus rebus civitas  
 magistrates should preside-over them. By which things the state  
 erat permota atque facies urbis immutata:  
 was disturbed and the appearance of the city changed:  
 tristitia repente invasit omnis (omnes) ex summâ  
 sadness suddenly invaded all after the utmost  
 lætitiâ atque lascivia, quæ diuturna quies  
 rejoicing and sportiveness, which a long peace  
 pepererat. Festinare, trepidare, neque  
 had produced. (They began) to hasten, to tremble, neither  
 satis credere cuiquam loco neque homini: neque  
 sufficiently to trust to any place nor man: neither  
 gerere bellum, neque habere pacem: quisque  
 to carry-on war, nor to have peace: every-one  
 metiri pericula suo metu. Ad-hoc mulieres,  
 to measure dangers by his-own fear. Besides the women,  
 quibus pro magnitudine reipublicæ insolitus timor  
 to whom [for the greatness of the republic] an unusual fear  
 belli incesserat, afflictare sese; tendere  
 of war had attacked, (began) to afflict themselves; to stretch  
 supplices manus ad cælum; misereri parvos  
 suppliant hands to heaven; to compassionate (their) little  
 liberos; rogare; pavere omnia, superbiâ  
 children; to ask-frequently; to dread all (things), pride

atque deliciis omissis, diffidere sibi que  
and refinements being left-aside, to distrust for themselves and

patriæ. At crudelis animus  
country. [They distrusted every thing]. But the cruel mind

Catilinæ movebat illa eadem, tametsi præsidia  
of Catiline did project those same (things), although guards

parabantur, et ipse interrogatus-erat ab Lucio  
were prepared, and himself had been impeached by Lucius

Paulus Plautiâ lege: postremò, venit in senatum,  
Paulus (on) the Plautian law: lastly, he came into the senate,

causâ dissimulandi, et quasi sui  
by cause (for the sake) of dissembling, and as-it-were of-himself

expurgandi; sicuti lacesitus-foret  
to be-cleared (clearing himself); as-though he might be provoked (was pro-

vorgio. Tum Marcus Tullius consul, sive timens  
voked) by defamation. Then Marcus Tullius the consul, either fearing

præsentiam ejus sive commotus irâ, habuit  
the presence of him or being excited by anger, had (delivered)

orationem luculentam atque utilem reipublicæ, quam  
a speech brilliant and useful to the republic, which

postea edidit scriptam. Sed ubi ille assedit,  
afterwards he published written. But when he sat-down,

Catilina, ut paratus-erat ad omnia dissimulanda  
Catiline, as he had been prepared for all (things) to-be-dissembled

demisso vultu que  
(to dissemble all things) (began) with down-cast countenance and

supplici voce postulare à Patribus  
suppliant voice to request from the Fathers (senate) (that)

ne-crederent temerè quid de se;  
they might not believe rashly any (thing) concerning him;

ortum eâ familiâ, ita instituisse  
(being) sprung from that (such) family, so to have regulated (his)

vitam ab adolescentiâ, ut haberet omnia bona  
life from adolescence, that he might have all good

in spe: ne-existumarent opus esse sibi,  
(things) in hope: they should not-think need to be to him,

patricio homini, beneficia cujus ipsius atque  
a patrician man, the favours of whom self and (his)

**majorum essent plurima in Romanam**  
 ancestors might be (were) very-many toward the Roman  
**plebem, republicâ perditâ;**  
 commons, (of) the republic destroyed (of destroying the republic);  
**cùm Marcus Tullius, inquilinus civis Romæ,**  
 when Marcus Tullius, an alien (adventitious) citizen of Rome,  
**servaret eam. Ad-huc, cùm adderet alia**  
 would preserve it. Moreover, when he would add other  
**maledicta; omnes obstrepere, vocare hostem**  
 revilings; all (began) to interrupt, to call (him) an enemy  
**atque parricidam. Tum ille furibundus, inquit,**  
 and parricide. Then he raging, says,  
**"Quoniam quidem circumventus agor præceps**  
 "Since indeed beset I am driven headlong  
**ab inimicis, extinguiam meum incendium**  
 by (my) enemies, I will extinguish my burning [destruction]  
**ruinâ."** Dein proripuit se domum ex  
 by (universal) ruin." Then he hurried himself home out-of  
**curiâ: ipse volvens multa secum ibi,**  
 the senate-house: he revolving many (things) with himself there,  
**quod neque insidiæ consuli procedebant,**  
 because neither the stratagems for [against] the consul did succeed,  
**et intelligebat urbem munitam ab incendio**  
 and he did understand the city (to be) secured from fire  
**vigiliis, credens optimum factu augere**  
 by watches, believing (it) best to be done to increase (his)  
**exercitum, ac ante-capere multa quæ forent**  
 army, and to anticipate many (things) which might be  
**usui bello prius-quàm legiones scriberentur,**  
 to advantage for war before-that the legions should be levied,  
**profectus-est intempestâ nocte cum paucis in**  
 he set-out in untimely (very-late) night with a few into  
**Manliana castra. Sed mandat Cethego, atque**  
 the Manlian camp. But he commands to Cethegus, and  
**Lentulo que cæteris, promptam audaciam quorum**  
 Lentulus and others, the ready boldness of whom  
**cognoverat, confirment opes**  
 he had known, (that) they may strengthen (to strengthen) the resources

factionis quibus rebus possent, maturent  
 of the faction by what things they might be-able, may hasten  
 insidias consuli, parent cædem,  
 (to hasten) snares for the consul, may prepare (to prepare) slaughter,  
 incendia, que alia facinora belli: sese  
 burnings, and other cruel-deeds of war: himself (to be)  
 accessurum propediem cum magno exercitu  
 about-to-approach shortly with a great army  
 ad urbem. Dum hæc geruntur Romæ,  
 to the city. Whilst these (things) are carried-on at Rome,  
 Caius Manlius mittit legatos ex suo numero  
 Caius Manlius sends ambassadors out-of his-own number  
 ad Quintum Martium Regem cum mandatis hujusce-  
 to Quintus Martius Rex with commands of this-  
 modi.  
 kind.

Testamur deos que homines, imperator, nos  
 We attest gods and men, [O commander,] us  
 cepisse arma neque contra  
 to have taken (that we have taken) arms neither against [our]  
 patriam, neque quò faceremus periculum aliis,  
 country, nor in-order-that we might make danger to others,  
 sed uti nostra corpora forent tuta ab injuriâ:  
 but that our bodies might be safe from injury:  
 qui miseri, egentes, plerique sumus expertes,  
 who wretched, needing, most (of us) are deprived,  
 violentiâ atque crudelitate fœneratorum, patriæ,  
 by the violence and cruelty of usurers, (of) country,  
 sed omnes famâ atque fortunâ: neque  
 but all [from] of character and fortune: and  
 licuit cuiquam nostrum, more majorum  
 has it been-lawful for any of us, in the manner of (our) ancestors  
 uti lege, neque habere liberum corpus,  
 to use the law, nor to have a free body (person), (our)  
 patrimonio amisso: tanta fuit sævitia fœne-  
 patrimony having been lost: so-great has been the cruelty of the usu-  
 ratorum atque prætoris. Sæpe majores  
 rers and pretor (chancellor). Often the ancestors

- **vestrūm miseriti Romanæ plebis, opitulati-sunt**  
of you having pitied the Roman commonalty, relieved  
**inopiæ ejus suis decretis: ac propter magnitudinem**  
the want of it by their decrees: and on-account-of the magnitude
- **alieni-aeris argentum solutum-est ære novissumè,**  
of debt silver was-paid by brass very-lately,  
**vestrâ memoriâ, omnibus bonis volentibus:**  
in your memory, all good (persons) willing (assenting).  
**Sæpe plebes ipsa, permota aut studio**  
Often the commons themselves, influenced either by a zeal  
**dominandi aut superbiâ magistratuum, secessit**  
of ruling or by the pride of the magistrates, seceded  
**armata à patribus. At nos petimus non imperium**  
armed from the fathers. But we seek not command  
**neque divitias, causâ quarum omnia bella atque**  
nor riches, on-account of which all wars and  
**certamina sunt inter mortalis (mortales): sed-**  
contests are among mortals: but  
**libertatem, quam nemo bonus amittit, nisi**  
liberty, which no good (man) loses, unless  
**simul cum animâ. Obtestamur te atque senatum,**  
together with life. We conjure thee and the senate,  
**consulatis miseris civibus;**  
(that) you may consult (that you provide) for wretched citizens;  
**restituatis præsidium legis, quod iniquitas**  
may restore (restore) the security of the law, which the iniquity  
**prætoris eripuit, neve-imponatis nobis**  
of the pretor has taken-away, and (that) you impose-not on us  
**necessitudinem, ut quæramus quonam modo**  
the necessity, that we may seek (to seek) in what manner  
**pereamus, ulti maxumè nostrum sanguinem.**  
we may perish, having avenged-chiefly best) our blood

[after having sold our lives dearly].

Quintus Martius respondit ad hæc, Si  
Quintus Martius answered to these (things), If  
vellent petere quid ab senatu,  
they would [wished] to seek any (thing) from the senate,

discedant ab armis, proficiscantur supplices Romam :  
 they may depart from arms, may-set-out suppliant to Rome

[they should lay down their arms, and go as suppliants to Rome]:

senatum que Romanum populum  
 (he answers) [that] the senate . and Roman people

fuisse semper eâ misericordiâ  
 to have been always with (of) [always possessed] that pity

atque mansuetudine, ut nemo unquam petiverit  
 and gentleness, that no-one ever may have sought

auxilium ab eo frustra. At Catilina ex  
 (has sought) aid from it in vain. But Catiline on

itinere mittit literas plerisque consularibus,  
 (his) journey sends letters to most consular-men,

præterea cuique optumo :  
 moreover to each most excellent [and distinguished] (person):

se circumventum falsis criminibus, quoniam  
 himself being beset by false accusations, since

nequiverit resistere factioni  
 he may have been-unable (was unable) to withstand to the faction

inimicorum, proficisci Massiliam in exilium ;  
 of (his) enemies, to set-out to Massilia into banishment ;

non quòd esset conscius sibi tanti sceleris,  
 not because he might be conscious to himself of so-great a crime,

sed uti respublica foret quieta ; ve ne seditio  
 but that the republic might be peaceable ; or lest a sedition

oriretur ex suâ contentione. Quintus Catulus  
 might arise out-of his dispute. Quintus Catulus

recitavit in senatu literas longè diversas ab  
 read-aloud in the senate letters (a letter) far different from

his ; quas dicebat redditas sibi nomine  
 these (this) ; which he did say (to be) delivered to him in the name

Catilinæ. Exemplum earum scriptum-est infrâ.  
 of Catiline. The copy of those (it) has been written beneath.

Lucius Catilina Quinto Catulo salutans. Tua egregia  
 Lucius Catiline to Quintus Catulus greeting. Thy excellent

fides, grata mihi, re cognitâ,  
 faith (honour), [so] agreeable to me, the thing having been known

tribuit fiduciam meâ  
[and known to me by experience], has afforded a confidence to my  
commendationi meis magnis periculis. Quamobrem  
recommendation in my great dangers. Wherefore

statui non parare defensionem in novo  
I have resolved not to prepare a defence in (my) new  
consilio: decrevi proponere satisfactionem ex  
design: I have determined to propose satisfaction from

nullâ conscientiâ de culpâ, quæ medius-fidius  
no consciousness of fault, which by Jove's-son (Hercules)

licet recognoscas mecum vera. Concitatus  
it-is-lawful you may recognise with me (to be) true. Provoked

injuriis que contumeliis, quòd privatus  
by injuries and insults, that having been deprived [that have

fructu laboris que meæ industriæ,  
deprived me] (of) the fruit of [my] labour and my industry,

obtinebam non statum dignitatis,  
I did possess not the station of dignity [and which prevented me

suscepi, pro  
from obtaining the dignity of consul], I have undertaken, according-to  
meâ consuetudine, publicam causam miserorum:  
my custom, the public cause of the wretched:

non quin possem solvere alienum-æs meis  
not but I might be-able to discharge the debt in-my-own

nominibus ex possessionibus;  
names (on my own account) out-of (my) possessions;

cùm et liberalitas Aureliæ Orestillæ persolveret  
when and (also) the liberality of Aurelia Orestilla would discharge

aliis nominibus,  
(debt) under other names (the securities for his debts) [his surety-

suis que copiis  
ship for the debts of others], from her-own and the resources of (her)

filix: sed quòd videbam non-dignos homines  
daughter: but because I did see unworthy men

honestatos honore, que sentiebam me  
dignified by honour (preferment), and did feel myself

alienatum falsâ suspicione. Hoc nomine  
estranged by a false suspicion. With this name (consideration)

**secutus-sum satis honestas spes reliquæ dignitatis**  
 I have-followed sufficiently honourable hopes of remaining dignity

**conservandæ** pro  
 to-be-preserved (of preserving my remaining dignity) according-to

**meo casu. Cûm vellem scribere plura, nunciatum-est**  
 my condition. When I would to write more, it has been told

**vim parari mihi. Nunc**  
 violence to be prepared (that violence was designed) for me. Now

**commendo Orestillam tibi, que trado tuæ fidei.**  
 I commend Orestilla to thee, and I deliver (her) to thy honour.

**Rogatus per tuos liberos defendas eam**  
 Entreated by thy children (that) thou mayest defend her

**ab injuriâ. Haveto.**  
 from injury. Farewell.

**Sed ipse, commoratus paucos dies apud Caium**  
 But he, having delayed a few days with Caius

**Flaminium in Reatino agro, dum exornat armis**  
 Flaminius in the Reatine land, whilst he furnishes with arms

**vicinitatem antea sollicitatam, contendit cum**  
 the neighbourhood before stirred-up, hastens with

**fascibus atque aliis insignibus imperii in castra**  
 the fasces and other ensigns of authority to the camps

**ad Manlium. Ubi hæc comperta-sunt Romæ,**  
 to Manlius. When these (things) were found-out at Rome,

**senatus judicat Catilinam et Manlium hostes; statuit**  
 the senate judges Catiline and Manlius enemies; appoints

**diem cæteræ multitudini, ante quam liceret**  
 a day for the other multitude, before which it might be-lawful

**discedere ab armis, sine fraude,** præter  
 to depart from arms, [without fraud] [with impunity], except

**condemnatis capitalium rerum. Præ-**  
 for (those) condemned of capital things (crimes). More-

**terea decernit, uti consules habeant**  
 over it (the senate) decrees, that the consuls may have (should hold)

**delectum; Antonius maturet persequi**  
 a levy; [that] Antony may (should) hasten to pursue

**Catilinum cum exercitu; Cicero sit præsidio**  
 Catiline [with] an army; [that] Cicero be for a protection



urbi. Imperium Romani  
 to the city [should protect the city]. The government of the Roman  
 populi visum-est mihi multò maxumè miserabile  
 people has appeared to me by much the most pitiable  
 eâ tempestate: cui cùm omnia ab ortu  
 at that time: to which when all (things) from [the] rising  
 ad occasum solis, domita armis, parerent;  
 to the setting of the sun, subdued by arms, might obey (obeyed);  
 otium atque divitiæ, quæ mortales putant prima,  
 leisure and riches, which mortals think the chief  
 adfluere domi; fuere, tamen,  
 (blessings), might abound (abounded) at home; there were, however,  
 cives, qui irent obstinatis animis perditum  
 citizens, who would go (went) with obstinate minds to destroy  
 que se que rempublicam. Namque neque  
 both themselves and the republic. For neither  
 quisquam omnium ex tantâ multitudine, duobus  
 any one of-all out-of so-great a multitude, two  
 decretis senati, inductus præmio, patefacerat  
 decrees of the senate (existing), induced by reward, had discovered  
 conjurationem discesserat ex castris (pl.)  
 the conspiracy, [or] had departed out-of the camp  
 Catilinæ. Tanta vis morbi, atque uti tabes,  
 of Catiline. So-great a violence of disease, and as an infection,  
 invaserat plerosque animos civium. Neque mens  
 had seized most the minds of the citizens. Neither the mind  
 erat aliena solùm illis, qui fuerunt conscii  
 was disaffected only to those, who were conscious (privy to)  
 conjurationis, sed cuncta plebes omnino probabat  
 of the conspiracy, but all the common-people altogether did approve  
 incepta Catilinæ, studio novarum rerum.  
 the undertakings of Catiline, from a zeal of new things  
 Adeo videbatur facere  
 (a revolution). Thus it (the common-people) seemed to do  
 id suo more. Nam semper in civitate,  
 that from their custom. For always in a state, (they)  
 quibus nullæ opes sunt, invident bonis, extollunt  
 to whom no resources are, envy the good, extol

malos, odêre vetera, exoptant nova;  
 the bad, have hated (hate) old (things); wish-for new;  
 student omnia mutari odio suarum  
 desire all (things) to be changed from a hatred of their-own  
 rerum, aluntur sine curâ turba, atque  
 things, are maintained without care in crowd (confusion), and  
 seditionibus: quoniam egestas retinetur facilè sine  
 seditions: since want is retained easily without  
 damno. Sed verò ea urbana  
 loss [poverty can lose nothing]. But indeed that city  
 plebes ierat præceps de multis causis. Primùm  
 commonalty had gone headlong for many causes. First  
 omnium qui ubique maxumè præstabant probro  
 of all (they) who [everywhere] chiefly did excel in infamy  
 atque petulantia; item alii, patrimoniis amissis  
 and impudence; likewise others, (their) patrimonies having been lost  
 per dedecora; postremò, omnes quos flagitium aut  
 through disgraces; lastly, all whom wickedness or  
 facinus expulerat domo; hi confluerunt  
 crime had driven-out from home; these flowed-together  
 Romam, sicuti in sentinam. Dein multi memores  
 to Rome, as to a sewer. Then many mindful  
 Sullanæ victoriæ, quòd videbant alios ex  
 of the Syllanian victory, because they did see others (some) of  
 gregariis militibus senatores; alios ita divites ut  
 the common soldiers senators; others so rich that  
 agerent ætatem regio victu atque  
 they might spend age (their life) with royal food and  
 cultu; quisque sperabat talia sibi ex  
 dress; every-one did hope such (things) for himself from  
 victoriâ, si foret in armis. Præterea juvenus,  
 victory, if he might be in arms. Besides the youth,  
 quæ toleraverat inopiam in agris mercede  
 who has supported poverty in the fields by the reward  
 manuum, excita privatis atque publicis  
 of hands (manual labour), excited by private and public  
 largitionibus, prætulerat urbanum otium ingrato  
 bribes, had preferred city ease to disagreeable

labori. Publicum malum alebat eos atque omnis  
labour. The public calamity did maintain these and all

(omnes) alios. Quò est minùs mirandum,  
others (such). Wherefore it is less to-be-wondered-at,

egentis (egentes) homines, malis moribus,  
[that] needy men, with bad principles,

maxumâ spe consuluisse juxtâ reipublicæ ac  
with the greatest hope to have consulted equally for the republic and  
sibi.

themselves. [Had consulted their private interest as much as that of the

Præterea parentes quorum  
republic]. Moreover. (those) the parents of whom (were)

proscripti victoriâ Sullæ, bona erepta,  
proscribed in the victory of Sylla, (their) goods snatched-away, [and

jus libertatis erat imminutum, expectabant  
the] privilege of liberty was impaired, did await

eventum belli haud sanè alio animo.  
the issue of the war not indeed with other mind. [With like feelings].

Ad-hoc, quicumque erant aliarum partium atque  
Besides, whosoever were of other factions than (that)

senatûs, malebant rempublicam conturbari quàm  
of the senate, had-rather the republic to be disturbed than

ipsi valere minùs: adeò id  
they to prevail less: [should have less influence]: so that

malum reverterat in civitatem post multos annos.  
evil had returned to the state after many years.

Nam postquam tribunitia potestas restituta-est,  
For after the tribunician power was restored,

Cneio Pompeio et Marco Crasso consulibus,  
Cneius Pompey and Marcus Crassus (being) consuls,

adolescentes homines nacti summam potestatem,  
young men having obtained the highest power,

quibus ætas que animus erat ferox,  
[the tribunician], to whom age and mind was fierce

cœpere exagitare plebem criminando  
(ardent), began to harass [agitate] the commons by accusing

senatum; dein incendere magis largiundo,  
the senate; then to inflame (them) more by bribing,

atque pollicitando; ita ipsi  
 and by promising-often; [by bribes and promises]; thus they (began)  
 fieri clari que potentes. Pleraque nobilitas  
 to be made conspicuous and powerful. Most the nobility  
 nitebatur contra eos summâ ope:  
 endeavoured against them with utmost might: [the greater part of the

sub specie  
 nobility strove against them with all their might]: under pretence  
 senatûs, pro suâ magnitudine. Namque  
 of (for) the senate, (but) for their own greatness. For

utî absolvam verum paucis, quicumque  
 that I may despatch true (the truth) in a few (words), whosoever  
 agitavere rempublicam per illa tempora,  
 harassed the republic during those times, (under)

honestis nominibus, alii sicuti defenderent  
 honourable names (pretences), some as-though they would defend

jura populi; pars quò auctoritas senatûs  
 the rights of the people; part in-order-that the authority of the senate  
 foret maxuma, simulantes publicum bonum,  
 might be the greatest, pretending the public good, [but]

certabant quisque pro suâ potentiâ: neque  
 did contend each for his-own power: neither

modestia, neque modus contentionis erat illis:  
 moderation, nor (limit) of dispute was to them:

utrique  
 [their contests with one another were carried on most violently]: both

exercebant victoriam crudeliter. Sed postquam  
 did exercise victory cruelly. But after

Cneius Pompeius missus-est ad maritimum atque  
 Cneius Pompeius was-sent to the maritime and

Mithridaticum bellum, opes plebis  
 Mithridatic war, the resources of the commons (were)

imminutæ, potentia paucorum crevit. Hi  
 impaired, the power of a few increased. These (began)

tenere magistratus, provincias, que omnia alia:  
 to possess magistracies, provinces, and all other (things):

ipsi innoxii, florentes, agere ætatem sine  
 they free-from-injury, flourishing, to-spend age without

metu, que terrere cæteros judiciis,  
 fear, and to affright others by judgments, [they free from

quod  
 danger, alarmed others by judicial investigations], in-order-that (when)  
 in magistratu tractarent plebem placidiùs.  
 in the magistracy they might manage the commons more-gently.

Sed ubi spes  
 [And not excite commotions among them]. But when hope

oblata-est dubiis rebus novandis, vetus  
 was offered for [adverse] things to-be-renewed (changed), the old  
 certamen arrexuit animos eorum. Quodd  
 contest raised the minds of them. [Raised their courage]. But

si Catilina discessisset superior  
 if Catiline might have departed (had departed) (come off) superior  
 primo prælio, aut æquâ manu, profectò magna  
 in the first battle, or with an equal force, indeed a great

clades atque calamitas oppressisset rempublicam,  
 slaughter and calamity might have oppressed the republic,

neque licuisset illis qui  
 neither might it have been-lawful [permitted] for those who

adepti-forent victoriam uti eâ  
 might have obtained (had obtained) victory to use it

diutius; quin qui posset-plus extorqueret  
 [longer]; but (the party) who might be more powerful would wrest

imperium atque libertatem defessis et exsanguibus.  
 authority and liberty from the wearied and exhausted.

Tamen complures fuere extra conjurationem, qui  
 However many were without the conspiracy, who

profecti-sunt initio ad Catilinam. In his  
 set-out in the beginning to Catiline. Among these

erat Fulvius, filius senatoris, quem parens jussit  
 was Fulvius, the son of a senator, whom (his) father ordered

retractum ex itinere, necari. Tisdem  
 brought-back from (his) journey, to be-put-to-death. At the same

temporibus Lentulus sollicitabat Romæ quoscumque  
 times (time) Lentulus did stir-up at Rome whomsoever

credebat idoneos, moribus aut fortunâ, novis  
 he did believe fit, by morals or fortune, for new

rebus, sicuti Catilina præceperat; neque  
 things (a revolution), as Catiline had ordered; neither  
 solùm cives, sed genus hominum cujuscumque  
 only citizens, but a kind of men of any (whatever)  
 modi, quod modò foret usui bello. Igitur  
 description, which only might be for advantage to the war. Therefore  
 dat negotium cuidam Publio Umbreno,  
 he gives business a (commission) to a certain Publius Umbrenus,  
 uti requirat legatos Allobrogum: que impellat  
 that he may find-out the deputies of the Allobroges: and impel  
 eos, si possit, ad societatem belli, existumans  
 them, if he may be able, to an alliance of the war, thinking,  
 eos oppressos publicè que privatim alieno-ære:  
 those oppressed publicly and privately by debt:  
 præterea quòd Gallica gens esset bellicosa  
 moreover that the Gallic nation might be (was) warlike  
 naturâ, posse facîle adduci ad tale  
 by nature, to be able (might) easily be brought-over to such  
 consilium. Umbrenus notus-erat plerisque principibus  
 a design. Umbrenus had been known to most the chiefs  
 civitatum, atque noverat eos, quòd negotiatus-erat  
 of the states, and had known them, because he had trafficked  
 in Galliâ: itaque sine morâ, ubi-primum conspexit  
 in Gaul: therefore without delay, as-soon-as he beheld  
 legatos in foro, percunctatus pauca  
 the deputies in the market-place, [forum], having inquired a few  
 de statu civitatis, et quasi dolens  
 (things) concerning the condition of the state, and as-if bemoaning  
 casum ejus, coëpit requirere quem exitum sperarent  
 the lot of it, began to ask what issue they might hope  
 tantis malis. Postquam videt illos queri  
 to so-great evils. After he sees [that] them to complain  
 de avaritiâ magistratum, accusare  
 [they complain] of the avarice of the magistrates, to accuse  
 senatum, quòd esset nihil auxilii in  
 the senate, because there might be (was) nothing of redress in  
 eo; expectare mortem remedium suis  
 it; [and] to await death (as) a remedy for their

miseriis : "At ego," inquit, "ostendam rationem  
 miseries : "But I," he says, "will-point-out a plan

vobis, si modo-vultis esse viri,  
 to you, if you-only-wish to be men, [if you would only be men],

quâ effugiatis ista tanta mala." Ubi dixit  
 by which you may escape those so-great evils." When he said

hæc, Allobroges adducti in maxumam spem,  
 these (things), the Allobroges led into the greatest hope,

orare Umbrenum uti misereretur sui :

(began) to entreat [Umbrenus] that he might pity themselves : [that]

nihil esse tam asperum, neque tam difficile,  
 nothing to be [was] so rough, nor so difficult,

quod facturi-essent non cupidissimè,  
 which they would-be-about-to-do not most-desirously, [but that they

dum ea res liberaret civitatem  
 would most willingly do], provided that thing might free the state

alieno-ære. Ille perducit eos in domum Decii  
 from debt. He leads them into the house of Decius

Bruti, quod erat propinqua foro, neque aliena  
 Brutus, because it was near to the forum, and not unacquainted

consilii propter Semproniam, nam Brutus  
 of the design (conspiracy) on-account-of Sempronius, for Brutus

aberat tum ab Româ. Præterea arcessit  
 was absent then from Rome. Besides he sends-for

Gabinium, quod major auctoritas inesset  
 Gabinius, in-order-that greater authority might be-in to (his)

sermoni; eo præsentè, aperit conjurationem,  
 discourse; he being present, he discloses the conspiracy,

nominat socios, præterea multos innoxios  
 names the associates, moreover many innocent (men)

cujusque generis, quod animus esset  
 of every kind, in-order-that mind (courage) might be

amplior legatis: dein dimittit eos domum,  
 greater to the deputies: then he dismisses them home,

pollicitos suam operam. Sed Allobroges habuere  
 having promised their assistance. But the Allobroges had

diu in incertum, quidnam consilii  
 for-a-long-time into uncertain (were in doubt), what of counsel

**caperent.** In altera parte erat alienum-**as,**  
 they might take. In the other (one) part was debt,  
**studium belli, magna merces in spe victoriæ;** at  
 zeal of war, great reward in the hope of victory; but  
**maiores opes, tuta consilia, certa præmia pro**  
 greater resources, safe counsels, certain rewards instead-of  
**incertâ spe in alterâ.** Illis volventibus hæc,  
 uncertain hope on the other (side). They revolving these

**tandem fortuna reipublicæ vicit.** Itaque  
 (things) at-length the fortune of the state prevailed. Therefore

**aperiunt omnem rem, uti cognoverant, Quinto**  
 they disclose all the thing, as they had known (it), to Quintus

**Fabio Sangæ, patrocínio cujus civitas utebatur**  
 Fabius Sanga, the patronage of whom the state did use

**plurimum.** Cicero, consilio cognito per  
 very-much. Cicero, the design having been known through

**Sangam, præcipit legatis, ut simulent**  
 Sanga, orders to (the) deputies, that they may pretend (to pre-

**vehementer studium conjurationis;**  
 tend) vehemently a zeal of (for) the conspiracy; may (to)

**adeant cæteros;** polliceantur benè,  
 go-to the rest [of the conspirators]; may (to) promise well,

**que dent operam, ut habeant eos**  
 and may (to) give exertion, [assurance], that they may have them

**quàm maxumè manifestos.**

as most manifest (convicted). [As avowed participants

**Motus erat ferè iisdem**  
 in the conspiracy]. A commotion was almost in the same

**temporibus, in citiore atque ulteriore Galliâ,**  
 times (time), in hither and farther Gaul,

**item in Piceno agro, Bruttio, Apuliâ.** Namque  
 also in the Picene land, in Bruttium, Apulia. For

**illi quos Catilina dimiserat antea agere**  
 they whom Catiline had sent-off [before] (began) to do

**cuncta simul inconsultè, ac veluti**  
 all (things) at-the-same-time inconsiderately, and as-if

**per dementia: effecerant plus timoris**  
 through madness: they had effected more of fear



quàm periculi nocturnis conciliis, portationibus  
 than of danger by nightly councils, by conveyances  
 armorum atque telorum, festinando, agitando  
 of arms and of weapons, by hastening, by agitating  
 omnia. Quintus Metellus Celer, caussâ cognitâ,  
 all (things). Quintus Metellus Celer, the cause being known,  
 conjecerat complures ex eo numero in vincula,  
 had cast many of that number [into prison],  
 ex consulto senatûs. Caius Murena item,  
 according-to a decree of the senate. Caius Murena (did) likewise,  
 in citeriore Galliâ, qui legatus præerat ei  
 in hither Gaul, who (as) lieutenant was-over to that  
 provinciæ. At Lentulus cum cæteris,  
 [presided over that] province. But Lentulus with the others,  
 qui erant principes conjurationis, magnis copiis  
 who were chiefs of the conspiracy, great forces  
 paratis Romæ, uti videbatur, constituerat,  
 having been prepared at Rome, as it did appear, had appointed,  
 uti cùm Catilina venisset cum exercitu  
 that when Catiline might have come (had come) with an army  
 in Fæsulanum agrum, Lucius Bestia, tribunus  
 into the Fæsulan land, Lucius Bestia, tribune  
 plebis, concione habitâ, quereretur de  
 of the commons, an assembly being held, should complain of  
 actionibus Ciceronis, que imponeret invidiam  
 the proceedings of Cicero, and place the odium  
 gravissimi belli optumo consuli;  
 of (this) most-serious war to (on) the most-excellent consul;  
 eo signo, proxumâ nocte, cætera multitudo  
 by that sign (signal), [the next night], the remaining multitude  
 conjurationis exsequeretur quisque suum negotium.  
 [of the conspiracy] should execute each his-own business (part).  
 Sed ea dicebantur divisa hoc modo,  
 But those (parts) were said (to be) divided in this manner,  
 uti Statilius et Gabinus, cum magnâ manu,  
 that Statilius and Gabinus, with a great band,  
 incenderent duodecim opportuna loca urbis  
 should set-fire-to twelve opportune places of the city

simul, quo tumultu facilius aditus fieret  
 at-the-same-time, in which tumult an easier access might be made  
 ad consulem, que cæteros quibus insidiæ parabantur.  
 to the consul, and the others for whom snares were prepared.

Cethegus obsideret januam Ciceronis, que  
 [That] Cethegus should block-up the gate of Cicero, and  
 aggredereetur eum vi; autem alius  
 should attack him with force; but another (should attack)  
 alium: sed filii familiarum, quorum maxuma pars  
 another: but the sons of families, of whom the greatest part  
 erat ex nobilitate; interficerent parentes:  
 was of the nobility, should murder (their) parents:

simul omnibus percussis cæde et incendio,  
 at-the-same-time all being stricken by slaughter and by burning,  
 erumperent ad Catilinam. Inter hæc  
 they should burst-forth (sally) to Catiline. Among these

parata atque decreta, Cethegus querebatur  
 prepared (preparations) and determinations, Cethegus did complain  
 semper de ignaviâ sociorum: illos  
 always of the remissness of (his) associates: [that] those

corrumpere magnas opportunitates  
 to corrupt (mar) [did mar] great opportunities

dubitando et prolatando dies;  
 by hesitating and deferring days [and putting off the time for

esse opus in tali periculo, facto  
 executing the plot]; to be need in such danger, for deed

non consulto: que se, si pauci  
 not for deliberation: and [that] himself, if a few

adjuvant, aliis languentibus, facturum  
 would assist, others being-remiss, about-to-make [would make]

impetum in curiam. Erat naturâ ferox,  
 an attack against the senate-house. He was by nature fierce,

vehemens, promptus manu; putabat maximum  
 vehement, ready in hand (action); he did think the greatest

bonum in celeritate. Sed Allobroges conveniunt  
 good (to be) in despatch. But the Allobroges assemble

cæteros per Gabinium, ex præcepto  
 (meet) the rest through Gabinus, according-to the direction

Ciceronis: **postulant jusjurandum, quod perferant**  
 of Cicero: they require an oath, which they may carry

**signatum ad civis (cives), ab Lentulo,**  
 sealed to the citizens [of their state], from Lentulus,

**Cethego, Statilio, item Cassio: eos haud**  
 Cethegus, Statilius, also from Cassius: [that] those not

**posse facile impelli aliter ad tantum**  
 to be-able [could not] easily to be impelled otherwise to so-great

**negotium. Cæteri, suspicantes nihil, dant: Cassius**  
 an affair. The others, suspecting nothing, give (it): Cassius

**pollicetur semet venturum brevī eò, ac proficiscitur**  
 promises himself about-to-come shortly [there], and sets-out

**ex urbe paulò ante legatos. Lentulus mittit**  
 from the city a little before the ambassadors. Lentulus sends

**quemdam Titum Volturcium, Crotoniensem, cum his,**  
 a certain Titus Volturcius, a Crotonian, with these,

**ut Allobroges confirmarent societatem cum Catilina,**  
 that the Allobroges might strengthen the alliance with Catiline,

**priusquàm pergerent domum, fide**  
 before-that they might proceed home, faith (pledges of honour)

**datâ atque accepta. Ipse dat literas**  
 having been given and received. He gives letters (an epistle)

**Volturcio ad Catilinam, exemplum quarum est**  
 to Volturcius for Catiline, a copy of which is

**scriptum infrâ.**  
 written beneath.

**Cognoscēs ex eo, quem misi ad te,**  
 Thou wilt know from him, whom I have sent to thee,

**qui sim. Fac cogites**  
 who I may be (I am). Do thou mayest consider (take care to consider)

**in quantâ calamitate sis, et memineris te**  
 in how-great calamity thou mayest be, and remember thee

**esse virum: consideres quid**  
 to be a man: (take care) thou mayest consider (to consider) what

**tuae rationes postulent; petas**  
 thy plans [circumstances] may require; thou mayest seek (to seek)

**auxilium ab omnibus, etiam ab infimis.**  
 aid from all, even from the lowest.

Ad-hoc; dat mandata verbis: quo consilio  
Besides, he gives commands in words: with what design

repudiet servitia?

(reason) he may reject slaveries (slaves)? [why should he reject slaves?]

cùm judicatus-sit hostis ab senatu:  
since he may have been judged (has been judged) an enemy by the senate:

quæ jussurit esse parata in  
(the things) which he may have (has) ordered to be prepared in  
urbe:

the city: [the things which he had ordered to be done in the city, are

ipse ne-cunctetur acce-  
prepared]: himself may not-delay [that he should not delay] to ap-

dere propius. His rebus actis ita, constitutâ  
proach nearer. These things having been done so, on the appointed

nocte quâ proficiscerentur, Cicero edoctus  
night on which they should set-out, Cicero having been instructed-in

cuncta per legatos, imperat prætoribus,  
all (thing) by the ambassadors, orders to the pretors,

Lucio Valerio Flacco et Caio Pomptino, ut deprehendant  
Lucius Valerius Flaccus and Caius Pomptinus, that they may seize

comitatus Allobrogum, per insidias,  
(to apprehend) the attendants of the Allobroges, by ambushes (ambush),

in Mulvio ponte: aperit omnem rem  
on the Mulvian bridge: he discovers [to them] all the thing

gratiâ cujus mittebantur: agant  
by cause (for the sake) of which they were sent: they may do (to do)

cætera, uti sit opus facto.  
the rest, as (there) may be need for deed. [He allows them to execute

Militares  
the rest of the affair as occasion may require.] (These) military

homines, præsidii collocatis sine tumultu, obsidunt  
men, the guards being arranged without tumult, beset

pontem occultè, sicuti præceptum-erat. Postquam  
the bridge secretly, as it had been ordered. After

legati venêre cum Volturcio ad id loci,  
the ambassadors came with Volturcius to that of place,

clamor exortus-est simul utrimquè. Galli,  
a shout arose at-the-same-time on-both-sides. The Gauls,

consilio cognito, citò tradiderunt se  
 the design being known [to them], quickly delivered themselves  
 sine morâ prætoribus. Volturcius primò, cohortatus  
 without delay to the pretors. Volturcius first, having encouraged  
 cæteros, defendit se à multitudine gladio:  
 the rest, defends himself from the multitude with a sword:  
 dein ubi desertus-est à legatis, obtestatus  
 then when he was deserted by the ambassadors, having conjured

Pomptinum priùs multa  
 (having first entreated) Pomptinus before many (things)

de suâ salute, quòd notus-erat ei,  
 [earnestly] concerning his safety, because he had been known to him,  
 postremò, timidus ac diffidens vitæ, dedit sese  
 finally, fearful and distrusting for life, he surrenders himself  
 prætoribus velut hostibus. Quibus rebus confectis,  
 to the pretors as to enemies. Which things being finished,

omnia declarantur properè per nuncios consuli.  
 all are declared speedily by messengers to the consul.

At ingens cura atque lætitia, simul, occu-  
 But great anxiety and gladness, at-the-same-time, occu-  
 pavere illum. Lætatur, intelligens civitatem esse  
 pied him. He did rejoice, understanding the state to be

ereptam periculis, conjuratione patefactâ; autem  
 rescued from danger, the conspiracy having been exposed; but

porro erat anxius quid esset opus facto  
 moreover he was anxious what might be necessary for deed

tantis civibus, deprehensis in maximo  
 (to be done) so-great citizens, being discovered in the greatest

scelere; poenam illorum fore oneri  
 wickedness; the punishment of them to-be-about-to-be for a burden

sibi, impunitatem reipublicæ perundæ.  
 to him, (their) pardon (the cause) of the republic to be destroyed.

Igitur animo con-  
 [Of the destruction of the republic.] Therefore (his) mind having been

firmato, jubet Lentulum, Cethegum, Sta-  
 strengthened (made up), he orders Lentulus, Cethegus, Sta-

tilium, Gabinium, que Ceparium Tarracinensem, qui  
 titius, Gabinius, and Ceparius the Tarracinian, who

parabat proficisci in Apuliam ad servitia concitanda,  
 did prepare to set-out into Apulia to slaveries to-be-excited

vocari ad sese. Cæteri veniunt  
 (to excite the slaves), to be called to himself. The rest come

sine morâ. Ceparius egressus domo paulo  
 without delay. Ceparius having departed from home a little

antè, indicio cognito, profugerat ex urbe.  
 before, the discovery having been known, had fled out-of the city.

Consul ipse, tenens Lentulum manu, quòd erat  
 The consul self, holding Lentulus by the hand, because he was

prætor, perducit in senatum; jubet reliquos  
 pretor, leads (him) into the senate; he orders the rest

venire cum custodibus in ædem Concordiæ. Advocat  
 to come with guards into the temple of Concord. He summons

senatum eò, que introducit Volturcium cum  
 the senate thither, and introduces Volturcius with

legatis magnâ frequentiâ ejus ordinis;  
 the ambassadors in a great fulness (attendance) of that order;

jubet Flaccum, prætorem, adferre eòdem  
 he orders Flaccus, the pretor, to bring to the-same-place

scrinium, cum literis, quas acceperat à  
 the writing-desk, with the letters, which he had received from

legatis. Volturcius interrogatus de itinere,  
 the ambassadors. Volturcius being questioned concerning the journey,

de literis, postremò, quid consilii habuisset,  
 concerning the letters, finally, what design he might have had

aut de quâ causâ, primò fingere  
 (he had), or about what cause, at-first (began) to feign

omnia alia, dissimulare de conjuratione;  
 all other (things), to dissemble concerning the conspiracy;

pòst ubi jussus-est dicere publicâ fide,  
 after when he was ordered to speak on the public honour, [being given

aperit omnia, uti gesta-  
 him for his safety], he discloses all (things), as they had been

erant; se ascitum-(esse)  
 carried-on; [that he] himself to have been attached (as) [was admitted]

socium paucis diebus antè à Gabinio et Cepario;  
 an associate a few days before by Gabinus and Ceparius;

scire nihil ampliùs quàm legatos ;  
 to know [that he knew] nothing more than the ambassadors ;  
 tantummodo solitum audire ex Gabinio,  
 only (being) accustomed to hear from Gabinius, [that]  
 Publium Autronium, Servium Sullam, Lucium Var-  
 Publius Autronius, Servius Sylla, Lucius Var-  
 gunteium, multos præterea esse in eâ conju-  
 gunteius, [and] many besides to be [were] in that conspi-  
 ratione. Galli fatentur eadem, at coarguunt Len-  
 racy. The Gauls confess the same, but they convict Len-  
 tulum dissimulantem, præter literas sermonibus,  
 tulus dissembling, beside the letters (letter), by discourses,  
 quos ille solitus erat habere, regnum  
 which he had been accustomed to have [with them, that] the kingdom  
 Romæ portendi tribus Corneliis ex Sibyl-  
 of Rome to be foreboded [was foretold] to three Cornelii out-of the Si-  
 linis libris: Cinnam atque Sullam antea ; se  
 bylline books : Cinna and Sylla (possessed it) before ; himself  
 esse tertium, cui fatum foret  
 to be the third, to whom fate would be [whose fate it would be]  
 potiri urbis ; præterea illum esse vigesimum  
 to be-master of the city ; moreover that to be the twentieth  
 annum ab Capitolio incenso, quem  
 year from the Capitol being burned, which (year)  
 haruspices sæpè respondissent ex  
 the soothsayers often might have answered (had answered) from  
 prodigiis fore cruentum civili bello. Igitur  
 prodigies to be-about-to-be bloody by civil war: Therefore  
 literis perlectis, cum omnes  
 the letters (letter) having been read-through, when all  
 cognovissent sua signa, senatus  
 might have known (had admitted) their-own signs (seals), the senate  
 decernit, ut Lentulus, magistratu abdicato, que  
 decrees, that Lentulus, the magistracy being resigned, and  
 item cæteri, habeantur in liberis custodiis.  
 likewise the rest, may be kept in free custodies  
 Itaque traduntur,  
 (in the custody of private persons). Therefore they are delivered (thus),

Lentulus Publio Lentulo Spintheri, qui erat tum  
 Lentulus to Publius Lentulus Spinther, who was then  
 ædilis; Cethegus Quinto Cornificio; Statilius Caio  
 edile; Cethegus to Quintus Cornificius; Statilius to Caius  
 Cæsari; Gabinius Marco Crasso; Ceparius (nam is  
 Cæsar; Gabinius to Marcus Crassus; Ceparius (for he  
 retractus-erat paulò antè ex fuga) Cneio  
 had been brought-back a little before from flight) to Cneius  
 Terentio, senatori. Interea plebes, conjuratione  
 Terentius, a senator. Mean-time the commons, the conspiracy  
 patefactâ, quæ primò cupida novarum rerum,  
 being discovered, who at first (being) desirous of new things  
 favebat nimis bello, mente  
 (a revolution), did favour too-much to the war, (their) mind  
 mutatâ, execrari consilia Catilinæ, tollere,  
 being changed, (began) to execrate the designs of Catiline, to raise  
 Ciceronem ad cælum; velut erepta ex servitute  
 Cicero to heaven; as-if rescued from slavery (they)  
 agitabat gaudium atque lætitiâ. Namque  
 did agitate (display) joy and gladness. For  
 putabat alia facinora belli fore  
 (the common people) did think other exploits of war to-be-about-to-be  
 prædæ magis quàm detrimento, verò  
 for booty rather than [to themselves] injury, but  
 incendium crudele, immoderatum, ac maxime  
 burning (to be) cruel, immoderate, and chiefly  
 calamitosum sibi; quippe cui omnes  
 calamitous to themselves; because (an order) to whom all  
 copiæ erant in quotidiano usu et cultu corporis.  
 supplies were in daily use and dress of body.

[Since all their property consisted of things in daily use, and of clothing].

Post eum diem, quidam Lucius Tarquinius  
 After that day, a certain Lucius Tarquinius  
 adductus-erat ad senatum, quem aiebant  
 had been brought-up to the senate, whom they did say  
 retractum ex itinere,  
 (to have been) brought-back from (his) journey, (when)



proficiscentem ad Catilinam. Cùm is diceret  
 setting-out to Catiline. When he might say (said)  
 se indicaturum de  
 himself about-to-inform [that he would inform] concerning  
 conjuratione, si publica fides data-esset,  
 the conspiracy, if the public faith might have been given [to him  
 for safety], jussus à consule edicere quæ sciret,  
 being ordered by the consul to declare what he might know,  
 edocet senatum ferè eadem quæ Volturcius,  
 he informs the senate almost the same (things) which Volturcius (did),  
 de incendiis paratis, de cæde bonorum,  
 of burnings having been prepared, of the murder of good (men),  
 de itinere hostium: præterea, se missum à  
 of the march of the enemies: moreover, himself being sent by  
 Marco Crasso, qui nunciaret Catilinæ,  
 Marcus Crassus, who might tell (to tell) to Catiline, (that)  
 Lentulus, et Cethegus, que alii ex conjuratione,  
 Lentulus, and Cethegus, and others of the conspiracy,  
 deprehensi ne-terrèrent eum; que  
 having been apprehended should not-affright him; and  
 properaret magis eò accedere ad urbem,  
 he should hasten the more therefore to-approach to the city,  
 quò et reficeret animos cæterorum,  
 in-order-that and (both) he might refresh the minds of the rest,  
 et illi eriperentur faciliùs à periculo. Sed  
 and they might be rescued the more-easily from danger. But  
 ubi Tarquinius nominavit Crassum, nobilem hominem,  
 when Tarquinius named Crassus, a noble man,  
 maxumis divitiis, summâ potentiâ, alii  
 with the greatest riches, the highest power, some  
 rati rem incredibilem, pars, tametsi  
 having supposed the thing incredible, a part, although  
 existumabant verum, tamen, quia tanta vis  
 they did think (it) true, yet, because so-great influence  
 hominis videbatur leniunda magis quàm  
 of the man did seem to-be-softened rather than  
 exagitanda  
 to-be-provoked [a man of such great influence ought to be soothed rather

in tali tempore, plerique obnoxii  
 than provoked] in such a time, many subservient  
 Crasso ex privatis negotiis, conclamant,  
 to Crassus from private affairs, cry-out, [that]  
 indicem esse falsum, que postulant uti  
 the informer to be [was] false, and require that  
 referatur de eâ re. Itaque,  
 it may be referred (to the senate) concerning that thing. Therefore,  
 Cicerone consulente, frequens senatus  
 Cicero consulting (presiding), a crowded senate  
 decernit, indicium Tarquinii videri  
 decrees, the information of Tarquinius to be seen (to seem)  
 falsum, que eum retinendum in vinculis;  
 false, and him [to be] kept in bonds [prison];  
 que potestatem ne ampliùs faciundam,  
 and power (of divulging) not more to-be-made, [and that  
 nisi indicaret  
 he be not allowed to proceed in his testimony], unless he might inform  
 de eo, consilio cujus mentitus-esset  
 of him, by the advice of whom he might have (had) forged  
 tantam rem. Erant eo tempore, qui  
 so-great a thing. There were at that time, (persons), who  
 existumarent illud machinatum à Publio  
 might think (thought) that plotted by Publius  
 Autronio, quò Crasso appellato, potentia illius  
 Autronius, in-order-that Crassus being named, the power of him  
 tegeret reliquos faciliùs, per societatem  
 might screen the rest more-easily, by (his) share  
 periculi. Alii aiebant Tarquinium  
 of (in the) danger. Others did say Tarquinius  
 immissum à Cicerone, ne Crassus, suo  
 sent-in (suborned) by Cicero, lest Crassus, by his  
 more conturbaret rempublicam,  
 custom [as was his custom] might disturb the republic,  
 patrocinio malorum suscepto. Ego postea  
 the patronage of the bad being undertaken [by him]. I afterwards  
 audiavi Crassum ipsum prædicantem illam tantam  
 heard Crassus [himself] openly declaring that so-great

contumeliam impositam sibi à Cicerone.  
 an insult (to have been) placed to (on) him by Cicero.

Sed iisdem temporibus, Quintus Catulus et Caius  
 But at-the-same times, Quintus Catulus and Caius

Piso potuere impellere Ciceronem neque gratiâ,  
 Piso were able to impel Cicero neither by interest,

neque precibus, neque pretio, uti Caius Cæsar  
 nor by prayers, nor by price, that Caius Cæsar

nominaretur falsò per Allobroges aut alium indicem.  
 might be named falsely by the Allobroges or other informer.

Nam uterque exercebant gravis (graves) inimicitias  
 For each (both) did exercise dreadful enmities

cum illo; Piso oppugnatus in iudicio  
 with him; Piso having been assailed in a trial

repetundarum (*pl.*), propter injustum supplicium  
 of extortion, on-account-of the unjust punishment

cujusdam Transpadani; Catulus incensus odio  
 of a certain Transpadanian; Catulus being inflamed with hatred

ex petitione pontificatûs, quod usus  
 from (since) his canvass of the high-priesthood, because having enjoyed

maximis honoribus (*abl.*) extremâ ætate discesserat,  
 the greatest honours (now) in extreme age he had departed,

victus à Cæsare, adolescentulo. Autem res  
 conquered by Cæsar, a young man. But the thing

videbatur opportuna, quòd is debebat grandem  
 did seem opportune, because he [Cæsar] did owe great

pecuniam egregiâ liberalitate privatim,  
 money (a great debt) by extraordinary liberality privately,

maximis muneribus publicè. Sed ubi  
 by-very-great presents (exhibitions) publicly. But when

nequeunt impellere consulem ad tantum facinus,  
 they are-unable to impel the consul to so-great a crime,

ipsi conflaverant magnam invidiam illi  
 themselves had-contracted great odium for him [had excit-

ed great odium against him] circumeundo singillatim, atque  
 by-going-about individually, and

ementiendo quæ dicerent audisse ex  
 by forging what they might-say (they said) to have heard from

Volturcio, aut Allobrogibus; usque adeò, uti  
 Volturcius, or the Allobroges; until to-this (so far), that  
 nonnulli Romani equites, qui erant cum telis  
 some [Roman] knights, who were with weapons [armed]  
 circum ædem Concordiæ, causâ præsidii,  
 about the temple of Concord, by cause (for the sake) of guard,  
 impulsu seu magnitudine periculi, seu  
 being impelled either by the magnitude of the danger, or  
 mobilitate animi, quò suum studium in  
 by levity of mind, in-order-that their zeal toward  
 rempublicam esset clarius, minitarentur  
 the republic might be more-conspicuous, might threaten (threatened)  
 gladio Cæsari egredienti ex senatu. Dum  
 with a sword to Cæsar going-out from the senate. Whilst  
 hæc aguntur in senatu, et dum præmia  
 these (things) are done in the senate, and whilst rewards  
 decernuntur legatis Allobrogum et Tito  
 are decreed to the ambassadors of the Allobroges and to Titus  
 Volturcio, indicio eorum comprobato;  
 Volturcius, the information of them having been approved;  
 liberti et pauci ex clientibus Lentuli,  
 the freed-men and a few of the dependants of Lentulus,  
 sollicitabant, diversis itineribus, opifices atque  
 did stir-up, in different directions, the mechanics and  
 servitia in vicis ad eum eripiendum:  
 slaveries (slaves) in the streets to him to-be-rescued: [to rescue  
 partim exquirebant duces multitudinum,  
 him]: partly (some) did search-out the leaders of multitudes  
 qui soliti-erant vexare rempublicam  
 (mobs), who had been accustomed to harass the republic  
 pretio. Autem Cethegus orabat per nuncios,  
 for hire. But Cethegus did entreat through messengers,  
 familiam atque suos liberos exercitatos in  
 (his) household and his freed-men exercised in  
 audaciam, uti grege facto irrumperent  
 boldness, that a flock (band) having been formed, they would break-in  
 ad sese cum telis. Consul, ubi cognovit ea  
 to himself with weapons. The consul, when he knew those

parari, præsidiis dispositis, uti res  
 (things) to be prepared, guards being arranged, as the thing  
 atque tempus monebat, senatu convocato, refert  
 and time did advise, the senate being convoked, refers

quid placeat fieri de his, qui  
 (asks) what it may please to be done concerning those, who  
 traditi-erant in custodiam. Sed frequens senatus  
 had been-delivered into custody. But a crowded senate

judicaverat paulò antè eos fecisse  
 had judged a little before [that] them to have acted [had acted]

contra rempublicam. Tum Decius Junius Silanus  
 against the republic. Then Decius Junius Silanus

primus rogatus sententiam, quòd eo tempore  
 first being asked (his) opinion, because at that time

erat consul designatus, decreverat supplicium  
 he was consul elect, had decreed punishment

sumendum

to-be-inflicted [gave it as his opinion that punishment ought to be in-

dicted] on those, who were detained in custodiis; et

præterea de Lucio Cassio, Publio Furio, Publio  
 moreover on Lucius Cassius, Publius Furius, Publius

Umbreno, Quinto Annio, si deprehensi-forent:  
 Umbrenus, Quintus Annius, if they might have been apprehended:

que is postea permotus  
 [should they be apprehended]: and he afterwards affected

oratione Caii Cæsaris, dixerat se iturum  
 by the speech of Caius Cæsar, had said himself about-to-go

pedibus

on feet [that he was about to go into a division of the senate on the

question] (without a speech) into the opinion of Tiberii Neronis,

quòd censuerat referendum  
 because he had thought (it ought) to-be-referred (to the senate)

de eâ re, præsidiis additis.  
 concerning that thing, [for further investigation], guards being added,

Sed Cæsar, ubi  
 [The prisoners being kept under guard]. But Cæsar, when

ventum-est ad eum, rogatus  
it was come to him (to his turn), having been asked (his)

sententiam à consule, locutus-est verba  
opinion by the consul, spoke words

hujuscemodi:  
of this-kind:

Conscripti patres, decet omnis (omnes) homines,  
Conscript fathers, it becomes all men,

qui consultant de dubiis rebus, esse  
who deliberate-often concerning doubtful things, to be

vacuos ab odio, amicitia, ira, atque misericordia.  
free from hatred, friendship, anger, and pity.

Animus haud facile providet verum,  
The mind (does) not easily foresees (perceives) true, (truth)

ubi illa officiant: neque quisquam omnium  
where those [things] obstruct [it]: neither any-one of-all

paruit lubrici et usui simul. Ubi  
has obeyed to lust (passion) and to utility at-the-same-time. When

intenderis ingenium, valet; si  
thou mayest have applied (you apply) the understanding, it prevails; if

lubido possidet, ea dominatur, animus valet nihil.  
passion takes-possession, that rules, the mind prevails nothing.

Conscripti patres, est mihi magna copia  
Conscript fathers, there is to me a great opportunity

memorandi, qui reges aut qui populi  
of relating, [supply of examples], what kings or what peoples

impulsi ira aut misericordia, consuluerint  
(people) impelled by anger or by pity, may have consulted

(*perf. sub.*) male: sed malo dicere ea,  
(have consulted) badly: but I had-rather mention those (things),

quæ nostri majores fecere rectè atque ordine  
which our ancestors have done rightly and in order

contra lubricum sui animi. Macedonico bello,  
against the passion of their mind. In the Macedonian war,

quod gessimus cum rege Perse, magna atque  
which we carried-on with king Perses, the great and

magnifica civitas Rhodiorum, quæ creverat  
magnificent state of the Rhodians, which had increased

opibus Romani populi, fuit infida atque adversa  
 by the resources of the Roman people, was faithless and adverse  
 nobis: sed postquam, bello confecto, consultum-  
 to us: but after-that, the war having been finished, it was delibe-  
 est de Rhodiis, nostri majores dimisere eos  
 rated concerning the Rhodians, our ancestors dismissed them  
 impunitos, ne quis diceret bellum  
 unpunished, lest any-one might say the war (to have been)  
 inceptum magis divitiarum, quàm  
 undertaken rather (on-account-of) of riches, than of (repelling)  
 injuriæ. Item in omnibus Punicis bellis, cum  
 injury. Likewise in all the Punic wars, when  
 Carthaginienses sæpe fecissent multa  
 the Carthaginians [often] might have done (had done) many  
 nefanda facinora et in pace et per inducias,  
 abominable acts both in peace and through truces,  
 ipsi nunquam fecere talia per occasionem;  
 they never did such (things) through opportunity  
 quærebant magis quod foret  
 [though opportunity offered]; they did seek rather what might be  
 dignum se, quàm quod posset fieri jure  
 worthy themselves, than what might to be done with right  
 in illos. Conscripti patres, hoc est item providendum  
 unto them. Conscript fathers, this is likewise to be-provided-for  
 vobis, scelus Publii Lentuli et  
 to (by) you, (that) the wickedness of Publius Lentulus and  
 cæterorum ne-valeat plùs apud vos, quàm  
 the rest may not-prevail more among (with) you, than  
 vestra dignitas, neu consulatis vestræ iræ  
 your-own dignity, nor (that) you may consult to your anger  
 magis quàm famæ. Nam si digna poena  
 more than to character. For if worthy punishment  
 reperitur pro factis eorum, approbo novum consilium:  
 is found for the deeds of them, I approve the new counsel:  
 sin magnitudo sceleris exsuperat ingenia  
 but-if the magnitude of the wickedness exceed the understandings  
 omnium; censeo utendum iis  
 of all; I think to-use (we must-use) those (punishments),

quæ comparata-sunt legibus. Plerique eorum, qui  
which have been provided by the laws. Most of those, who

dixerunt sententias ante me, miserati-sunt  
have expressed (their) opinions before me, have bewailed

casum reipublicæ compositè atque  
the misfortune of the republic elegantly (in fine language) and

magnificè: enumeravere quæ esset sævitia belli:  
magnificently: they have enumerated what might be the cruelty of war:

quæ acciderent victis; virgines, pueros rapi;  
what might befall to the conquered; virgins, boys to be dragged-away;

liberos divelli à complexu parentum; matres  
children to be torn from the embrace of parents; mothers

familiarum pati, quæ collibuissent victoribus;  
of families to suffer, what might have pleased to the conquerors;

fana atque domos expoliari; cædem, incendia  
temples and houses to be pillaged; slaughter, burnings

feri; postremò, omnia compleri armis,  
to be made; lastly, all (places) to be filled with arms,

cadaveribus, cruore, atque luctu. Sed, per  
dead-bodies, gore, and grief. But, by (in the name of)

immortalis (immortales) deos, quò illa oratio  
the immortal gods, where that speech

pertinuit? An uti  
has tended? [what was the object of that speech]? Whether that

faceret vos infestos conjurationi? Scilicet, oratio  
he might make you hostile to the conspiracy? Forsooth, a speech

accendit eum, quem tanta atque tam atrox res  
shall inflame him, whom so-great and so heinous a thing

non-permovit! Est non ita: neque suæ injuriæ  
has not-affected! It is not so: neither their-own injuries

videntur parvæ cuiquam mortalium: multi habuere  
seem small to any of mortals: many have had

eas graviùs æquo. Sed, conscripti  
(accounted) them more-severely (than) just. But, conscript

patres, alia licentia est aliis.  
fathers, another (difference) license is to different (persons).

Qui demissi  
[There is a difference in the freedom of action.] (They) who cast-down



agunt vitam in obscuro, si deliquere  
 spend (their) life in obscure (obscurity), [if they] have offended

quid, iracundiâ pauci sciunt: fama  
 (in) any (thing) [by anger] few know (it): the fame

atque fortuna eorum sunt pares: cuncti mortales  
 and fortune of them are equal: all mortals

novere facta eorum qui, præditi magno  
 have known (know) the deeds of those who, endowed with great

imperio, agunt ætatem in excelso. Ita  
 authority, spend (their) life in lofty (station). Thus

minima licentia est in maximâ fortunâ.  
 the least license [of action] is in the greatest fortune.

Decet neque studere, neque odisse, sed  
 It becomes neither to favour, neither to have hated (to hate), but

minimè irasci. Ea quæ dicitur iracundia apud  
 least-of-all to-be-angry. That which is called anger amongst

alios, appellatur superbia atque crudelitas in  
 others (some), is called pride and cruelty in

imperio. Equidem, conscripti patres, ego sic existumo  
 authority. Indeed, conscript fathers, I thus think

omnis cruciatus esse minores quàm facinora illorum.  
 all tortures to be less than the crimes of them.

Sed plerique mortales meminere postrema,  
 But most mortals have remembered (remember) the last

et obliti sceleris eorum, disserunt  
 (occurrences), and having forgotten the crime of them, discuss

de poenâ in impiis hominibus, si ea  
 of punishment in (the case of) impious men, if it

fuerit paulò severior. Scio certè  
 may have been a little more-severe (too-severe). I know surely

Decium Silanum, fortem atque strenuum virum,  
 Decius Silanus, a brave and strenuous man,

dixisse, quæ dixerit (*perf. sub.*) studio reipublicæ:  
 to have said, what he may have said (has said) from zeal for the republic:

neque illum exercere gratiam  
 neither him to exercise [that he neither exercised] favour

aut inimicitias tantâ re: cognovi eos  
 or enmities in so-great a thing: I have known these (to be)

mores, eam modestiam viri. Verûm sententia  
 the principles, that the moderation of the man. But the opinion  
 ejus videtur mihi non crudelis (enim quid potest  
 of him seems to me not cruel (for what can  
 fieri crudele in talis (tales) homines ?) sed aliena  
 be done cruel against such men ?) but foreign

à nostrâ republica. Nam profecto,  
 (averse) from our republic (constitution). For indeed,  
 Silane, aut metus aut injuria subegit te consulem  
 Silane, either fear or injury compelled thee a consul  
 designatum, decernere novum genus pœnæ. Est  
 elect, to decree a new kind of punishment. It is

supervacaneum disserere de timore, cùm tanta  
 useless to discuss concerning fear, when so-great  
 præsidia sint in armis præsenti diligentia  
 guards may be (are) in arms by the prompt diligence  
 clarissimi viri, consulis. Equidem possum dicere  
 of a most-renowned man, the consul. Indeed I can say

id de pœnâ, quod res habet :  
 that of punishment, which the thing has (imports): [that]

mortem esse requiem ærumnarum, non  
 death to be [is] a rest of (from) toils, not

cruciatum, in luctu atque miseriis; eam  
 a torture, in grief and miseries; [that] it (death)

dissolvere cuncta mala mortalium; locum  
 to dissolve [dissolves] all [the] evils of mortals; a place

esse ultra neque  
 to be beyond (it) neither [that there is no place beyond it either]

curæ neque gaudio. Sed per  
 for care neither [or] joy. But by (in the name of)

immortalis (immortales) deos, quamobrem addidisti  
 the immortal gods, why hast thou added

non in sententiam, ut animadverteretur prius in  
 not to the opinion, that it might be animadverted before against

eos verberibus? An, quia  
 them (they should be the first punished) with stripes? Whether, because

Porcia lex vetat? At aliæ leges item jubent vitam  
 the Porcian law forbids? But other laws also order life

non eripi condemnatis civibus, sed exsilium  
not be snatched from condemned citizens, but exile

permitti. An quia est gravius verberari quàm  
to be allowed. Whether because it is severer to be scourged than

necari? Autem quid est acerbum aut  
to be put-to-death? But what is bitter or

nimis grave in homines convictos tanti facinoris?  
too severe against men convicted of so-great a crime?

Sin, quia est levius, quì convenit  
But-if, because it is more-light (too light), by what (how) is-it-consistent

observare legem in minore negotio, cùm neg-  
to observe the law in a less business, when thou mayest

lexeris (*perf. sub.*) eam in majore? At,  
have-neglected it in a greater? But, (some will say)

enim quis reprehendat quod  
[why all this debate] for who may reprove what

decretum-erit in parricidas reipublicæ?  
shall have been decreed against the parricides of the republic? (I answer),

Tempus, dies, fortuna, lubido cujus  
time, days (occasion), fortune, the pleasure (caprice) of which

moderatur gentibus. Quidquid evenerit, acci-  
rules to nations. Whatsoever shall have occurred, will hap-

det meritò illis: cæterùm, conscripti patres,  
pen deservedly to them: but [for the rest], conscript fathers,

vos-considerate quid statuatis in alios. Omnia  
consider-ye what you may resolve against others. All

mala exempla orta-sunt ex bonis initiis: sed ubi  
bad examples have arisen from good beginnings: but when

imperium pervenit ad ignaros, aut minùs bonos,  
authority comes to the ignorant, or less good,

illud novum exemplum transfertur ab dignis  
that new example (precedent) is transferred from the worthy

et idoneis, ad indignos et non-idoneos. Lacedæmonii,  
and fit, to the unworthy and unfit. The Lacedæmonians,

Atheniensibus devictis, imposuere triginta  
the Athenians having been conquered, placed-over (them) thirty

viros, qui tractarent rempublicam. Hi primò cœpere  
men, who might manage the republic. These at-first began

necare quemque pessimum et invisum omnibus,  
to put-to-death every-one most-base and odious to all,

indemnatum: populus lætari eo, et dicere  
uncondemned: the people (began) to rejoice in that, and to say

fieri meritò. Post ubi licentia crevit,  
(it) to be done deservedly. After when misrule increased,

paulatim interficere bonos et malos lubi-  
[by degrees] (they began) to kill the good and bad capri-

dinosè, terrere cæteros metu. Ita civitas, oppressa  
ciously, to affright others by fear. Thus the state, oppressed

servitute, dedit pœnas stultæ lætitiæ. Cùm  
by slavery, gave punishments of foolish gladness. When

victor Sulla, nostrâ memoriâ, jussit Damasippum  
the conqueror Sylla, in our memory, ordered Damasippus

et alios hujusmodi, qui creverant malo  
and others of this kind, who had increased by the misfortune

reipublicæ jugulari, quis laudabat non factum  
of the republic to be strangled, who did praise not the deed

ejus? Aiebant, scelestos et factiosos homines,  
of him? They did say, wicked and factious men,

qui exagitaverant rempublicam seditionibus  
who had harassed the republic by seditions (to be)

meritò necatos. Sed ea res fuit initium magnæ  
deservedly put-to-death. But that thing was the beginning of great

cladis. Namque uti quisque concupiverat domum  
slaughter. For as every-one had desired a house

aut villam, postremò aut vas aut vestimentum  
or a villa, finally either the vase (plate) or clothing

alicujus, dabat operam, ut is esset in  
of any-one, he did give exertion, that that (person) should be in

numero proscriptorum. Ita illi, quibus mors  
the number of the proscribed. Thus they, to whom the death

Damasippi fuerat lætitiæ, ipsi trahebantur  
of Damasippus had been for gladness, themselves were dragged

paulò post, neque fuit finis jugulandi,  
(to execution) a little after, neither was an end of strangling,

priusquam Sulla explevit omnes suos  
before-that Sylla filled all his-own (friends)

divitiis. Atque ego vereor non hoc in Marco Tullio,  
 with riches. And I fear not this in Marcus Tullius,  
 neque his temporibus. Sed multa et varia  
 neither in these times. But many and various  
 ingenia sunt in magnâ civitate. Aliquid falsum  
 dispositions are in a great state. Some (thing) false

potest credi pro vero, alio tempore,  
 can to be believed for true, in another time, (under)

alio consule, cui item exercitus sit in manu.  
 another consul, to whom also an army may be in hand

Ubi consul eduxerit gladium per  
 [entrusted]. When the consul shall have drawn the sword by

decretum senatûs, hoc exemplo, quis statuet  
 a decree of the senate, from this precedent, who shall assign

finem illi, aut quis moderabitur? Conscripti  
 a limit to him, or who shall restrain (him)? Conscript

patres, nostri majores neque unquam eguere consilii  
 fathers, our ancestors neither ever wanted of counsel

neque audaciæ: neque superbia obstabat, quò  
 nor of boldness: neither pride did oppose, that

minus-imitarentur aliena instituta, si modo  
 they would less-imitate (not imitate) foreign institutes, if only

erant proba. Sumpserunt arma atque militaria  
 they were good. They took arms and military

tela ab Samnitibus: pleraque insignia magis-  
 weapons from the Samnites: most ensigns of magis-

tratuum ab Tuscis: postremò exsequebantur  
 trates from the Tuscans: finally they practised

summo studio domi, quod videbatur idoneum  
 with the utmost zeal at home, what did seem fit

ubique apud socios aut hostis  
 [and best for their use] every-where among allies or enemies:

(hostes): malebant imitari, quàm invidere bonis.  
 they had-rather to imitate, than to envy to the good.

Sed imitati  
 [They preferred imitating to envying what was good.] But having imitated

morem Græciæ illo eodem tempore, animadvertabant  
 the custom of Greece in that same time, they did animadvert

verberibus in civis (cives), sumebant  
 (punish) with stripes against citizens they did take  
 summum supplicium de condemnatis. Postquam  
 the utmost punishment of the condemned. After  
 respublica adolevit, et factiones valere  
 the republic grew-up (flourished), and factions prevailed  
 multitudine civium, innocentes cœpere circumveniri,  
 by the multitude of citizens, the innocent began to be beset,  
 alia hujusmodi fieri: tunc Porcia lex, que  
 other (things) of this kind to be done: then the Porcian law, and  
 aliæ leges, paratæ-sunt, quibus legibus exsilium  
 other laws, were prepared, by which laws exile  
 permissum-est damnatis. Conscripti patres, ego  
 was allowed to the condemned. Conscript fathers, I  
 puto hanc causam in-primis magnam, quò  
 think this reason particularly great, in-order-that  
 minùs-capiamus novum consilium.

we may less (not) take a new counsel. [Deviate from the counsel

Profectò, virtus atque sapientia  
 and usages of our forefathers.] Indeed, virtue and wisdom  
 fuit major in illis, qui fecere imperium tantum  
 has been greater in those, who have made the government so-great  
 ex parvis opibus quàm in nobis, qui vix retinemus  
 from small resources than in us, who scarcely retain  
 ea benè parta. Igitur placet eos  
 those (things) well acquired. Therefore does it please (me) them

dimitti, et exercitum Catilinæ augeri?  
 to be dismissed, and the army of Catiline to be increased?

Minumè: sed censeo ita: pecunias eorum  
 By-no-means: but I think thus: the moneys (property) of them  
 publicandas, ipsos habendos in vinculis per  
 to-be-confiscated, themselves to-be-kept in bonds through  
 municipia, quæ maxime-valent opibus, neu  
 the municipal-towns, which are-most-strong in resources, nor  
 quis postea referat ad senatum,  
 any-one afterwards may refer to the senate [nor may any one here-

neve agat cum  
 after refer their case to the senate], nor may act (treat) with

populo de his: senatum existumare eum, qui  
 the people concerning them: the senate to think him, who  
 fecerit aliter, facturum contra rempublicam et  
 shall have done otherwise, about-to-do against the republic and  
 salutem omnium.  
 the safety of all.

Postquam Cæsar fecit finem dicendi, cæteri  
 After Cæsar made an end of speaking, the others  
 assentiebantur variè verbo, alius alii.  
 did assent variously in word, another (one) to another.

[The others gave merely their verbal assent variously to the opinion of

At Marcus Porcius Cato  
 each of those who had spoken.] But Marcus Porcius Cato  
 rogatus sententiam, habuit orationem  
 being asked (his) opinion, had (delivered) a speech  
 hujuscemodi.  
 of this-kind.

Conscripti patres, mens longe alia est mihi,  
 Conscript fathers, a mind far other (different) is to me,  
 cùm considero res atque nostra pericula, et cùm  
 when I consider things and our dangers, and when  
 ipse reputo mecum sententias nonnullorum.  
 (I my) self revolve with me the opinions of some.

Illi videntur mihi disseruisse de poenâ eorum,  
 They seem to me to have discussed of the punishment of those,  
 qui paravere bellum patriæ, parentibus,  
 who have prepared war to (against their) country, parents,  
 suis aris atque focus: autem res monet magis  
 their altars and hearths: but the thing advises rather  
 cavere ab illis, quàm consultare, quid statuamus  
 to beware from them, than to deliberate, what we may determine  
 in illos. Nam persequare alia maleficia  
 against them. For thou mayest persecute (punish) other crimes  
 tum, ubi facta-sunt: nisi provideris, ne  
 then, when they have been done: unless thou shalt have provided, lest  
 hoc accadat, implores judicia frustra, ubi  
 this may happen, thou mayest implore judgments in-vain, when

evenit. Urbe captâ, nihil reliqui  
it has happened. The city having been taken, nothing of remaining

fit victis. Sed per  
is made (nothing is left) to the vanquished. But by (in the name of)

immortalis (immortales) Deos, ego appello vos, qui  
the immortal Gods, I address you, who

semper fecistis pluris vestras domos,  
always have made of more (have valued more) your houses,

villas, signa, tabulas, quàm rempublicam: si vultis  
villas, statues, pictures, than the republic: if you will

retinere ista cujuscumque modi sint, quæ  
to retain these (things), of whatever kind they may be, which

amplexamini; si præbere otium  
you embrace; [are so fond of] if [you wish] to afford leisure

vestris voluptatibus; aliquando expergiscimini,  
to your pleasures; sometime (at length) arouse,

et capessite rempublicam. Non-agitur  
and take-in-hand [and defend] the republic. It is not acted

de vectigalibus, non de injuriis  
(we are not treating) of taxes, not of the injuries

sociorum: nostra libertas et anima est in dubio.  
of allies: our liberty and life is in a doubtful

Conscripti patres, sæpenumero feci multa  
(state). Conscript fathers, oftentimes I have made many

verba in hoc ordine:

words in this order (house): [I have often spoken in the senate:]

sæpè questus-sum de luxuriâ atque avaritiâ  
often I have complained of the luxury and avarice

nostrorum civium: que habeo multos mortalis (mortales)  
of our citizens: and have many mortals

adversos eâ causâ: qui fecissem  
adverse (to me) from that account: (I) who might have made (had made)

unquam gratiam nullius delicti mihi atque meo  
ever indulgence of no fault to myself and to my

animo, haud  
mind, [I who never granted indulgence to myself for a fault,] not

facile condonabam malè-facta lubidini alterius.  
easily did pardon bad-deeds to the passion of another.



Sed tametsi vos pendebatis ea parvi,  
 But although you did esteem those (things) of little (consequence),  
 tamen respublica erat firma: opulentia tolerabat  
 yet the republic was strong: opulence did support  
 negligentiam. Vero nunc id agitur non, ne  
 negligence. But [nōw] that is treated not, whether  
 vivamus bonis an malis moribus; neque  
 we may live (we live) with good or bad morals; neither  
 quantum aut quā magnificum imperium Romani  
 how-great or how magnificent the government of the Roman  
 populi sit; sed an hæc, cujuscumque modi  
 people may-be; but whether these (things), of whatever kind  
 videntur, sint futura nostra, an unā nobis-cum,  
 they appear, may-be about-to-be ours, or together with-us,  
 hostium.

of (belonging to) the enemies. [Whether all these things may belong to

Quisquam  
 us, or together with ourselves belong to the enemy]. (Does) any-one

hîc nominat mihi mansuetudinem et misericordiam?  
 here name [to me] mildness and mercy?

Jampridem equidem amisimus vera vocabula rerum;  
 Long-since indeed we have lost the true titles of things;

quia largiri aliena bona vocatur liberalitas;  
 because to bestow another's goods is called liberality;

audacia malarum rerum, fortitudo; eò  
 boldness of (in) bad things, fortitude; therefore

respublica est sita in extremo. Quoniam  
 the republic is situate in extreme (danger). Since

mores habent se ita, sint sanè liberales  
 manners have themselves so, let (them) be indeed liberal

ex fortunis sociorum; sint misericordes  
 out-of the fortunes of (our) allies; let (them) be compassionate

in furibus ærarii: ne illis largiantur  
 towards the thieves of the treasury: not to them may they bestow

nostrum sanguinem,  
 our blood, [let them only not bestow our blood on them],

et dum parcunt paucis (dat.) sceleratis, eant  
 and whilst they spare a few wicked (men), they may go

perditum          omnis (omnes) . bonos.          Caius Cæsar  
 to destroy          all          the good.          Caius Cæsar  
 disseruit          paulò antè, in hoc ordine,          bene et  
 has discussed          a little before, in this order (house), well and  
 compositè de vitâ et morte; credo, existumans  
 elegantly          about life and death; I believe,          thinking  
 ea          falsa, quæ memorantur de inferis,  
 those (things) false, which are related of the low (regions), [that]  
 malos habere          tetra, inculta, fœda, atque  
 the bad to have (inhabit) noisome, waste, filthy, [and]  
 formidolosa loca, diverso itinere          à bonis.  
 dreadful          places, in a different way (direction) from the good.  
 Itaque          censuit          pecunias          eorum  
 Therefore          he has decided          the moneys (property) of them  
 publicandas, ipsos habendos in custodiis  
 to-be-confiscated, themselves to-be-kept in custodies (prison)  
 per          municipia; videlicet, ne, si sint Romæ,  
 through the municipal-towns; forsooth, lest, if they may be at Rome,  
 eripiantur          per vim, aut à popularibus  
 they may be rescued through force, either by the accomplices  
 conjurationis, aut à conductâ multitudine. Quasi  
 of the conspiracy, or by a hired multitude. As-if  
 verò mali atque scelesti          sint (*sub.*) tantummodo  
 indeed bad and wicked (men) may be (are)          only  
 in urbe, et non per totam Italiam; aut  
 in the city, and not through the whole Italy; or  
 audacia non-possit          plus ibi, ubi          sunt  
 boldness may not-be able (to do) more there, where (there) are  
 minores opes ad-defendendum.          Quare  
 less resources to-defend [means of defence]. Wherefore  
 equidem hoc consilium est vanum, si metuit periculum  
 indeed this advice is vain, if he fears danger  
 ex illis. Sin          solus timet non in tanto metu  
 from them. But-if (he) alone fears not in so-great fear  
 omnium, refert me timere magis mihi, atque  
 of all, it concerns me to fear the more for me, and  
 vobis. Quare cùm          statuetis          de Publio  
 for you. Wherefore when you shall determine concerning Publius

Lentulo que cæteris; habetote pro certo, vos  
 Lentulus and the others; have (it) for certain, [that] you  
 simul decernere de exercitu Catilinæ,  
 at-the-same-time to decree [decree] concerning the army of Catiline,  
 et de omnibus conjuratis. Quanto  
 and concerning all the conspirators. By how-much  
 attentius agetis ea, tanto  
 the more-attentively (vigorously) you shall do those (things), by so-much  
 animus erit infirmior illis: si viderint  
 mind (spirit) shall be weaker to them: if they shall have seen  
 vos languere modò paululùm, aderunt feroces.  
 you to languish only a-little, they will be-present fierce.

[The more vigorously you act, the more you will dispirit them; the more

Nolite  
 remissely you act, the more you will encourage them.] Be-unwilling  
 existumare nostros majores fecisse rem-  
 to think [that] our ancestors to have made [made] the re-  
 publicam magnam ex parvâ armis. Si  
 public great from (being) small by arms [alone]. If  
 res esset (*imp. sub.*) ita, nos haberemus eam  
 the thing might be (were) so, we might have it  
 multò pulcherrumam: quippe major copia  
 by-much the most-fair (splendid): for a greater abundance  
 sociorum atque civium, præterea armorum atque  
 of allies and of citizens, moreover of arms and  
 equorum, est nobis quàm illis. Sed alia  
 of horses, is to us than to them [our ancestors]. But other  
 fuere, quæ fecere illos magnos, quæ sunt  
 (things) were, which made them great, which are  
 nulla nobis: industria domi;  
 none to us [which we have not]: industry of (at) home;  
 justum imperium foris; animus liber in consulendo;  
 just government abroad; a mind free in deliberating;  
 neque obnoxius delicto, neque lubidini. Pro his  
 neither subservient to crime, nor to passion. Instead-of these  
 nos habemus luxuriam atque avaritiam: egestatem  
 we have luxury and avarice: want

publicè, opulentiam privatim: laudamus divitias,  
publicly, opulence privately: we praise riches,

sequimur inertiam: nullum discrimen inter  
we follow sloth: (we make) no difference between

bonos et malos; ambitio possidet omnia præmia  
the good and the bad; ambition possesses all the rewards

virtutis. Neque mirum, ubi vos capitis consilium  
of virtue. Nor (is it) wonderful, when you take counsel

separatim, quisque sibi; ubi domi servitis  
separately, every one for himself; when at home you are-slaves

voluptatibus, hîc pecuniæ aut gratiæ; eò fit,  
to pleasures, here to money or to interest; therefore it is made

ut impetus fiat in vacuum  
(happens), that an attack may be made against the empty (defenceless)

republicam. Sed ego omitto hæc. Nobilis-  
republic. But I omit these (things). Most-

sumi cives conjuravere incendere patriam;  
noble citizens have conspired to burn (their) country;

arcessunt ad bellum gentem Gallorum, infestis-  
they invite to war the nation of the Gauls, most-

sumam Romano nomini; dux hostium est  
hostile to the Roman name: the leader of the enemies is

supra caput cum exercitu: Vos  
over head (is close at hand) with an army: (Do) you

etiam nunc cunctamini et dubitatis, quid faciatis  
even now hesitate and doubt, what you may do

hostibus deprehensis intra mœnia? Censeo mise-  
to enemies apprehended within the walls? I suppose you may

reamini; adolescentuli homines deliquere per  
pity (them); the very-young men have erred through

ambitionem: atque dimittatis etiam armatos!  
ambition: and you may dismiss (them) even armed!

Næ ista mansuetudo et misericordia vertet in  
Truly that mildness and mercy will turn into

miseriam vobis, si illi ceperint arma. Scilicet,  
ruin to you, if they shall have taken arms. Forsooth,

res ipsa est aspera, sed vos timetis non  
the thing itself is harsh [dangerous], but you fear not

eam! Immo, verò maxume; sed expectantes, alius  
it! Nay, indeed very-much; but awaiting, one

aliū, cunctamini inertiā et molliā animi,  
another, you hesitate from indolence and effeminacy of mind,

videlicet confisi immortalibus diis, qui sæpè servavêre  
forsooth trusting to the immortal gods, who often have preserved

hanc rempublicam in maximis periculis. Auxilia  
this republic in the greatest dangers. The aids

deorum parantur non votis, neque muliebribus  
of the gods are procured not by vows, nor womanish

suppliciiis; omnia cedunt prosperè vigi-  
supplications; all (things) yield (occur) prosperously by watch-

lando, agendo, consulendo benè. Implores  
ing, by acting, by consulting well. Thou mayest implore

deos nequicquam, ubi tradideris (*perf. sub.*)  
the gods in-vain, when thou mayest have (hast) delivered

te socordiæ atque ignaviæ: sunt  
thee to heartlessness (slothfulness) and indolence: they are

irati que infesti. Apud nostros majores Aulus  
angry and hostile. Among our ancestors Aulus

Manlius Torquatus jussit filium necari  
Manlius Torquatus ordered (his) son to be put-to-death

Gallico bello, quòd is pugnaverat in hostem  
in the Gallic war, because he had fought against an enemy

contra imperium: atque ille egregius adolescens dedit  
against order: and that excellent young-man gave

pœnas morte immoderatæ fortitudinis.  
(suffered) punishments by death of (for his) excessive bravery.

Vos-cunctamini, quid statuatis de crudelissimis  
Do you-hesitate, what you may resolve concerning the most-cruel

parricidis? Videlicet cætera vita eorum obstat  
parricides? Forsooth the rest (former) life of them opposes

huic sceleri! Verum parcite dignitati Lentuli,  
(excuses) to this wickedness! But spare to the dignity of Lentulus,

si ipse pepercit unquam pudicitiae, si suæ famæ,  
if he has spared ever to chastity, if to his-own character,

si ullis diis aut hominibus. Ignoscite adolescentiæ  
if to any gods or to men. Pardon to the youth

Cethegi, nisi fecit jam iterum bellum  
 of Cethegus, unless he has made already again war (against his)  
 patriæ. Nam quid ego loquar de Gabinio, Statilio,  
 country. For what shall-I-speak of Gabinus, Statilius,  
 Cæpario, quibus si quidquam pensi fuisset  
 Cæparius, to whom if any of consideration might have been  
 (*plup. sub.*) unquam, habuissent non  
 (had been) ever, they might have held not (had not held)  
 ea consilia de republicâ?  
 those counsels concerning the republic? [Who, if they ever had any

reflection, would not have entertained those designs against the republic.]

Postremò, conscripti patres, si locus esset  
 Lastly, conscript fathers, if place might be (if there were  
 peccato, mehercule, facile-paterer vos corrigi  
 room) for error, [by Hercules,] I would easily-suffer you to be corrected  
 re ipsâ, quoniam contemnitis verba. Sed  
 by the thing itself, since you despise words. But  
 sumus circumventi undique: Catilina urget  
 we are beset on-every-side: Catiline presses to (our)  
 faucibus cum exercitu: alii hostes sunt intra  
 jaws (closely) with an army: other enemies are within  
 moenia, atque in sinu urbis. Neque potest  
 the walls, and in the bosom of the city. Neither can  
 quidquam parari neque consuli occultè: quò  
 any (thing) be prepared nor be consulted secretly: wherefore  
 est properandum magis.

it is to-be-hastened the more. [Wherefore speedy action is required.]

Quare ego ita censeo. Cùm respublica venerit  
 Therefore I thus determine. Since the republic may have come  
 (*perf. sub.*) in maxuma pericula nefario consilio  
 (has come) into the greatest dangers by the horrible counsels  
 sceleratorum civium; que hi convicti-sint (*perf. sub.*)  
 of wicked citizens; and these may have been convicted

indicio Titi Vulturcii, et legatorum Allo-  
 by the information of Titus Vulturcius, and of the ambassadors of the Al-  
 brogum; que confessi-sint (*perf. sub.*) paravisse  
 lebroges, and may have confessed to have prepared

cædem, incendia, que alia foeda atque crudelia  
murder, burnings, and other abominable and cruel

facinora in civis (cives) que patriam;  
crimes against (their) citizens and country; (that)

supplicium sumendum, more majorum, de  
punishment be-taken, by the custom of (our) ancestors, of

confessis, sicuti de manifestis  
(on those) having confessed, as of (those) manifest (clearly

capitalium rerum."  
convicted) of capital things (crimes)."

Postquam Cato assedit, omnes consulares,  
After Cato sat-down, all the consular (men),

que item magna pars senatûs, laudant sententiam  
and also a great part of the senate, praise the opinion

ejus; ferunt virtutem animi ad cælum :  
of him; bear (extol) the virtue of (his) mind to heaven :

alii increpantes vocant alios timidos : Cato habetur  
others chiding call others fearful : Cato is had

clarus atque magnus : decretum senati  
(accounted) renowned and great : a decree of the senate

fit, sicut ille censuerat. Sed fortè lubuit  
is made, as he had determined. But by chance it has pleased

mihi, legenti multa, audienti multa præclara facinora,  
to me, reading many, hearing many illustrious exploits,

quæ Romanus populus fecit domi que militiæ,  
which the Roman people has done at-home and at war

mari atque terrâ, attendere, quæ res  
(abroad), by sea and by land, to consider, what thing

sustinuisset maxumè tanta negotia. Sciebam  
might have sustained chiefly so-great affair. I did know

sæpenumerò contendisse parvâ manu cum  
(them) oftentimes to have contended with a small band with

magnis legionibus hostium : cognoveram bella gesta  
great legions of enemies : I have known wars carried-on

parvis copiis cum opulentis regibus :  
[by them] with small forces with opulent (powerful) kings :

ad hoc sæpè toleravisse  
(add) to this [that they] often to have borne [have sustained]

**violentiam fortunæ :** Græcos fuisse ante  
 the violence of fortune: [that] the Greeks to have been [were] before  
**Romanos facundiâ, Gallos gloriâ belli. Ac**  
 the Romans in eloquence, the Gauls in the glory of war. And  
**constabat mihi, agitantî multa** egregiam  
 it was evident to me, discussing many (things), [that] the singular  
**virtutem paucorum civium patravisse** cuncta;  
 virtue of a few citizens to have performed [performed] all  
**que factum** eo, utî paupertas  
 (things); and (it was) done (came to pass) by that, that poverty  
**superaret (imp. sub.) divitias, paucitas multitudinem.**  
 might overcome (overcame) riches, fewness multitude.  
**Sed postquam civitas corrupta est luxu atque**  
 But after the state was corrupted by luxury and  
**desidiâ, respublica sustentabat rursûs vitia**  
 by inactivity, the republic did support again the vices of (its)  
**imperatorum atque magistratuum suâ magnitudine;**  
 generals and magistrates from its-own greatness;  
**ac sicuti parente** effetâ, sanè haud quisquam  
 and as-if the parent (having been) worn-out, indeed not any-one  
**magnus virtute fuit Romæ multis tempestatibus.**  
 great in virtue has been at Rome for many seasons (periods).  
**Sed fuere meâ memoriâ duo viri, Marcus Cato**  
 But (there) were in my memory two men, Marcus Cato  
**et Caius Cæsar, ingenti virtute, diversis moribus,**  
 and Caius Cæsar, with (of) great virtue, with different manners,  
**quos quoniam res** obtulerat, fuit non  
 whom since the thing (the subject) has presented, it has been not  
**consilium præterire silentio, quin** aperirem  
 (my) design to pass-by in silence, but (that) I might disclose  
**naturam et mores utriusque, quantum possem**  
 the nature and manners of each, as-much-as I might be-able  
**ingenio. Igitur genus, ætas, eloquentia fuere propè**  
 by ability. Therefore extraction, age, eloquence were nearly  
**æqualia his; magnitudo animi par, item**  
 equal to these; (their) greatness of mind equal, likewise (their)  
**gloria, sed alia alii.** Cæsar  
 glory, but other (different) to the other (to each). Cæsar



habebatur magnus beneficiis ac munificentia;  
 was had (accounted) great by kindnesses and munificence;  
 Cato integritate vitæ. Ille factus clarus  
 Cato by integrity of life. He (the former) (was) made renowned  
 mansuetudine et misericordia; severitas addiderat  
 by mildness and by compassion; severity had added  
 dignitatem huic. Cæsar adeptus-est gloriam  
 dignity to this (the latter). Cæsar obtained glory  
 dando, sublevando, ignoscendo; Cato largiundo nihil.  
 by giving, by relieving, by pardoning; Cato by bestowing nothing.  
 Perfugium miseris in altero perniciēs  
 A refuge to the wretched (was) in the other (one), destruction  
 malis in altero. Facilitas illius,  
 to the bad in the other. The easiness (of access) of that (the former),  
 constantia hujus laudabatur. Postremò, Cæsar  
 the constancy of this (the latter) was praised. Finally, Cæsar  
 induxerat in animum laborare, vigilare,  
 had induced into (his) mind (had resolved) to labour, to watch,  
 intentus negotiis amicorum, negligere suâ,  
 intent to (on) the affairs of friends, to neglect his-own,  
 denegare nihil, quod esset (*imp. sub.*) dignum dono;  
 to deny nothing, which might be (was) worthy a gift;  
 exoptabat sibi magnum imperium, exercitum, novum  
 he did wish for himself great command, an army, a new  
 bellum, ubi virtus posset enitescere. At  
 war, where (his) valour might be-able to shine-forth. But  
 studium modestiæ, decoris, sed maxumè severitatis,  
 a zeal of (for) moderation, of propriety, but chiefly of strictness,  
 erat Catoni. Certabat non cum divite divitiis, neque  
 was to Cato. He did contend not with the rich in riches, neither  
 cum factioso factione; sed cum strenuo virtute,  
 with the factious in faction; but with the strenuous in virtue,  
 cum modesto pudore, cum innocente abstinentiâ:  
 with the modest in modesty, with the innocent in abstinence  
 malebat esse bonus quàm videri; ita,  
 [and purity]: he had-rather to be good than to seem (so); thus,  
 quo minùs petebat gloriam, eò magis  
 by what (how much) less he did seek glory, by that the more

adsequatur. Postquam, uti dixi, senatus dis-  
it did attend (him). After, as I have said, the senate de-

cessit in sententiam Catonis: consul ratus  
parted into [adopted] the opinion of Cato: the consul having deemed

optimum factu antecapere noctem, quæ instabat,  
(it) best to be done to anticipate the night, which did press-on

ne quid novaretur eo  
lest any (thing) might be renewed (might be changed) in that

spatio, jubet triumviros parare, quæ  
space [of time], orders the triumviri (sheriffs) to prepare, what

supplicium postulabat; ipse, præsiidiis dispositis,  
the punishment did require; he, the guards having been arranged,

deducit Lentulum in carcerem; idem fit cæteris  
leads-down Lentulus into prison; the same is done to the rest

per prætores. Est locus in carcere, quod  
by the pretors. There is a place in the prison, which

appellatur Tullianum, depressus circiter duodecim  
is called Tullianum, sunk about twelve

pedes humi, ubi ascenderis paululum  
feet of (in) the ground, where thou shalt have ascended a little

ad lævam. Parietes atque camera insuper, vincta  
to the left. Walls and a vault from-above, bound

lapideis fornicibus, muniunt eum undique: sed  
by stone arches, secure it on-every-side: but

facies ejus est foeda atque terribilis incultu,  
the appearance of it is filthy and terrible from dirt

tenebris, odore. Postquam Lentulus  
[from neglect], darkness, [and] stench. After-that Lentulus

demissus in eum locum, vindices capitalium  
(was) sent-down into that place, the avenger of capital

rerum, quibus præceptum erat, fregere  
things (executioner), to whom it had been commanded, broke (his)

gulum laqueo. Ita ille patricius ex  
throat with a rope [strangled him]. Thus that patrician of

clarissimâ gente Corneliorum, qui habuerat  
the most-renowned nation (family) of the Cornelli, who had had

consulare imperium Romæ, invenit exitum vitæ  
the consular authority of (at) Rome, found an end of life

**dignum** suis moribus que factis. **Supplicium**  
 worthy his manners and deeds. Punishment

**sumptum-est** eodem modo de Cethego, Statilio  
 was-taken in the same manner of (on) Cethegus, Statilius,

**Gabinio, Cepario.**  
 Gabinius, Ceparius.

**Dum** ea geruntur Romæ, Catilina  
 Whilst those (things) are carried-on at Rome, Catiline

**instituit** duas legiones ex omni copiâ, quam ipse  
 formed two legions out-of all the force, which he

**adduxerat,** et Manlius habuerat;  
 had led [had brought with him], and Manlius had had;

**complet** cohortes pro numero militum;  
 he fills-up the cohorts according-to (his) number of soldiers;

**dein** uti quisque voluntarius, aut ex sociis  
 afterwards as each volunteer, or [those] out-of the allies

**venerat** in castra, distribuerat æqualiter; ac  
 had come into the camp, he had distributed (them) equally; and

**expleverat** legiones numero hominum brevi spatio;  
 he had filled-up the legions with the number of men in a short space

**cum** non-habuisset  
 (of time); when (whereas) he might not have had (he had not)

**initio** ampliùs duobus millibus. Sed circiter  
 in the beginning more (than) two thousand. But about

**quarta** pars ex omni copiâ instructa-erat militaribus  
 a fourth part out-of all the force had been furnished with military

**armis;** cæteri, ut casus armaverat quemque, portabant  
 arms; the rest, as chance had armed each, did carry

**sparos** aut lanceas, alii præacutas sudes. Sed  
 javelins or lances, some sharp-pointed stakes. But

**postquam** Antonius adventabat cum exercitu, Catilina  
 after-that Antony did approach with an army, Catiline

**facere** iter per montes: modò  
 (began) to make (his) march through (over) the mountains: now

**movere** castra ad urbem, modò versùs in Galliam;  
 to move (his) camps to the city, now towards into Gaul;

**non dare** occasionem pugnandi hostibus.  
 not to give [he did not give an] opportunity of fighting to the enemies.

Sperabat se habiturum propediem magnas copias,  
 He did hope himself about-to-have shortly great forces,  
 si socii patravissent incepta Romæ.  
 If (his) companions might have executed (their) undertakings at Rome.  
 Interea, fretus opibus conjurationis, repudiabat  
 Mean-time, relying to (on) the resources of the conspiracy, he did reject  
 servitiâ, cujus magnæ copiæ concurrebant  
 slaveries (slaves), of which great forces (numbers) did run-together  
 ad eum initio; simul videri  
 to him in the beginning; at-the-same-time (thinking it) to seem  
 alienum suis rationibus, communicâsse causam civium  
 foreign to his purposes, to have shared the cause of citizens  
 cum fugitivis servis. Sed postquam nuncius pervenit  
 with fugitive slaves. But after-that a messenger arrived  
 in castra, conjurationem patefactam  
 into the camps, [that] the conspiracy (to be) laid-open [was dis-  
 covered] at Rome; [that] supplicium sumptum de  
 covered] at Rome; [that] punishment [was] taken of (on)  
 Lentulo et Cethego, que cæteris, quos memoravi  
 Lentulus and Cethegus, and the others, whom I have mentioned  
 supra; plerique, quos spes rapinarum, aut studium  
 above; many, whom the hope of rapines, or zeal  
 novarum rerum, illexerat, dilabuntur: Catilina  
 of new things (change), had allured, slip-away: Catiline  
 abducit reliquos, magnis itineribus per asperos  
 leads-off the rest, by great marches through rugged  
 montis (montes), in Pistoriensem agrum, eo consilio,  
 mountains, into the Pistorian land, with this design,  
 uti profugeret occultè per tramites in Galliam. At  
 that he might escape secretly by by-ways into Gaul. But  
 Quintus Metellus Celer existumans Catilinam, ex  
 Quintus Metellus Celer thinking Catiline, from  
 difficultate rerum, agitare illa  
 the difficulty of things (his circumstances), to agitate (project) those  
 eadem, quæ diximus suprâ, præsidebat cum  
 same (things), which we have said above, did preside with  
 tribus legionibus in Piceno agro. Igitur, ubi  
 three legions in the Picene land. Therefore, when

cognovit iter ejus ex perfugis, movit  
he knew [the direction of] the march of him from deserters, he moved

castra properè, ac consedit sub radicibus ipsis  
camps hastily, and encamped under the roots themselves

montium, quâ descensus erat illi  
(at the foot) of the mountains, where a descent was to him (Catiline)

properanti in Galliam. Neque tamen Antonius aberat  
hastening into Gaul. Neither however Antony was distant

longè, utpote qui sequeretur magno exercitu  
far, as (one) who might (did) follow with a great army

expeditos in fugam  
the disencumbered (those light armed) into flight (for retreat)

æquioribus locis. Sed Catilina, postquam vidit sese  
in more-level places. But Catiline, after-that he saw himself

clausum montibus atque copiis hostium, res adversas  
enclosed by mountains and the forces of the enemies, things adverse

in urbe, neque ullam spem fugæ, neque præsidii,  
in the city, neither any hope of flight, nor of protection

ratus optimum factu  
[of succour], having deemed (it) the best [thing] to be done [he

tentare fortunam belli in tali re,  
could do] to try the fortune of war in such a thing (crisis),

statuit configere Antonio quàm-primum.  
resolved to engage to (with) Antony as-first (as soon as

Itaque concione advocatâ, habuit  
possible). Therefore an assembly having been called, he (delivered)

orationem hujuscemodi:  
a speech of this-kind:

“Ego habeo compertum, milites! verba

“I have (it) found, soldiers! [that] words [do]

non addere virtutem viris; neque exercitum  
not to add (give) valour to men; neither [is] an army

fieri strenuum ex ignavo, neque fortem  
to be made [made] vigorous from (being) indolent, nor brave

ex timido, oratione imperatoris. Quanta audacia  
from fearful, by the speech of a general. How-much courage

inest animo cujusque, naturâ aut moribus,  
is-in to the mind of every-one, by nature or by dispositions,

tanta solet patere in bello. Nequicquam  
so-much is-wont to lie-open (be displayed) in war. In-vain

hortâre, quem neque gloria neque pericula  
thou mayest exhort (him), whom neither glory nor dangers  
excitant: timor animi officit auribus. Sed ego  
excite: cowardice of mind obstructs to (his) ears. But I

advocavi vos, quò monerem pauca,  
have assembled you, in-order-that I might advise a few (things),

simul, uti aperirem causam mei consilii.  
at-the-same-time, that I might disclose the cause of my design.

Milites, scitis quantam cladem socordia atque  
Soldiers, you know how-great a defeat the slothfulness and

ignavia Lentuli attulerit ipsi que  
indolence of Lentulus may have brought (has brought) to himself and

nobis, que quo modo, dum opperior præsidia  
to us, and in what manner, whilst I am-waiting-for reinforcements

ex urbe, nequiverim (*perf. sub.*) proficisci  
out-of the city, I may have been-unable (I have been unable) to set-out

in Galliam. Verò nunc omnes intelligitis juxtà  
into Gaul. But now (you) all understand equally

mecum in quo loco nostræ res sint. Duo  
with me in what situation our things may be (are). Two

exercitus hostium, unus ab urbe, alter à Galliâ  
armies of enemies, one from the city, the other from Gaul

obstant: egestas frumenti atque aliarum rerum  
oppose (us): the want of corn and of other things

prohibet esse diutiùs in his locis, si animus  
prevents (us) to be longer in these places, if (our) mind

maxumè-ferat. Iter  
may chiefly-bear (incline). [Even if our minds incline us thereto.] A way

est aperiundum ferro, quocunque placet ire.  
is to-be-opened by the sword, wheresoever it pleases (us) to go.

Quapropter moneo vos, uti sitis forti atque parato  
Wherefore I advise you, that you may be with brave and prepared

animo, et memineritis, cùm inibitis prælium,  
mind, and will have remembered, when ye shall enter the battle,

vos portare divitias, decus, gloriam,  
you to carry (that you carry) riches, honour, glory,

præterea libertatem atque patriam, in vestris dextris.  
besides liberty and country, in your right

Si vincimus, omnia erunt tuta nobis;  
(hands). If we conquer, all (things) shall be safe to us;

commeatus abundè, municipia et coloniæ patebunt.  
provisions abundantly, municipal-towns and colonies will be open.

Sin cesserimus metu, illa eadem fient  
But-if we shall have yielded by fear, those same (things) will be made

advorsæ. Neque quisquam locus neque amicus  
adverse. Neither any place nor friend

teget, quem arma texerint non.  
will cover (protect) (him), whom arms may have covered not. [Who has

Præterea, milites, eadem  
not protected himself by his arms.] Besides, soldiers, the same

necessitudo non-impendet nobis et illis. Nos  
necessity does not-impend to (over) us and them. We

certamus pro patriâ, pro libertate, pro vitâ:  
contend for (our) country, for liberty, for life:

est supervacaneum illis pugnare pro potentiâ  
it is useless to them to fight for the power

paucorum. Quò, memores pristinæ virtutis,  
of a few. Wherefore, mindful of pristine valour,

aggredimini audaciùs. Licuit vobis  
attack (them) the more-boldly. It was lawful for you

agere ætatem in exilio cum summâ turpi-  
to act (spend your) age in exile [with] the utmost base-

tudine: nonnulli potuistis, bonis amissis,  
ness: some (of you) have been-able, (your) goods having been lost,

expectare alienas opes Romæ: quia illa  
to look-to others' wealth at Rome: because those (things)

videbantur fœda atque intoleranda viris, decre-  
did seem foul and intolerable [to men], you have re-

vistis sequi hæc. Est opus audaciâ  
solved to follow these (my interests). (There) is need of boldness,

(abl.), si vultis relinquere hæc. Nemo, nisi  
if you will to leave (to complete) these. No-one, unless

victor, mutavit bellum pace. Nam sperare  
a conqueror, has changed war with (for) peace. For to hope

salutem in fugâ, tum avertere ab hostibus, arma  
safety in flight, then to turn-away from the enemies, the arms

quâs corpus tegitur, ea est verò dementia.  
by which the body is covered, that is indeed madness.

Maximum periculum est semper iis in prælio, qui  
The greatest danger is always to those in battle, who

timent maxumè: audacia habetur pro muro.  
fear most: boldness is had (accounted) for a wall.

Milites, cùm considero vos, et cùm aestimo vestra  
Soldiers, when I consider you, and when I estimate your

facta, magna spes victoriæ tenet me. Animus,  
deeds, great hope of victory possesses me. (Your) mind,

ætas, vestra virtus hortantur me: præterea neces-  
age, your valour encourage me: moreover, neces-

situdo, quæ facit etiam timidos fortis (fortes). Nam  
sity, which makes even the cowardly brave. For

angustiæ loci prohibent, ne multitudo hostium  
the defiles of the place prohibit, lest the multitude of the enemies

queat circumvenire. Quòd si fortuna inviderit  
may be-able to surround (us). But if fortune shall have envied

vestræ virtuti, cavete, ne inulti amittatis  
to your valour, beware, lest unrevenge you may lose

animam; neu capti, trucidemini, sicuti pecora,  
life; nor taken, you may be slaughtered, as cattle,

potius quàm pugnantes more virorum,  
rather than fighting in the manner of men,

relinquatis cruentam atque luctuosam victoriam  
you may leave a bloody and mournful victory

hostibus."

to the enemies."

Ubi dixit hæc, commoratus paululùm,  
When he said these (words), having delayed a little,

jubet signa canere, atque deducit ordines in  
he orders the trumpets to sound, and leads-down the ranks to

æquum locum: dein, equis omnium remotis,  
a level place: then, the horses all of having been removed,

quò amplior animus esset militibus,  
in-order-that a greater mind (spirit) might be to the soldiers,



periculo exæquato, ipse pedes instruit exercitum  
the danger having been equalled, he on-foot arranges the army

pro loco atque copiis. Nam, uti planities  
according-to the situation and forces. For, as a plain

erat inter montis (montes) sinistros, et aspera rupes  
was between the mountains on-the-left, and a rugged rock

ab dexterâ, constituit octo cohortes in fronte;  
from the right, he placed eight cohorts in front;

collocat reliqua signa arctius in  
he arranges the remaining standards (divisions) more-closely in

subsidiis. Subducit ab his in primam aciem,  
reserves. He draws-out from these into the first line,

omnis (omnes) lectos, centuriones, et evocatos,  
all the chosen, the centurions, and (those) called-out

præterea quemque optumè armatum ex  
(veteran), besides every best armed (man) of

gregariis militibus: jubet Caium Manlium curare in  
the common soldiers: he orders Caius Manlius to command on

dextrâ parte, quemdam Fæsulanum in sinistrâ:  
the right part (wing), a certain Fæsulan on the left:

ipse adsistit cum libertis et colonis  
he stands with the freedmen and colonists [of Sylla's army]

propter aquilam, quam Caius Marius dicebatur habuisse  
near the eagle, which Caius Marius was said to have had

in exercitu Cimbrico bello. At ex alterâ parte  
in (his) army in the Cimbrian war. But from (on) the other side

Caius Antonius, æger pedibus, permittit exercitum  
Caius Antony, diseased in feet, commits the army

Marco Petreio, legato, quòd nequibat adesse  
to Marcus Petreius, (his) lieutenant, because he was-unable to be-present

prælio. Ille locat veteranas cohortes,  
to (at) the battle. He (Antony) places the veteran cohorts,

quas conscripserat causâ tumulti (tumultûs),  
which he had levied by cause (on account) of the tumult,

in fronte, cæterum exercitum post eas, in subsidiis.  
in the front, the rest-of the army behind those, in reserves.

Iipse circumiens equo, nominans unumquemque,  
Himself (Petreius) going-about on horse, naming each-one,

appellat, hortatur, rogat, uti meminere  
addresses, encourages, asks (them), that they may have remembered

se cernere contra inermes latrones,  
(to remember) themselves to contend against unarmed robbers,

pro patriâ, pro liberis, pro suis aris atque  
for [their] country, for [their] children, for their altars and  
focis.

Militaris homo, quod fuerat tribunus,  
hearth. (This) military man, because he had been tribune,

aut præfectus, aut legatus, aut prætor, amplius  
or prefect, or lieutenant, [or pretor,] more (than)

triginta annos cum magnâ gloriâ in exercitu, noverat  
thirty years with great glory in the army, had known

plerosque ipsos, que fortia facta eorum; accendebat  
most-of them, and the brave deeds of them; he did kindle

animos militum commemorando ea. Sed ubi,  
the spirits of the soldiers by recounting those (things). But when,

omnibus rebus exploratis, Petreius dat signum  
all things having been explored, [Petreius] gives the signal

tubâ jubet cohortes incedere paullatim.  
by trumpet, (and) orders the cohorts to advance a little.

Exercitus hostium facit idem. Postquam ventum est  
The army of the enemies does the same. After it was come

eò, unde prælium posset committi à  
(they came) there, whence the battle might be engaged-in by

ferentariis, concurrunt maximo clamore, infestis  
the light-armed, they rush with the greatest shout, with hostile

signis; omittunt pila; res geritur gladiis.  
standards; cast-aside the javelins; the affair is-carried-on with swords.

Veterani, memores pristinae virtutis,  
The veterans, mindful of (their) pristine valour, (began)

instare acriter, cominus; illi haud timidi  
to press-on vigorously, hand-to-hand; they (the others) not fearful

resistunt: certatur maxima vi. Interea  
resist: it is contended with the greatest force. Meantime

Catilina versari cum expeditis in primâ  
Catiline (began) to be occupied with the light-armed in the first

acie: succurrere laborantibus,  
line; to relieve (to those) labouring (hard-pressed),

accersere integros pro sauciis; providere  
 to summon fresh (men) instead-of the wounded; to provide for  
 omnia; ipse pugnare multum; sæpe  
 all (things); himself to fight much; often  
 ferire hostem; exsequebatur simul officia  
 to strike the enemy; he did discharge at-the-same-time the duties  
 strenui militis et boni imperatoris. Ubi  
 of a vigorous soldier and of a good commander. When  
 Petreius videt Catilinam tendere magnâ vi,  
 Petreius sees Catiline to strive with great force,  
 contrâ ac ratus-erat, inducit prætoriam  
 otherwise than he had supposed, he leads-in the pretorian  
 cohortem in medios hostis (hostes), interficit  
 cohort into the middle-of the enemies, kills  
 que eos perturbatos atque alios resistentes  
 both those disordered and others resisting  
 alibi: deinde aggreditur cæteros utrimque  
 elsewhere: afterwards he attacks the rest on-both-sides  
 ex lateribus. Manlius et Fæsulanus pugnantes  
 of the flanks. Manlius and the Fæsulan fighting  
 in primis cadunt.  
 in the first (the van) fall. [Fell fighting among the first.]  
 Postquam Catilina videt copias fusas que se  
 After-that Catiline saw (his) forces routed and himself  
 relictum cum paucis, memor generis atque suæ  
 left with a few, mindful of (his) race and his  
 pristinæ dignitatis, incurrit in confertissimos hostes,  
 ancient dignity, he rushes into the thickest enemies,  
 que ibi pugnans confoditur. Sed, prælio  
 and there fighting is run-through. But, the battle  
 confecto, tum verò cerneret quanta  
 having been finished, then in-truth thou mightest perceive how-great  
 audacia, que quanta vis animi, fuisset (*pl. sub.*)  
 boldness, and how-great strength of mind, might have been (had been)  
 in exercitu Catilinæ. Nam quisque, animâ  
 in the army of Catiline. For every-one, (his) life

amissâ, ferè tegebat corpore  
being lost, almost (for the most part) did cover with (his) body

locum, quem vivus ceperat pugnando.  
the place, which (when) alive . he had taken in fighting.

Autem pauci, quos medios, prætoria cohors  
But a few, whom (being) middle, the pretorian cohort

disjecerat, conciderant paulò diversiùs,  
had dispersed, had fallen a little more-differently [more scat-

tered], sed omnes tamen adversis vulneribus.  
but all however with front wounds.

Verò Catilina repertus-est inter cadavera  
But Catiline was found among the dead-bodies of (his)

hostium longè à suis, etiam spirans paululùm,  
enemies far from his-own (men), even breathing a little,

que retinens vultu ferociam animi,  
and retaining in [his] countenance the fierceness of mind,

quam vivus habuerat. Postremò, quisquam  
which (when) alive he had had. Finally, any-one

ingenuus civis ex omni copiâ, neque captus-est  
free-born citizen of all the force, neither was taken

in prælio, neque in fugâ. Ita cuncti pepercerant  
in the battle, nor in the flight. So all had spared

sue que vitæ hostium justâ.  
to their-own and the life of enemies equally. [So little did all spare

Neque, tamen,  
either their own life, or that of the enemy.] Neither, however,

exercitus Romani populi adeptus-erat lætam  
the army of the Roman people had obtained a joyful

aut incruentam victoriam. Nam quisque strenuis-  
or bloodless victory. For each bra-

simus aut occiderat in prælio, aut  
vest (man) either had fallen [in] the engagement, or

discesserat graviter vulneratus. Autem multi,  
had departed severely wounded. But many,

qui processerant à castris gratiâ  
who had proceeded from the camps by favour (for the sake)

visundi aut spoliandi, volventes cadavera, alii  
 of going-to-see or despoiling, rolling the dead-bodies, some  
 reperiebant amicum, pars hospitem, aut cognatum.  
 did discover a friend, part a guest, or a relation.

Fuere item, qui cognoscerent (*imp. sub.*)  
 (There) were likewise (some), who might know (did recognise)

suos inimicos. Ita lætitia, mœror, luctus,  
 their-own enemies. Thus gladness, sorrow, grief,

atque gaudia variè-agitabantur per omnem  
 and joys were variously-mixed (exhibited) throughout the whole

exercitum.  
 army.

END OF THE CATILINARIAN WAR.

# SALLUSTII JUGURTHA.

## SALLUST'S JUGURTHA.



HUMANUM genus queritur falsò de suâ naturâ,  
 The human race complains unjustly of its-own nature,  
 quòd imbecilla atque brevis ævi,  
 because (being) weak and of short age (duration),  
 regatur (*sub.*) potiùs sorte quàm  
 it may be governed (is governed) rather by lot (chance) than  
 virtute. Nam contrà invenias  
 by virtue (native energy). For (but) on-the-contrary you may find  
 reputando, neque aliud majus, neque præ-  
 by reflecting, neither another (thing) greater, nor more-  
 stabilis; que industriam hominum desse  
 excellent; and [that the] industry of men to be-wanting  
 magis naturæ, quàm vim aut  
 more [is more wanting] to nature, than strength (efficacy) or  
 tempus. Sed animus est dux atque imperator vitæ  
 time. But the mind is the guide and governor of the life  
 mortalium, qui, ubi grassatur ad gloriam viâ  
 of mortals, which, when it advances to glory by the way  
 virtutis, est abundè pollens, que potens, et clarus,  
 of virtue, is abundantly efficient, and powerful, and illustrious,  
 neque eget fortunâ; quippe, quæ potest  
 neither wants fortune; for (as being that), which is-able  
 neque dare neque eripere probitatem, industriam,  
 neither to give nor to wrest-away honesty, industry,  
 que alias bonas artis (artes) cuiquam.  
 and other good endowments for (from) any-one.

Sin · captus pravis cupidinibus, usus  
But-if (the mind) taken by depraved desires, having used

paulisper perniciosâ lubidine, pessum-datus-  
(indulged) for-a-little-time destructive passion, has been precipi-

est ad inertiam et voluptates ccorporis, ubi vires,  
tated to indolence and the pleasures of the body, when forces

tempus, ingenium defluxere per socordiam,  
(strength), time, ability have flowed-away by indolence,

infirmitas naturæ accusatur: quique actores  
the infirmity of nature is accused: each (of) the authors [of these

transferunt suam culpam ad negotia.  
evils] transfer their-own fault to (their) affairs.

Quòd si tanta cura bonarum rerum esset  
But if so-great a care of good things might be (were)

hominibus, quanto studio petunt  
to men, with how-much zeal they seek (things) [but if men as

aliena  
zealously sought good things, as they do those, which are] foreign

ac profutura nihil, etiam multum periculosa,  
and about-to-profit nothing, even greatly dangerous,

neque regerentur magis, quam regerent casus;  
neither might they be governed more, than they might govern chances

et procederent eò magnitudinis, ubi  
(events); and they might advance to that (point) of greatness, where

fierent, pro mortalibus,  
they might become, instead-of mortals [in as much as mortals are

æterni gloriâ. Nam uti genus hominum  
allowed], everlasting in glory. For as the race of men

est compositum ex corpore et animâ; ita cunctæ  
is composed of body and soul; so all (our)

res que omnia nostra studia sequuntur, alia  
things and all our pursuits follow, others (some)

naturam corporis, alia animi. Igitur  
the nature of the body, others (the nature) of the mind. Therefore

præclara facies, magnæ divitiæ, ad-hoc vis  
a fine appearance, great riches, to-this (besides) strength

corporis, et omnia alia hujusmodi, dilabuntur  
of body, and all other (things) of this-kind, glide-away

brevi; at egregia facinora ingenii sunt  
 shortly; but the illustrious acts of the understanding are

immortalia, sicuti anima. Postremò, uti est  
 immortal, as the soul. Finally, as (there) is

initium, sic finis bonorum corporis et  
 a beginning, so (is there) an end of the goods of the body and

fortunæ; que omnia orta, occidunt; et  
 of fortune; and all (things) having risen, fall; and

aucta, senescunt; animus incorruptus, æternus,  
 being increased, grow-old; the mind uncorrupted, eternal,

rector humani generis, agit atque habet  
 the ruler of the human race, acts and has (comprehends)

cuncta, neque ipse habetur.  
 [controls] all (things), neither itself is had (comprehended).

Quò pravitas eorum  
 [Nor is it controlled by any thing.] Wherefore the depravity of those

est magis admiranda, qui dediti gaudiis  
 is the more to-be-wondered-at, who addicted to the pleasures

corporis, agunt ætatem per luxum atque  
 of the body, act (spend their) age through luxury and

ignaviam: cæterùm sinunt ingenium, quo  
 indolence: but allow the understanding, (than) which

neque est aliud melius neque amplius  
 neither is (there) another (thing) better nor more-extensive

naturâ mortalium, torpescere incultu atque  
 in the nature of mortals, to grow-torpid from want-of-culture and

socordiâ; cùm præsertim tam multæ, que variæ  
 slothfulness; when especially so many, and various

artes animi sint (*sub.*), quibus summa claritudo  
 arts of the mind may be (are), by which the highest renown

paratur. Verùm ex his artibus, magistratus et  
 is procured. But out-of these employments, magistrates and

imperia, postremò, omnis cura publicarum rerum,  
 authorities, finally, all care of public things,

videntur mihi minumè cupiunda hâc tempestate:  
 appear to me by-no-means to-be-desired at this time:

quoniam neque honos datur virtuti, neque illi  
 since neither honour is given to virtue, neither they



quibus jus fuit per fraudem tuti aut magis  
to whom authority has been [through fraud] (are) secure or more

honesti eò. Nam quidem regere patriam  
honourable on-that-account. For indeed to rule (one's) country

aut parentes vi, quamquam et possis,  
or parents by force, although and (even) thou mayest be-able,

et corrigas delicta, tamen est importunum, cùm  
and mayest amend faults, yet it is unpleasant, since

præsertim omnes mutationes rerum portant (sub.)  
especially all changes of things may portend

cædem, fugam, que alia hostilia. Autem  
slaughter, banishment, and other hostile (things). But

niti frustrà neque quærere aliud  
to endeavour in-vain and-not to seek (acquire) another (thing)

fatigando se, nisi odium est extremæ  
by fatiguing (one's) self, unless hatred is (the part) of extreme

dementiæ: nisi fortè inhonesta et perniciosa  
madness: unless perhaps a dishonourable and destructive

lubido tenet quem, gratificari decus atque suam  
passion possesses any-one, to deliver-up honour and his

libertatem potentiæ paucorum. Cæterùm ex aliis  
liberty to the power of a few. But of other

negotiis, quæ exercentur ingenio, memoria  
[things], which are exercised by the understanding, the memory

rerum gestarum est in-primis magno usui;  
of things carried-on (history) is particularly to great advantage;

de virtute cujus, quia multi dixere,  
of the virtue (merit) of which, because many have spoken [thereof],

puto prætereundum; simul ne quis  
I think [it is] to-be-passed-by; at-the-same-time lest any (one)

existumet extollere memet per insolentiam  
may think (me) to extol myself through insolence (vanity)

laudando meum studium. Atque ego credo  
by praising my pursuit. And I believe (those)

fore, qui imponent nomen  
to be about-to-be [there will be those], who may impose the name

inertiæ meo tanto que tam utili labori, quia  
of indolence to (on) my so-great and so useful labour, because

decrevi agere ætatem procul à  
 I have resolved to act (spend) (my) age [life] at-a-distance from  
 republica; certè quibus  
 the republic (public affairs); surely (they will be by those) to whom  
 videtur maxume industria salutare plebem, et  
 it seems the greatest industry to salute the community, and  
 quærere gratiam convivii. Qui, si reputaverint  
 to seek favour by banquets. Who, if they shall have reflected  
 et quibus temporibus adeptus-sum magistratum,  
 and (both) in what times I have obtained the magistracy,  
 et quales viri nequiverint (*perf. sub.*) assequi  
 and what-sort-of men may have been unable to attain  
 idem, et postea quæ genera hominum pervenerint  
 the same, and afterwards what kinds of men may have come  
 (*perf. sub.*) in senatum, profectò existumabunt me  
 into the senate, in-deed will think me  
 mutavisse judicium mei animi magis meritò  
 to have changed the judgment of my mind rather deservedly [for  
 quàm ignaviâ; que majus commodum  
 good reason] than from inactivity; and greater advantage  
 venturum reipublicæ et meo otio,  
 about-to-come [would result] to the republic also from my leisure (re-  
 quàm ex negotiis aliorum. Nam  
 tirement), than from the businesses (activity) of others. For  
 sæpè audiivi Quintum Maxumum, Publium Sci-  
 often I have heard Quintus Maximus (and) Publius Sci-  
 pionem, præterea præclaros viros nostræ  
 pio, besides (other) illustrious men of our  
 civitatis solitos dicere ita; animum  
 state (to have been) accustomed to speak thus; the mind  
 accendi sibi vehementissumè  
 to be inflamed to them most-violently [that the mind was greatly  
 ad virtutem, cùm intuerentur  
 excited] to virtue, when they might (did) look-on  
 imagines majorum. Scilicet non illam ceram  
 the images of (their) ancestors. Forsooth not that wax  
 neque figuram habere tantam vim in sese, sed  
 nor figure to have so-great force in themselves, but

eam flammam crescere in pectore egregiis viris  
that flame to increase in the breast to the illustrious men

memoriâ rerum gestarum, neque sedari priùs-  
by the memory of things carried-on, and-not to be allayed before-

quàm virtus adæquaverit famam atque gloriam  
that (their) virtue may have equalled the fame and glory

eorum. At contrâ, quis omnium est  
of them [their ancestors]. But on-the-other-hand, who of all is

his moribus, quin contendat  
with these (the present) manners, but may contend [who is there

cum  
in our present corrupt manners, that does not rather contend] with

suis majoribus, divitiis et sumptibus, non probitate  
his ancestors, in riches and in expenses, not in honesty

neque industriâ. Etiam novi homines, qui  
nor in industry. Also new (obscure) men, who

soliti-erant antea antevenire nobilitatem per  
had been accustomed before to outstrip the nobility by

virtutem, nituntur ad imperia et honores  
virtue, strive to [obtain] commands and honours

furtim et per latrocinia potiùs quàm bonis artibus.  
by-stealth and by robberies rather than by good arts.

Proinde-quasi prætura et consulatus, atque omnia  
Just-as-if the pretorship and consulship, and all

alia hujuscemodi, sint clara et magnifica  
other (things) of-this-kind, may be (are) illustrious and magnificent

per se, ac non-habeantur perinde, ut  
by themselves, and may not-be-had (regarded) just-so, as

virtus eorum est, qui sustinent ea. Verum ego  
the virtue of those is, who sustain those (offices). But I

processi liberius que altius, dum  
have proceeded more (too) freely and more-profoundly [rar], whilst

piget que tædet me morum civitatis. Nunc  
it grieves and wearies me of the morals of the state. Now

redeo ad inceptum.

I return to (my) undertaking.

Sum scripturus bellum quod Romanus populus  
I am about to write the war which the Roman people

gessit cum Jugurthâ, rege Numidarum : primùm,  
 carried-on with Jugurtha, king of the Numidians : first,  
 quia fuit magnum et atrox, que variâ victoriâ;  
 because it was great and fierce, and with various victory;  
 dein quia primùm itum-est obviam  
 then because first it was gone against (opposition was made).  
 superbiae nobilitatis. Quæ contentio permiscuit  
 to the pride of the nobility. Which contention confounded  
 cuncta divina et humana, que processit  
 all (things) divine and human, and proceeded  
 eò vecordiae, uti bellum, atque vastitas  
 thither (to that pitch) of madness, that war, and the desolation  
 Italiae, facerent finem civilibus studiis.  
 of Italy, might make (did make) an end to civil pursuits (con-  
 Sed priusquam expedio initium hujusmodi  
 tions). But before-that I prepare the beginning of this-kind  
 rei, repetam supra pauca quò  
 of thing, I will trace-back a few (things) in-order-that  
 ad cognoscendum omnia sint magis  
 [to the knowing of them] all (things) may-be more  
 illustria que magis in aperto. Secundo  
 clear and more in open (evident). In the second  
 Punico bello, quo Hannibal, dux  
 Punic war, in which Hannibal, the general of the  
 Carthaginiensium, attriverat maxume opes Italiae,  
 Carthaginians, had impaired most the resources of Italy,  
 post magnitudinem Romani nominis;  
 since the greatness [renown] of the Roman name;  
 Masinissa, rex Numidarum, receptus in  
 Masinissa, king of the Numidians, having been received into  
 amicitiam à Publio Scipione, cui postea fuit  
 friendship by Publius Scipio, to whom afterwards was  
 cognomen Africano ex virtute, fecerat multa  
 the surname Africanus from (his) valour, had done many  
 et praeclara facinora militaris rei;  
 and illustrious exploits of military thing (nature);  
 ob quæ Romanus populus dedit dono  
 on-account-of which the Roman people gave for a present

regi quascumque urbis (urbes) et agros  
 to the king whatsoever cities and lands it (they)  
 ceperat manu, Carthaginiensibus victis,  
 had taken by hand (by force), the Carthaginians being conquered,  
 et Syphace capto, imperium cujus valuit  
 and Syphax being taken, the power of whom [Syphax] prevailed  
 magnum atque latè in Africâ; igitur amicitia  
 great and widely in Africa; therefore the friendship  
 Masinissæ permansit bona atque honesta nobis.  
 of Masinissa continued good and honourable to us.  
 Sed finis imperiî que vitæ ejus fuit  
 But the end of the government and of the life of him was  
 idem. Dein Micipsa filius solus obtinuit regnum,  
 the same. Then Micipsa [his son] alone obtained the kingdom,  
 Manastabale et Gulussâ fratribus absumptis  
 Manastabal and Gulussa (his) brothers having been taken-off  
 morbo. Is genuit ex sese Atherbalem et  
 by disease. He begot from himself Adherbal and  
 Hiempsalem, que habuit domi eodem cultu  
 Hiempsal, and had of (at) home in the same cultivation  
 quo suos liberos, Jugurtham, filium  
 in which (he had) his-own children, Jugurtha, the son of (his)  
 fratris Manastabalis, quem Masinissa reliquerat  
 brother Manastabal, whom Masinissa had left  
 privatum, quòd ortus-erat ex concubinâ. Qui  
 private, because he had sprung from a concubine. Who  
 ubi primùm adolevit, pollens viribus,  
 when first he grew-up, prevailing in forces (bodily strength),  
 decorâ facie, sed multò maxumè validus  
 with beautiful appearance, but by-much most strong  
 ingenio, non dedit se corrumpendum luxu  
 in understanding, he gave-not himself to-be-corrupted to luxury,  
 (luxui), neque inertiae. Sed, uti mos illius  
 nor to indolence. But, as the custom of that  
 gentis est, equitare, jaculari, certare cum  
 nation is, to ride, to cast-the-javelin, to contend with (his)  
 æqualibus cursu: et cùm anteiret  
 equals in the course: and when (though) he might excel (did excel)

omnes gloriâ, tamen esse carus omnibus: ad  
 all in glory, yet (he began) to be dear to all: to  
 hoc agere pleraque tempora in  
 this (besides) to spend [he spent] most [of his] times in  
 venando, primus, aut in primis, ferire  
 hunting, [was] the first, or among the first, to strike  
 leonem atque alias feras, ipse facere  
 the lion and other wild-beasts, himself to do [did]  
 plurimùm, et loqui minumùm de se. Quibus  
 the most, and to say [said] the least of himself. By which  
 rebus, tametsi Micipsa fuerat lætus initio,  
 things, although Micipsa had been joyful in the beginning,  
 existumans virtutem Jugurthæ fore gloriæ  
 thinking the virtue of Jugurtha to be about-to-be for glory  
 suo regno, tamen postquam intelligit  
 to his kingdom, yet after he understands  
 adolescentem hominem crescere magis que magis,  
 the young man to increase more and more,  
 suâ ætate exactâ, et liberis parvis,  
 his-own age being spent out, and (his) children small,  
 vehementer permotus eo negotio, volvebat multa  
 exceedingly affected by that business, he did revolve many  
 cum suo animo. Natura mortalium, avida  
 (things) with his-own mind. The nature of mortals, covetous  
 imperii, et præceps ad cupidinem animi  
 of command, and precipitate to the desire of the mind  
 explendam, terreat  
 to-be-satiated, [and precipitate in gratifying their desires], did affright  
 eum; præterea, opportunitas suæ ætatis que  
 him; moreover, the opportunity of his-own age and (that)  
 liberorum, quæ agit etiam mediocres viros  
 of his children, which acts (drives) even moderate men  
 transvorsos; ad hoc studia  
 oblique (in a wrong direction); to this (besides) the zeals (affections)  
 Numidarum accensa in Jugurtham, ex  
 of the Numidians kindled towards Jugurtha (did alarm him), from  
 quibus erat anxius, ne qua seditio aut  
 whom he was anxious (apprehensive), lest any sedition or

bellum oriretur, si interfecisset talem virum  
war might arise, if he might have killed such a man

dolis. Circumventus his difficultatibus, ubi  
by stratagems. Beset by these difficulties, when

videt hominem tam acceptam popularibus  
he sees a man so accepted (dear) to (his) countrymen

posse opprimi neque per vim, neque insidiis,  
to be-able to be destroyed neither by force, nor by snares,

statuit objectare eum periculis, et tentare  
he determined to expose him to dangers, and to try

fortunam eo modo, quòd Jugurtha erat promptus  
fortune in that manner, because Jugurtha was ready

manu, et appetens militaris gloriæ. Igitur  
in hand (action), and desiring of military glory. Therefore

Numantino bello, Micipsa, cùm mitteret  
in the Numantine war, Micipsa, when he might send (did send)

auxilia equitum (*pl.*) atque peditum (*pl.*) Romano  
auxiliaries of cavalry and of infantry to the Roman

populo, præfecit Numidis, quos mittebat in  
people, appointed (him) to the Numidians, whom he did send into

Hispaniam, sperans eum facilè occasurum  
Spain, hoping him easily about-to-fall [that he would

vel ostentando virtutem, vel sævitia  
fall] either in displaying (his) valour, or by the cruelty

hostium; sed ea res evenit aliter ac  
of the enemies; but that thing happened otherwise and (than)

ratus-erat. Nam Jugurtha, ut erat impigro  
he had imagined. For Jugurtha, as he was with (of) an active

atque acri ingenio, ubi cognovit naturam Publii  
and sharp disposition, when he knew the nature of Publius

Scipionis, qui erat tum imperator Romanis, et  
Scipio, who was then general to the Romans, and

morem hostium, pervenerat. brevì  
the manner of the enemies, had come shortly [he soon came]

in tantam claritudinem, multo labore, que multà  
into so-great renown, by much labour, and by much

curâ, præterea, parendo modestissumè, et eundo  
care, moreover, by obeying most-modestly, and by going

sæpe obviàm periculis, uti esset  
often toward to dangers, [to meet danger], that he might be (was)

vehementer carus nostris, maxumo  
exceedingly dear to our (men), to the greatest [and the greatest]

terrori Numantinis. Ac sanè erat et  
terror to the Numantines. And indeed he was and (both)

strenuus prælio et bonus consilio, quod est in-primis  
vigorous in battle and good in counsel, which is peculiarly

difficillimum; alterum quorum solet plerùmque  
most-difficult; the one of which is-accustomed generally

adferre timorem ex providentiâ, alterum temeritatem  
to produce fear from foresight, the other rashness

ex audaciâ. Igitur imperator agere ferè  
from boldness. Therefore the general (began) to-do almost

• omnis (omnes) asperas res per Jugurtham,  
all rough [perilous] things through Jugurtha,

habere in amicis, amplecti eum magis  
to have (him) among (his) friends, to embrace him more

que magis in-dies, quippe  
and more daily, [to become daily more attached to him], inasmuch

cujus consilium neque ullum  
as whose counsel neither any [as by his counsel no]

inceptum erat frustrâ. Huc accedebat  
undertaking was in-vain. Hither did approach (was added)

munificentia animi et solertia ingenii, quibus  
a munificence of mind and cleverness of understanding, by which

rebus conjunxerat multos ex Romanis sibi  
things he had united many out-of the Romans to him

familiari amicitia. Eâ tempestate fuere in nostro  
in familiar friendship. In that time there were in our

exercitu complures novi atque nobiles,  
army very-many new (obscure) and noble (men),

quibus divitiæ erant potiores bono  
to whom riches were better (more desirable) (than) good

que honesto; factiosi, potentes domi, magis  
and honourable (conduct); factious, powerful of (at) home, more

clari quàm honesti apud socios; qui  
conspicuous than honourable among the allies; who



accendebant non-mediocrem animum Jugurthæ  
 did inflame the immoderate mind of Jugurtha

pollicitando, si rex Micipsa accidisset  
 by promising (frequently), if king Micipsa might have fallen (were

fore uti solus potiretur  
 dead) to be about-to-be that (he) alone might enjoy

imperio (*abl.*) Numidiæ,  
 the empire [he alone might obtain his kingdom] of Numidia, [that]

maximam virtutem esse in ipso, omnia  
 the greatest valour to be [was] in himself, [that] all (things to

venalia Romæ. Sed postquam, Numantiâ  
 be) [were] saleable of (at) Rome. But after, Numantia

deletâ, Publius Scipio decrevit dimittere  
 being destroyed, Publius Scipio resolved to dismiss

auxilia, ipse reverti domum, adduxit in  
 the auxiliaries, himself to return home, he led into

Prætorium Jugurtham, donatum atque laudatum  
 the Prætorian-tent Jugurtha, having been gifted and praised

magnificè pro concione; que ibi secretò monuit  
 magnificently before the assembly; and [there] secretly advised

uti coleret amicitiam Romani populi  
 (him) that he should cultivate the friendship of the Roman people

potius publicè quàm privatim; neu insuesceret  
 rather publicly than privately; nor should he accustom

largiri quibus; quod esset  
 (himself) to bribe to any; [for] (that) which might-be [is] (the

multorum emi periculose à paucis.  
 property) of many to be bought [is bought] dangerously from a few.

Si vellet permanere in suis artibus,  
 If he might will to continue in his-own arts, [if he continued

et gloriam et  
 to cultivate the abilities he possessed], and (both) glory and

regnum venturum ultrò illi:  
 kingdom (to be) about-to-come [would come] spontaneously to him:

sin pergeret properantiùs, ipsum  
 but-if he should proceed more (too) hastily, himself (to be)

casurum præcipitem suâmet pecuniâ.  
 about-to-fall [that he would fall] headlong by his-own money

Sic locutus, dimisit eum cum literis, quas  
Thus having spoken, he dismissed him with letters (a letter), which

redderet Micipsæ. Sententia earum erat hæc:  
he might deliver to Micipsa. The purport of these (it) was this:

virtus tui Jugurthæ Numantino bello fuit  
the valour of thy Jugurtha in the Numantine war has been

longè maxuma; quam rem certè-scio esse gaudio  
by far the greatest; which thing I certainly know to be for joy

tibi. Est carus nobis ob sua merita:  
to thee. He is dear to us on-account-of his deserts:

nitemur summâ ope, ut sit idem  
we will endeavour with the highest might, that he may be the same

senatui que Romano populo. Quidem gratulor  
to the senate and to the Roman people. Indeed I congratulate

tibi pro nostrâ amicitia. En habes virum  
to thee for (in regard to) our friendship. Lo thou hast a man

dignum te (*abl.*), atque suo avo Masinissâ.  
worthy thee, and his-own grandsire Masinissa.

Igitur ubi rex cognovit ea, quæ  
Therefore when the king knew those (things), which

acceperat famâ, esse ita ex literis  
he had received by report, to be so from the letters (letter)

imperatoris, permotus cùm virtute tum gratiâ  
of the general, affected as-well by the valour as by the favour

viri, flexit suum animum, et aggressus-est  
of the man, he bent (changed) his mind, and essayed

vincere Jugurtham beneficiis, que statim  
to overcome Jugurtha by favours, and immediately

adoptavit eum et instituit hæredem pariter cum  
adopted him, and appointed (him) heir equally with

filiis testamento. Sed ipse confectus  
(his) sons by a will. But he being finished (spent),

post paucos annos, morbo, atque ætate, cùm  
after a few years, by disease, and by age, when

intelligeret finem vitæ adesse sibi,  
he might perceive (did perceive) the end of life to be-present to him,

dicitur habuisse verba hujusmodi cum  
[to be near], is said to have had words of this-kind with

Jugurthâ, coram amicis, et cognatis, que item  
Jugurtha, in-presence-of friends, and relations, and also (his)

filiis Atherbale et Hiempsale:

sons Adherbal and Hiempsal:

“Jugurtha, ego accepi te parvum, patre  
“Jugurtha, I received thee little, (thy) father

amisso, sine spe, sine opibus in  
having been lost [being dead], without hope, without resources into

meum regnum, existumans me non fore minùs  
my kingdom, thinking me not to-be-about-to-be less

carum tibi ob benèficia,  
[that I would be no less] dear to thee on-account-of (my) kindnesses,

quàm si genuissem: neque ea  
than if I might have (had) begotten (thee): neither that

res habuit me falsam. Nam  
thing has had me deceived. [Nor have I been deceived.] For

ut omittam tua alia magna et egregia, novissume  
that I may omit thy other great and excellent (acts), very-lately

rediens Numantiâ, honoravisti que me que meum  
returning from Numantia, thou hast honoured both me and my

regnum gloriâ; que fecisti Romanos ex  
kingdom by (thy) glory; and thou hast made the Romans from

amicis amicissimos nobis tuâ virtute: nomen  
friends most-friendly to us by thy valour: the name of (our)

familiæ renovatum-est in Hispaniâ: postremò,  
family has been renewed in Spain: finally,

vicisti invidiam gloriâ, quod est  
thou hast conquered envy by glory, (a thing) which is

difficillimum inter mortalis (mortales). Nunc quoniam  
most-difficult among mortals. Now since

natura facit finem vitæ mihi, moneo que obtestor  
nature makes an end of life to me, I advise and conjure (thee)

per hanc dextram, per fidem regni, uti  
by this right (hand), by the faith of a kingdom, that

habeas hos caros, qui propinqui tibi genere,  
thou mayest have those dear, who relations to thee by kindred,

sunt fratres meo beneficio; neu malis adjungere  
are brothers by my kindness; nor thou mayest prefer to attach

alienos quam retinere conjunctos sanguine  
(to thee) strangers than to retain (those) united by blood.

Non exercitus, neque thesauri sunt præsidia regni,  
[Not] an army, nor treasures are the defences of a kingdom,

verùm amici: pariuntur officio et fide,  
but friends: they are procured by office (service) and by faith,

quos queas neque cogere armis, neque  
whom thou mayest be-able neither to compel by arms, nor

parare auro. Autem quis amicior fratri  
to procure by gold. But who (should be) more-friendly to a brother

quàm frater? aut quem alienum invenies fidem,  
than a brother? or what stranger wilt thou find faithful,

si fueris hostis tuis?  
if thou mayest have been (hast been) an enemy to thy-own (relations)?

Equidem ego trado regnum firmum vobis, si eritis  
Indeed I deliver the kingdom strong to you, if you will be

beni, imbecillum si mali. Nam parvæ res  
good, (but) weak if bad. For small things

crescunt concordia, maxumæ dilabuntur discordia.  
increase by concord, the greatest glide-away by discord.

Cæterum, Jugurtha, decet te ante hos, quia  
But, Jugurtha, it becomes thee before these, because

es prior ætate et sapientiâ, providere ne  
thou art superior in age and wisdom, to provide lest

quid eveniat aliter: nam in omni  
any (thing) may happen otherwise [than I wish]: for in every

certamine, qui est opulentior, etiamsi accipit  
contest, (he) who is more-opulent, although he receives

injuriam, tamen videtur facere quia plus-potest.  
an injury, yet seems to do (it) because he is-more-powerful.

Autem vos, Atherbal et Hiempsal, colite, observate  
But you, Adherbal and Hiempsal, reverence, [and] regard

hunc talem virum; imitamini virtutem, et enitimini  
this such a man; imitate (his) valour, and endeavour

ego ne-videar sumpsisse quàm genuisse  
(that) I may not-seem (rather) to have adopted than to have begotten

meliores liberos."  
better children."

**Ad ea,** Jugurtha, tametsi intelligebat regem  
 To these (words), Jugurtha, although he did perceive the king  
**locutum-(esse) ficta,** et ipse agitabat longè  
 to have spoken feigned (words), and he did revolve far  
**aliter animo,** tamen respondit benignè pro  
 otherwise in mind, yet answered kindly according-to  
**tempore.** Micipsa moritur paucis diebus pòst.  
 the time. Micipsa dies a few days after.  
**Postquam illi fecerant justa magnificè regio**  
 After they had made the obsequies magnificently in a royal  
**more,** reguli convenerunt in unum,  
 manner, the petty-princes assembled in one (place),  
**ut disceptarent inter se de cunctis rebus.**  
 that they might debate among themselves about all matters.  
**Sed Hiempsal, qui erat minimus ex illis,**  
 But Hiempsal, who was the least [the youngest] of them,  
**ferox naturâ,** despiciens etiam antea ignobilitatem  
 fierce by nature, despising even before the mean-descent  
**Jugurthæ, quia erat impar materno genere, adsedit**  
 of Jugurtha, because he was unequal by maternal kindred, sat-beside  
**Atherbalem dexterâ,** ne Jugurtha foret medius  
 Adherbal on the right, lest Jugurtha might be [in the] middle  
**ex tribus, quod ducitur honori, et apud**  
 of the three, which is led (esteemed) for honour, and (also) among  
**Numidas.** Dein, tamen, fatigatus à  
 the Numidians. Afterwards, however, having been importuned by (his)  
**fratre, ut concederet ætati, vix transductus-est**  
 brother, that he might yield to age, scarcely was brought-over  
**in alteram partem.** Ibi, cùm dissererent  
 to the other part (side). There, when they might (did) discuss  
**multa de imperio administrando, Jugurtha**  
 many (things) about the government to-be-administered, Jugurtha  
**jacit inter alias res oportere omnia**  
 throws-out among other things to behave (that it was fit) all  
**consulta et decreta quinquennii rescindi, nam**  
 the decisions and decrees of (the last) five years to be rescinded, for  
**Micipsa confectum annis per ea tempora,**  
 Micipsa worn-out with years during those times,

valuisse parum animo. Tum Hiempsal  
 to have availed little in mind. [Was weak in mind.] Then Hiempsal  
 respondit idem placere sibi: nam  
 answered [that] the same to please to him [pleased him]: for  
 illum-ipsum pervenisse adoptione  
 [that he] himself (Jugurtha) to have come [had come] by adoption  
 in regnum his tribus proximis annis.  
 into the kingdom in these three next (latest) years.  
 Quod verbum descendit altius in pectus Jugurthæ  
 Which word descended more-deeply into the breast of Jugurtha  
 quàm quisquam ratus-(erat). Itaque anxius irâ et  
 than any-one had supposed. Therefore restless by anger and  
 metu ex eo tempore, moliri, parare,  
 by fear from that time, (he began) to contrive, to prepare,  
 atque habere ea modò in animo, quibus  
 and to have those (things) only in mind, by which  
 Hiempsal caperetur per dolum. Quæ uti  
 Hiempsal might be taken through stratagem. Which as  
 procedunt tardiùs, neque ferox animus  
 they advance more (too) slowly, neither (his) fierce mind  
 lenitur, statuit perficere inceptum quovis  
 is soothed, he determined to accomplish (his) undertaking by any  
 modo. Placuerat primo conventu, quem  
 manner. It had pleased (them) in the first assembly, which  
 memoravi supra, factum-(esse) ab regulis,  
 I have related above, to have been made, by the petty-princes, [that]  
 thesauros dividi, propter dissen-  
 the treasures to be divided [should be divided] on-account-of disagree-  
 sionem, que finis (fines) imperii constitui  
 ment, and the boundaries of government to be assigned [should  
 singulis. Itaque tempus decernitur ad  
 be assigned] to each. Therefore a time is decreed to (for)  
 utramque rem, sed maturiùs ad pecuniam distri-  
 each thing, but sooner to the money to-be-dis-  
 buendam.  
 tributed. [But that the money should be first distributed.]  
 Reguli concessere interea in loca propinqua  
 The petty-princes departed mean-time into the places near

thesauris, alius aliò (alius aliò). Sed Hiempsal  
 to the treasures, one one way (another the other-way). But Hiempsal  
 fortè utebatur, in oppido, Thirmidâ, domo ejus,  
 by-chance did use, in the town, Thirmidâ, the house of him,  
 qui fuerat proximus lictor Jugurthæ, semper  
 who had been the nearest (chief) lictor of Jugurtha, always  
 carus que acceptus ei: quem ministrum  
 dear and received (agreeable) to him: which servant  
 oblatum casu, ille onerat promissis, que impellit,  
 presented by chance, he loads with promises, and impels (him),  
 uti eat tanquam visens suam domum: paret  
 that he may go as-if visiting his house: may procure  
 adulterinas claves portarum, nam veræ refere-  
 false keys of the gates, for the true (keys) were car-  
 bantur ad Hiempsalem: cæterum seipsum venturum  
 ried back to Hiempsal: but himself about-to-come  
 cum magnâ manu, ubi res postularet.  
 with a great band, when the thing might require. [But that he

Numida  
 himself would come with a great force, at the proper time.] The Numidian  
 conficit mandata brevi; atque introducit milites  
 finishes (his) commands shortly; and leads-in the soldiers  
 Jugurthæ noctu, uti doctus-erat. Qui postquam  
 of Jugurtha by-night, as he had been instructed. Who after that  
 irrupère in sedes diversi  
 they burst-in into the houses (house) different (here and there) (began)  
 quærere regem, interficere alios dormientis  
 to seek the king, to kill others (some) sleeping,  
 (dormientes), alios occursantis (occursantes);  
 others meeting (them);  
 scrutari abdita loca; effringere clausa: miscere  
 to search the hidden places; to break-open closed (places): to mingle  
 omnia strepitu et tumultu: cum interim  
 all (things), with noise and tumult: when mean-time  
 Hiempsal reperitur occultans se tugurio ancillæ  
 Hiempsal is found concealing himself in the hut of a servant  
 mulieris, quò profugerat initio pavidus et  
 woman, whither he had fled in the beginning fearful and

ignarus loci. Numidæ referunt caput ejus,  
 ignorant of the place. The Numidians carry-back the head of him,  
 uti jussi-erat, ad Jugurtham. Cæterum fama  
 as they had been ordered, to Jugurtha. But the report  
 tanti facinoris divulgatur brevî per omnem Africam :  
 of so-great a crime is divulged shortly through all Africa :  
 metus invadit Atherbalem, que omnis (omnes), qui  
 fear seizes Adherbal, and all, who  
 fuerant sub imperio Micipsæ. Numidæ discedunt  
 had been under the government of Micipsa. The Numidians depart  
 in duas partes : plures sequuntur Atherbalem,  
 (divide) into two factions: the more follow Adherbal,  
 sed meliores bello illum alterum. Igitur  
 but the better in war that other [Jugurtha]. Therefore  
 Jugurtha armat copias quàm maxumas potest :  
 Jugurtha arms forces as-greatest he can [collects  
 adjungit urbis (urbes) partim vi, alias  
 a great force]: unites cities partly by force, others  
 voluntate suo imperio ; parat imperare omni  
 by inclination to his government; prepares to rule all [over all]  
 Numidiæ. Atherbal, tametsi miserat legatos  
 Numidia. Adherbal, although he had sent ambassadors (to)  
 Romam, qui docerent senatum de cæde fratris,  
 Rome, who might inform the senate of the murder of (his) brother,  
 et suis fortunis ; tamen fretus multitudine militum,  
 and his-own fortunes ; yet relying on the multitude of soldiers,  
 parabat contendere armis. Sed ubi res venit ad  
 did prepare to contend with arms. But when the thing came to  
 certamen, victus profugit ex prælio in  
 a contest, being conquered he fled from battle into the [Roman]  
 provinciam, ac contendit dehinc Romam. Tum  
 province, and hastens thence (to) Rome. Then  
 Jugurtha, consiliis patratis, postquam potiebatur  
 Jugurtha, (his) designs being accomplished, after that he did possess  
 omni Numidiâ (abl.), reputans cum animo in otio  
 all Numidia, revolving with (his) mind in leisure  
 suum facinus, timere Romanum populum, neque  
 his crime, (began) to fear the Roman people, neither



habere spem usquam advorsus iram ejus,  
to have hope any-where against the wrath of it (them),

nisi in avaritiâ nobilitatis, et suâ pecuniâ.  
unless in the avarice of the nobility, and in his-own money.

Itaque paucis diebus, mittit legatos Romam cum  
Therefore in a few days, he sends ambassadors (to) Rome with

multo auro que argento, quâs præcipit uti primum  
much gold and silver, to whom he instructs that . first

expleant veteres amicos muneribus, dein anquirant  
they may satisfy (his) old friends with presents, then may acquire

novos: postremò ne-cunctentur parare largiundo  
new: finally they may not-hesitate to procure by bribing

quemcumque possint. Sed ubi legati venere  
whomsoever they may be-able. But when the ambassadors came

Romam, et misere ex præcepto regis,  
(to) Rome, and sent according-to the instruction of the king,

magna munera hospitibus que aliis, auctoritas  
great presents to (his) hosts and to others, the authority

quorum pollebat in senatu eâ tempestate:  
of whom was powerful in the senate at that time:

tanta commutatio incessit ut Jugurtha  
so-great a change seized (them) that Jugurtha might (did)

veniret ex maxumâ invidiâ in gratiam et  
come from the greatest envy (odium) into the interest and

favorem nobilitatis. Pars quorum inducti spe, alii  
favour of the nobility. Part of whom induced by hope, others

præmio, nitebantur ambiundo singulos  
by reward, did endeavour by going-about (canvassing) single (members)

ex senatu, ne-consuleretur gravius  
of the senate, (that) it might not-be-consulted more (too) severely

in eum.  
against him. [That too severe measures might not be adopted against

Igitur, ubi legati satis-confidunt,  
him.] Therefore, when the ambassadors are sufficiently-confident,

senatus datur utrisque constituto die. Tum  
the senate (a hearing) is given to each on an appointed day. Then

accepimus Atherbalem locutum-(esse) hoc modo:  
we have heard Adherbal to have spoken in this manner:

"Conscripti patres! meus pater Micipsa moriens  
 "Conscript fathers! my father Micipsa dying

præcepit mihi, uti existumarem tantummodo procura-  
 instructed to me, that I should think only. the guardian-  
 tionem regni Numidiæ meam; cæterum jus et  
 ship of the kingdom of Numidia mine; but the right and  
 imperium esse penes vos: simul eni-  
 government to be in-the-power-of you: at-the-same-time I should en-  
 terer esse maximo usui Romano populo domi  
 deavour to be for greatest use to the Roman people at-home  
 que militiæ. Ducerem vos in locum  
 and of war (abroad). I should lead (regard) you in the place  
 cognatorum mihi, vos affinium: si  
 of relations to me, you of neighbours [and as neighbours]: if

fecissem ea, me habiturum  
 I might have done (had done) those (things), me about-to-have [that I

exercitum, divitias, munimenta regni  
 would have] an army, riches, fortifications of the kingdom  
 in vestrâ amicitia. Quæ præcepta mei patris  
 in your friendship. Which precepts of my father

cum agitare, Jugurtha, sceleratissimus  
 when I might (did) revolve, Jugurtha, the most-wicked

homo omnium, quos terra sustinet, vestro imperio  
 man of all, whom the earth sustains, your command

contempto, expulit me nepotem Masinissæ, etiam  
 being despised, has expelled me the grandson of Masinissa, even

ab stirpe socium atque amicum Romani  
 from stem (earliest origin) an ally and friend of the Roman

populi, regno que omnibus fortunis. Atque  
 people, from my kingdom and all fortunes. And

ego, conscripti patres, quoniam eram venturus  
 I, conscript fathers, since I was about-to-come

eo miseriarum, vellem me posse  
 to that (pitch) of miseries, should will me to be-able [could have

petere auxilium à vobis potius  
 wished, that I were able] to seek aid from you rather

ob mea, quam ob beneficia  
 on-account-of my-own [services], than on-account-of the kindnesses

meorum majorum; ac maxumè, beneficia  
of my ancestors; and chiefly, [that] kindnesses [favours]

deberi mihi a Romano populo, quibus  
to be due [might be due] to me by the Roman people, which

egerem non: secundum ea, uti  
I might want not [to be requited]: next-to those, that

uterer debitis, si erant desideranda. Sed  
I might use (them as) due, if they were to-be-wanted. But

quoniam probitas ipsa est parum tuta per se,  
since honesty self is little (not) safe by itself,

neque fuit in manu mihi, qualis  
neither was it in hand (possible) to me, (to know) what-sort

Jugurtha foret;

Jugurtha might be [to determine what sort of person Jugurtha  
confugi ad vos, conscripti patres, quibus  
might be]; I have fled to you, conscript fathers, to whom

cogor esse oneri priusquam usui,  
I am compelled to be for a burden before-that for advantage

quod est miserrimum mihi.  
[I have been of any use to you], which is very-wretched to me.

Cæteri reges aut victi bello, recepti-sunt in  
The rest (other) kings either conquered in war, have been received into  
amicitiam à vobis, aut appetiverunt vestram societatem.  
friendship by you, or have sought your alliance

in suis dubiis rebus. Nostra familia instituit  
in their doubtful affairs. Our family instituted

amicitiam cum Romano populo Carthaginiensi bello,  
friendship with the Roman people in the Carthaginian war,

quo tempore fides ejus erat magis petenda  
in which time the faith (honour) of it was more to-be-sought

quam fortuna. Conscripti patres! nolite  
than the fortune [the advantage]. Conscript fathers! be-unwilling

pati me progeniem quorum nepotem Masinissæ  
to suffer me the offspring of whom the grandson of Masinissa

petere auxilium à vobis frustra. Si haberem  
to seek aid from you in-vain. If I might have (had)

nihil causæ ad-impetrandum, præter miserandam  
nothing of cause to-obtain (it), except (my) miserable

fortunam; quòd paulò antè rex potens genere,  
 fortune; that a little before a king powerful in race,

famâ, atque copiis, nunc deformatus ærumnis,  
 in fame, and in resources, now deformed by woes,

inops exspecto alienas opes: tamen  
 destitute I look to foreign (others) resources: yet

erat majestatis Romani populi prohibere  
 it was (the part) of the majesty of the Roman people to prohibit

injuriam: neque pati regnum cujusquam  
 injury: neither to suffer the kingdom of any-one

crescere per scelus. Verùm ejectus-sum  
 to increase by wickedness. But I have been cast-out

iis finibus, quos Romanus populus dedit meis  
 from those boundaries, which the Roman people gave to my

majoribus: unde pater, et meus avus unâ  
 ancestors: whence (my) father, and my grandfather together

vobiscum expulere Syphacem et Carthaginienses.  
 with-you expelled Syphax and the Carthaginians.

Conscripti patres! vestra beneficia erepta-sunt  
 Conscript fathers! your kindnesses have been torn-from

mihi, vos despecti-estis in meâ injuriâ. Eheu  
 to me, ye have been despised in my injury. Alas

miserum me! pater Micipsa, tuâ beneficia  
 wretched me! (whether), father Micipsa, thy favours

evasere hucine, uti is, quem tu fecisti  
 have come hither (to this), that he, whom thou hast made

parem cum tuis liberis, que participem regni,  
 equal with thy-own children, and a partner of the kingdom,

sit potissimùm extinator tuæ stirpis? Ne  
 may be chiefly the destroyer of thy stem (race)? Whether

ergo nostra familia erit nunquam quieta?  
 therefore our family shall be never tranquil?

Ne versabimur semper in sanguine, ferro  
 Whether shall we be engaged always in blood, in iron

fuga? Dum Carthaginienses fuere incolumes,  
 (sword), in flight? Whilst the Carthaginians were safe,

patiebamur omnia sæva jure. Hostis ab  
 we did suffer all cruel (things) by right. An enemy from (our)

latere: vos amici procul:  
 side: [an enemy pressing hard on us]: you friends at-a-distance:  
 omnis spes erat in armis. Postquam illa pestis  
 all hope was in arms. After that plague  
 ejecta-est ex Africâ, læti agitabamus pacem,  
 was-cast-out out-of Africa, joyful we did agitate (enjoy) peace,  
 quippe quîs erat nullus hostis, nisi fortè  
 forsooth to whom there was no enemy, unless by chance  
 quem jussissetis. Autem  
 whom you might have ordered [us to consider as such]. But  
 ecce! Jugurtha ex-improviso, efferens sese intolerandâ  
 lo! Jugurtha suddenly, exalting himself with intolerable  
 audaciâ, scelere, atque superbiâ, meo fratre, atque  
 boldness, wickedness, and pride, my brother, and  
 eodem suo propinquo interfecto, primùm fecit  
 the same his-own relation being killed, first made  
 regnum ejus prædam sui sceleris: post, ubi  
 the kingdom of him the plunder of his wickedness: after, when  
 nequit capere me iisdem dolis, exspectantem  
 he is-unable to take me by the same stratagems, expecting  
 nihil minùs, quàm vim aut bellum, efficit in  
 nothing less, than violence or war, he makes (me) in  
 vestro imperio, sicut videtis, extorrem patriâ,  
 your government, as you see, an exile from (my) country,  
 domo, inopem et coopertum miseriis, ut  
 from home, destitute and covered with miseries, (so) that  
 essem tutiùs ubivis quàm in meo regno. Ego  
 I might be safer any-where than in my kingdom. I  
 existumabam sic, conscripti patres, uti audiveram  
 did think thus, conscript fathers, as I had heard  
 meum patrem prædicantem, eos, qui colerent  
 my father declaring, those, who might cultivate  
 diligenter vestram amicitiam, suscipere multum  
 diligently your friendship, to-undertake much  
 laborem, cæterùm esse maxumè tutos ex omnibus.  
 labour, but to be most safe of all.  
 Quod fuit in nostrâ familiâ,  
 What has been in (in the power of) our family,

præstitit, ut adesset vobis  
 it has performed, that it might be present (was present) to you  
 in omnibus bellis: conscripti patres, est vestra  
 in all wars: conscript fathers, it is in your

manu uti nos simus tuti per otium.  
 hand (power) that we may be safe through leisure (in time of  
 peace). (My) father left us two brothers:

ratus-est Jugurtham fore  
 be supposed [that] Jugurtha to be about-to-be [would be]

conjunctum tertium nobis suis beneficiis. Alter  
 allied (as) a third to us by his favours. Another

eorum necatus (est); ego  
 (one) of them has been killed; [my brother was killed]; I

ipse alter vix effugi impias manus.  
 myself the other scarcely have escaped his impious hands.

Quid agam? aut quò potissimum infelix  
 What shall I do? or whither chiefly unhappy

accedam? Omnia præsidia generis  
 shall I go-to? All the protections of (my) race

extincta-sunt: pater concessit naturæ, uti  
 have been extinguished: (my) father yielded to nature, as

erat necesse; propinquus, quem minumè decuit,  
 was necessary; a relation, whom by-no-means it became,

eripuit vitam fratri per scelus: alia  
 snatched life to (from my) brother by wickedness: another (one)

clades oppressit alium: affines, amicos,  
 calamity oppressed another (one): (my) kinsmen, friends,

meos cæteros propinquos, capti ab Jugurthâ,  
 my other relations, (those) taken by Jugurtha,

pars acti-sunt in crucem pars objecti  
 part have been driven (affixed) to a cross part exposed

bestiis: pauci, quibus anima relictæ-est,  
 to beasts: few, to whom soul (existence) has been left,

clausi in tenebris, exigunt vitam graviolem  
 shut-up in darknesses, spend life more-severe (than)

morte cum mœrore et luctu. Si omnia, quæ  
 death with sorrow and grief. If all (things), which

aut amisi, aut facta-sunt adversa ex necessariis  
 either I have lost, or have been made adverse from necessary

manerent incolumia; tamen si quid  
 (friendly) might remain safe; yet if any (thing)

mali accidisset, ex-improviso,  
 of evil might have happened (had happened) suddenly,

implorarem vos, conscripti patres, quibus decet,  
 I would implore you, conscript fathers, to whom it becomes,

jus et omnis (omnes) injurias esse  
 right and (that) all injuries to be [should be]

curæ, pro magnitudine imperii.  
 for care, [cared for], for (considering) the greatness of (your) empire.

Verò nunc exul patriâ, domo, solus  
 But now an exile from (my) country, from home, alone

atque egens omnium honestarum rerum, quos  
 and needing of all honourable things, whom

accedam, aut quos appellem? ne nationes  
 may I go-to, or whom may I address? whether (those) nations

an reges, omnes qui sunt infesti nostræ familiæ  
 or kings, all who are hostile to our family

ob vestram amicitiam? an licet mihi adire  
 on-account-of your friendship? or is-it-lawful for me to go

quoquam, ubi sint non plurima hostilia  
 any-where, where there may-be not very-many hostile

monumenta meorum majorum? an potest quisquam,  
 monuments of my ancestors? or can any-one,

qui aliquando fuit hostis vobis  
 who sometime [at any time] has been an enemy to you

misereri nostri? Postremò, Masinissa ita  
 to pity of us? [pity us]? Finally, Masinissa so

instituit nos, conscripti patres, ne-coleremus  
 instructed us, [conscrip fathers], (that) we should not-cultivate

quem, ne-acciperemus societates,  
 [the friendship of] any one, (that) we should not-receive alliances,

ne nova foedera, nisi Romani populi:  
 not new leagues, unless (those) of the Roman people:

abundè magna præsidia fore nobis in vestrà  
 abundantly great protections to be about-to-be to us in your

amicitiâ :

friendship : [that your friendship would be an ample protection to us] :

occidendum nobis unâ, si  
to-be-fallen to (by) us [that we must fall] together, iffortuna mutaretur huic imperio. Estis magna et  
fortune should be changed to this empire. You are great andopulenti virtute ac diis volentibus; omnia  
opulent by valour and the gods willing; all (things)sunt secunda et obedientia; quò licet curare  
are prosperous and obedient; wherefore it is-lawful to take-carefaciliùs injurias sociorum. Vereor tantùm  
(redress) more-easily the injuries of allies. I fear onlyillud, ne privata amicitia Jugurthæ, parùm cognita,  
that, lest the private friendship of Jugurtha, little known,agat quos transversos: quos ego audio  
may drive any oblique (astray): whom I hearniti maxumâ ope, ambire, fatigare vos  
to endeavour with greatest might, to go-about, to importune yousingulos, ne-statuatis quid de  
single (individually), (that) you may not-determine any (thing) of (him)absente, causâ incognitâ: me,  
absent, (his) cause being unknown (unheard): [that] me, [I],cui licuerit manere in  
to whom it may have been-lawful [it was permitted] to remain in (my)regno fingere verba, et simulare fugam.  
kingdom to feign words, and to pretend flight. [Made a feignedQuòd utinam videam illum,  
statement and pretended flight]. But O-that I may see him,impio facinore cujus projectus-sum in has  
by the impious crime of whom I have been cast into thesemiserias, simulantem hæc eadem: et  
miseries, pretending these same (things): and (that)aliquando cura humanarum rerum oriatur aut apud  
some-time a cure of human things may arise either withvos aut apud immortalis (immortales) deos; ut ille,  
you or with the immortal gods; that he,qui est nunc ferox atque præclarus suis sceleribus,  
who is now fierce and conspicuous by [his] crimes,



excruciat<sup>us</sup> omnib<sup>us</sup> malis, reddet<sup>ur</sup> gravis <sup>(graves)</sup> poenas  
tortured by all evils, will return heavy penalties

impietatis in nostrum parentem, necis mei fratris,  
of impiety unto our parent, of [for] the murder of my brother,

que mearum miseriarum. Jam, jam, frater carissime  
and of [for] my miseries. Now, now, brother most-dear

meo animo, quamquam vita erepta-est tibi,  
to my mind, although life has been torn to (from) thee,

immature, et unde minime-decui<sup>t</sup>;  
immature [while quite young], and whence (by whom) it-least-became;

tamen puto tuum casum magis lætandum quàm  
yet I think thy lot more to-be-rejoiced-at than

dolendum. Enim amisisti non simul cum animâ  
to-be-grieved-at. For thou hast lost not together with life

regnum, sed fugam, exilium, egestatem et omnis  
a kingdom, but flight, exile, want and 'all

(omnes) has ærumnas, quæ premunt me: At ego  
these woes, which oppress me: But I

infelix, præcipitatus in tanta mala, pulsus ex  
unhappy, precipitated into so-great evils, driven out-of (my)

patrio regno, præbeo spectaculum humanarum rerum;  
native kingdom, afford a spectacle of human things;

incertus quid agam, ne ipse egens  
uncertain what I may do, whether myself wanting (destitute)

auxilii, persequar tuas injurias, an potestas  
of aid, shall prosecute thy wrongs, or (whether I) the power

cujus vitæ que necis pendet ex alienis opibus,  
of whose life and death depends of (on) foreign (others') resources

consulam regno.  
[depends on the aid of others], may consult (provide) for the kingdom.

Utinam! emori  
[May provide for the welfare of the kingdom.] O-that! to die

esset honestus exitus meis fortunis, ne-viderer  
might be an honourable issue to my fortunes, (that) I might not-seem

vivere contemptus, si defessus malis, concessissem  
to live despised, if wearied by evils, I might have yielded

injuriæ. Nunc quoniam neque lubet  
(had yielded) to injury. Now since neither it pleases (me)

vivere, neque licet mori sine dedecore, conscripti  
to live, nor is it-lawful to die without disgrace, conscript  
patres, per vos, per liberos atque vestros parentes  
fathers, by you, by (your) children and your parents,  
per majestatem Romani populi, subvenite mihi  
by the majesty of the Roman people, aid to me [me]  
misero; ite obviam injuriæ; nolite pati  
wretched; go toward (oppose) to injury; be-unwilling to suffer  
regnum Numidiæ, quod est vestrum, tabescere per  
the kingdom of Numidia, which is your-own, to waste-away by  
scelus et sanguinem nostræ familiæ.”  
wickedness and the blood of our family.”

Postquam rex fecit finem loquendi, legati  
After-that the king made an end of speaking; the ambassadors  
Jugurthæ, freti magis largitione quàm causâ,  
of Jugurtha, relying more on bribery than (their) cause,

respondent paucis: Hiempsalem  
answer in few (words): Hiempsal (to have been)

interfectum ab Numidis, ob suam sævitiam;  
killed by the Numidians, on-account-of his cruelty;

Atherbalem inferentem bellum ultro queri  
[that] Adherbal bringing-on war spontaneously to complain

postquam superatus-sit  
[complained] after that he may have been conquered (was conquered)

quòd nequisset facere injuriam:  
because he might have been unable (had been unable) to do injury:

Jugurtham petere ab senatu  
[that] Jugurtha to seek [sought] from the senate (that)

ne-putaret se alium ac cognitus-esset  
it might not-think himself other than he might have been known

Numantiæ, neu poneret verba  
(had been known) at Numantia, nor might place the words

inimici ante sua facta. Deinde utrique egrediuntur  
of an enemy before his deeds. Afterwards both go-out

curiâ: senatus statim consulitur: fautores  
from the senate-house: the senate immediately is consulted: the favourers

legatorum, præterea magna pars depravata gratiâ,  
of the ambassadors, besides a great part corrupted by favour

nitebantur contemnere dicta Atherbalis,  
 (interest), did endeavour to despise the sayings of Adherbal,  
 extollere virtutem Jugurthæ laudibus, gratiâ, voce,  
 to extol the virtue of Jugurtha by praises, by favour, by voice,  
 denique omnibus modis pro alieno scelere et  
 finally by all means for foreign (another's) wickedness and  
 flagitio,  
 villany [they exerted themselves to defend the wickedness and villany

quasi pro suâ gloriâ. At contra  
 of another], as-if for their-own glory. But on-the-other-hand  
 pauci, quibus bonum et æquum erat carius  
 a few, to whom good and just was dearer (than)  
 divitiis, censebant subveniendum Atherbali,  
 riches, did think to-be-relieved to Adherbal (Adherbal

et mortem Hiempsalis severe  
 should be relieved) and the death of Hiempsal severely  
 vindicandam. Sed ex omnibus maxumè Æmilius  
 to-be-avenged. But out-of all chiefly Æmilius

Scaurus, nobilis homo, impiger, factiosus, avidus  
 Scaurus, a noble man, active, factious, greedy  
 potentiæ, honoris, divitiarum, cæterum callidè  
 of power, of honour, of riches, but cunningly  
 occultans sua vitia. Postquam is videt famosam  
 concealing his vices. After that he sees the infamous

que impudentem largitionem regis, veritus  
 and shameless bribery of the king, having feared

quod solet in tali re, ne polluta licentia  
 what is-usual in such a thing, lest the polluted licentiousness

accenderet invidiam, continuit  
 might inflame envy [might excite odium], he restrained (his)

animum à consuetâ lubricine. Tamen illa pars,  
 mind from [his] wonted passion. However that part

quæ anteferebant pretium aut gratiam vero,  
 [party], which did prefer reward or favour to truth,

vicit in senatu. Decretum -fit, uti decem  
 conquered in the senate. A decree is made, that ten

legati dividerent regnum quod Micipsa obtinuerat,  
 ambassadors should divide the kingdom, which Micipsa had obtained,

inter Jugurtham et Atherbalem. Cujus legationis,  
between Jugurtha and Adherbal. Of which embassy,

Lucius Opimius, clarus homo, et tum potens in  
Lucius Opimius, an illustrious man, and then powerful in

senatu, fuit princeps; quia consul, Caio Graccho  
the senate, was chief; because (as) consul, Caius Gracchus

et Marco Fulvio interfectis, exercuerat acerrumè  
and Marcus Fulvius being killed, he had exercised very-sharply

vindictam nobilitatis in plebem. Jugurtha,  
the revenge of the nobility against the common-people. Jugurtha,

tametsi habuerat eum in amicis Romæ, tamen  
although he had had him among friends at Rome, yet

recepit curatissumè; perfecit dando  
received (him) most-attentively; he [Jugurtha] accomplished by giving

et pollicendo multa, uti anteferet  
and by promising many (things), that he might prefer [that Opimius

commodum regis famæ, fide (fidei),  
should prefer] the convenience of the king to fame, to faith (honour),

postremò omnibus suis rebus. Aggressus reliquos  
lastly to all his-own things. Having attacked the remaining

legatos eâdem viâ, capit plerosque:  
ambassadors [in the same manner], he takes most: [he gains most

fides fuit carior paucis, quàm pecunia.  
of them]: faith (honour) was dearer to few, than money.

In divisione, pars Numidiæ, quæ attingit Mauritaniam,  
In the division, the part of Numidia, which touches Mauritania,

opulentior agro que viris, traditur Jugurthæ.  
more-opulent in land and in men, is delivered to Jugurtha.

Atherbal possedit illam alteram potiore specie  
Adherbal possessed that other (part) better in appearance

quàm usu, quæ erat portuosior, et magis exornata  
than in use, which was superior-in-harbours, and more furnished

ædificiis. Res videtur postulare  
with buildings. The thing (subject) seems to require (me)

exponere situm Africæ paucis, et attingere  
to explain the situation of Africa in few (words), and to touch-on

eas gentis (gentes) quibuscum bellum aut amicitia  
those nations with which war or friendship

fuit vobis. Sed loca, et nationes, item  
 had been to us. But the places, and nations, also  
 solitudines, quæ frequentata-sunt minùs ob  
 deserts, which have been frequented less on-account-of  
 calorem aut asperitatem, narraverim haud facîle  
 heat or roughness, I may have related not easily

compertum, de iis;  
 (as) discovered, of those; [I cannot easily, or with any certainty,  
 absolvam  
 relate what may have been discovered respecting them]; I will despatch  
 cætera quàm-paucissumis.  
 the rest in the fewest possible (words).

In divisione orbis terræ, plerique posuere  
 In the division of the globe of the earth, most have placed  
 Africam in tertiâ parte: pauci Asiam et  
 Africa in the third part: a few (say) Asia and  
 Europam tantummodo esse, sed Africam  
 Europe only to be, but Africa (to be contained)  
 in Europâ. Ea habet finis (fines) ab occidente,  
 in Europe. It has [for] boundaries from (on) the west,  
 fretum nostri maris et oceani: ab ortu  
 the strait of our sea and of the ocean [Gibraltar]: from the rising

solis declivem latitudinem,  
 of the sun (on the east) a sloping latitude, [extent in breadth],  
 quem locum incolæ appellant Catabathmon. Mare  
 which place the inhabitants call the Catabathmus. The sea

sævum, importuosum: ager fertilis frugum,  
 (is) rough, harbourless: the land fertile of fruits  
 bonus pecori, infœcundus arbori: penuria aquarum  
 good for cattle, unfruitful for tree: scarcity of waters

cœlo que terrâ:  
 from heaven and from earth: [there is a scarcity of rain and of rivers]:

genus hominum salubri corpore, velox,  
 the race of men with (of) wholesome body, swift,

patiens laborum: senectus dissolvit plerosque,  
 enduring of labours: old-age destroys most,

nisi qui interiire ferro, aut à bestiis:  
 unless (those) who have perished by iron (sword), or by beasts:

nam morbus haud sæpe superat quemquam. Ad  
for disease not often overcomes any-one. To

hoc plurima animalia malefici generis. Sed  
this (besides) very-many animals of a destructive kind. But

dicam quàm-paucissimis, qui mortales habuerint  
I will tell in the-fewest-possible (words), what mortals may have had

Africam initio, que qui postea  
(inhabited) Africa in the beginning, and who afterwards

accesserint, aut quo modo per-  
may have approached (were added), or in what manner they may have

mixti-sint inter se, quamquam est diversum  
been intermingled among themselves, although it is different

ab eâ famâ, quæ obtinet plerosque,  
from that report [account], which possesses most [that

tamen, ut interpretatum-est nobis ex  
generally prevails], however, as it has been interpreted to us out-of

Punicis libris, qui dicebantur regis  
the Punic books, which were said (to be those) of king

Hiempsalis; que uti cultores ejus terræ  
Hiempsal; and as the tillers [inhabitants] of that land

putant rem habere sese. Cæterum fides  
think the thing to have itself [believe]. But the faith

ejus rei erit penès auctores.  
(credit) of that thing shall be in-the-power-of the authors. [But the

Gætuli  
truth of such narrations must rest with the authors thereof.] The Getulians

et Libyes, asperi que inculti, quibus et ferina  
and the Libyans, rough and uncultivated, to whom and (both) wild

caro et pabulum humi erat cibus, uti pecoribus,  
flesh and fodder of the ground was food, as to cattle,

habuere Africam initio. Hi regebantur  
had (inhabited) Africa in the beginning. These were ruled

neque moribus, neque lege, aut imperio cujusquam:  
neither by morals, neither by law, or command of any-one:

vagi, palantes, habebat sedes, quas  
wandering, straying, they did have the seats [the places of rest], which

nox coegerat. Sed postquam Hercules  
night had compelled (them to have). But after-that Hercules

interiit in Hispaniâ, sicut Afri putant, exercitus  
 perished in Spain, as the Africans think, the army  
 ejus compositus ex variis gentibus, duce  
 of him composed out-of various nations, (their) leader  
 amisso, ac multis passim petentibus imperium  
 being lost, and many every-where seeking command  
 quisque sibi, dilabitur brevî.  
 each for himself, glides-away shortly. [The army is soon dispersed.]

Ex eo numero Medi, Persæ, et Armenii  
 Out-of that number the Medes, the Persians, and the Armenians  
 transvecti navibus in Africam, occupavere locos  
 transported in ships into Africa, occupied the places  
 proximos nostro mari. Sed Persæ  
 nearest to our sea [the Mediterranean]. But the Persians

magis intra oceanum :

more within the ocean : [but the Persians settled near to the Atlantic

ocean]: que hi habuere alveos navium inversos pro  
 ocean]: and these had the hulls of ships inverted for

tuguriis: quia neque materia erat in agris,  
 huts: because neither material was in the fields,

neque copia emundi aut mutandi ab  
 neither plenty (opportunity) of buying or of changing from

Hispanis. Magnum mare et ignara lingua  
 the Spaniards. A great sea and an unknown tongue

prohibebant commercia. Hi paulatim miscuere  
 did prohibit commerces. These by-degrees mixed

Gætulos secum per connubia; et ipsi appellavere  
 the Getulians with-them by marriages; and they called

semet Numidas, quia sæpe tentantes agros  
 themselves Numidians, because often trying the fields

petiverant alia, deinde alia loca. Cæterum  
 they had sought other, afterwards other (different) places. But

adhuc ædificia agrestium Numidarum, quæ illi  
 as-yet the edifices of the rustic Numidians, which they

vocant Mapalia, sunt oblonga, tecta incurvis  
 call Mapalia, are oblong, covered with curved

lateribus, quasi carinæ navium. Autem Libyes  
 sides, as-if the keels of ships. But the Libyans

accessere Medis et Armeniis.  
 acceded (added themselves to) to the Medes and to the Armenians.

Nam hi agitabant propius Africum mare;  
 For these did agitate (live) nearer the African sea;

(Gætuli magis sub sole; haud procul ab  
 (the Getulians more under the sun; not far from

ardoribus) que hi habuere oppida maturè.  
 the heats) and these (the Libyans) had towns early.

Nam divisi freto ab Hispaniâ, instituerant  
 For divided by a strait from Spain, they had resolved

mutare res inter se. Libyes corrumpere  
 to exchange things among themselves. The Libyans corrupted

nomen eorum paulatim, appellantes, barbarâ  
 the name of them by-degrees, calling (them), in barbarous

linguâ, Mauros, pro Medis. Sed res  
 tongue, Moors, instead-of Medes. But the thing (state)

Persarum adolevit brevî: ac postea Numidæ  
 of the Persians increased shortly: and afterwards the Numidians

nomine, digressi à parentibus propter  
 by name, having departed from (their) parents on-account-of (their)

multitudinem, possedere ea loca, quæ proxima  
 multitude, possessed those places, which nearest

Carthaginem appellatur Numidia. Deinde, utrique  
 Carthage is called Numidia. Afterwards, each

freti alteris, coegere  
 [the parent state, and colony] relying on the others, compelled (their)

finitimos armis aut metu sub suum imperium;  
 neighbours by arms or by fear under their-own command;

addidere nomen que gloriam sibi: magis hi  
 they added name and glory to themselves: rather these

qui processerant ad nostrum mare: quia  
 [the colony] who had proceeded to our sea: because

Libyes minùs bellicosi quàm Gætuli: denique,  
 the Libyans (are) less warlike than the Getulians: finally,

pleraque inferior pars Africæ possessa-est ab  
 most-of the lower part of Africa was-possessed by

Numidis: omnes victi concessere in gentem  
 the Numidians: all the conquered yielded into the nation



que nomen imperantium.  
and name of (those) commanding. [Were incorporated among

Postea Phœnices, alii gratiâ  
their conquerors.] Afterwards the Phenicians, others (some) for the sake

multitudinis minuendæ domi, pars plebe  
of the multitude to-be-lessened at home, part the commonalty

solicitâtâ, cupidine imperii, et aliis  
having been solicited, from a desire of command, and others (being)

avidis novarum rerum, condidere Hipponem,  
desirous of new things, built Hippo,

Adrimetum, Leptim, que alias urbis (urbes) in  
Adrimetum, Leptis, and other cities on

maritimâ orâ: que eæ auctæ multum brevî,  
the maritime coast: and these being increased much shortly,

pars fuere præsidio que aliæ decori suis  
part were for a protection and others for an ornament to their

originibus. Nam puto melius silere de  
origins. For I think (it) better to be-silent concerning

Carthagine, quàm dicere parum, quoniam tempus  
Carthage, than to say little, since the time

monet properare aliò. Igitur Cyræne est prima,  
advises to hasten elsewhere. Therefore Cyræne is the first

colonia Theræon, secundo mari, ad  
(city), a colony of the Theræi, in favourable (along the) sea, at

Catabathmon, qui locus dividit Ægyptum ab  
(near) the Catabathmus, which place divides Egypt from

Africâ, ac deinceps duæ Syrtes, que Leptis  
Africa, and afterwards the two Syrtes (quicksands), and Leptis

inter eas: deinde aræ Philenon, quem locum  
between them: then [the] altars of the Phileni, which place

versus Ægyptum Carthaginenses habuere finem  
toward Egypt the Carthaginians had (as) the boundary

imperii: post, aliæ Punicæ urbes. Numidæ  
of (their) government: after, other Punic cities. The Numidians

tenent cætera loca usque ad Mauritaniam. Mauri  
hold the other places until to Mauritania. The Moors

sunt proxumè Hispaniam. Accepimus  
are nearest (to) Spain. We have received (heard).

Gætulos agitare super Numidiam, partim in  
 the Getulians to agitate (live) above Numidia, partly in  
 tuguriis, alios vagos incultius. Æthiopas  
 huts, others wandering more-uncultivatedly. The Ethiopians  
 esse post eos. Dein loca exusta ardoribus solis.  
 to be after them. Then places parched by the heats of the sun.

Igitur Jugurthino bello, Romanus populus  
 Therefore in the Jugurthine war, the Roman people  
 administrabat per magistratus pleraque oppida ex  
 did administer by magistrates most towns of

Punicis, et finis (fines) Carthaginiensium, quos  
 the Carthaginians, and the boundaries of the Carthaginians, which  
 habuerant novissumè: magna pars Gætulorum,  
 they had had very-newly (lately): a great part of the Getulians,  
 et Numidæ usque ad flumen Mulucham, erant  
 and the Numidians as-far-as to the river Mulucha, were

sub Jugurthâ: Rex Bocchus, ignarus Romani  
 under Jugurtha: King Bocchus, ignorant of the Roman  
 populi cætera præter nomen,  
 people (as to) other (things) besides the name, [ignorant of the

que item cognitus  
 Roman people in every thing except name], and also known

antea nobis neque bello neque pace, imperitabat  
 before to us neither in war nor in peace, did command

omnibus Mauris: satis dictum de Africâ  
 to all the Moors: enough has been said of Africa

et incolis ejus ad necessitudinem  
 and the inhabitants of it to (for) the necessity

rei.  
 the thing (subject).

Postquam, regno diviso, legati  
 After that, the kingdom having been divided, the ambassadors  
 decessere Africâ, et Jugurtha videt sese adeptum-(esse)  
 departed from Africa, and Jugurtha sees himself to have obtained

præmia sceleris contra timorem animi;  
 the rewards of wickedness contrary-to the fear of (his) mind;

ratus quod acceperat ex amicis apud  
 having supposed what he had received (heard) from (his) friends at

Numantiam, certum, omnia esse  
 Numantia, certain [that for a certainty], all (things) to be  
 venalia Romæ, et simul accensus  
 venal at Rome, and at-the-same-time having been inflamed  
 pollicitationibus illorum, quos expleverat paulò antè  
 by the promises of those, whom he had satisfied a little before  
 muneribus, intendit animum in regnum  
 with gifts, directs (his) mind into the kingdom  
 Atherbalis. Ipse acer, bellicosus: at is quem  
 of Adherbal. Himself vigorous, warlike: but he whom  
 petebat, quietus, imbellis, placidus ingenio,  
 he did seek, (was) quiet, unwarlike, placid in disposition,  
 opportunus injuriæ, metuens magis quàm metuendus.  
 suitable for injury, fearing rather than to-be-feared.  
 Igitur invadit finis (fines) ejus de-improviso cum  
 Therefore he invades the boundaries of him suddenly with  
 magnâ manu: capit multos mortalis (mortales), cum  
 a great band: takes many mortals, with  
 pecore atque aliâ prædiâ: incendit ædificia;  
 cattle and with other plunder: burns the edifices;  
 accedit pleraque loca hostiliter cum equitatu.  
 approaches most places hostilely with cavalry.  
 Deinde convertit cum omni multitudine in suum  
 Then he turns with all the multitude into his-own  
 regnum, existumans Atherbalem permotum dolore  
 kingdom, thinking Adherbal moved by grief  
 vindicaturum suas injurias  
 (resentment) about-to-avenge [would revenge] his wrongs  
 manu, que eam rem fore causam  
 by hand (action), and that thing to-be-about-to-be [would be] the cause  
 belli. At ille misit legatos ad Jugurtham,  
 of war. But he sent ambassadors to Jugurtha,  
 questum de injuriis, quòd neque existumabat se  
 to complain of the injuries, because neither did he think himself  
 parem armis, et fretus-erat amicitia Romani populi  
 equal in arms, and had relied on the friendship of the Roman people  
 magis quàm Numidis: qui tametsi retulerant  
 rather than on the Numidians: who although they had brought-back

contumeliosa dicta, tamen decrevit pati omnia  
contumelious sayings, yet he resolved to suffer all (things)

priusquàm sumere bellum: quia  
sooner-than to take war [to make war]: because (war)

tentatum antea cesserat secùs. Cupido  
tried before had resulted otherwise (untowardly). The desire

Jugurthæ neque minuebatur magis eò:  
of Jugurtha neither was lessened more on-this-account:

quippe qui invaserat jam totum regnum ejus  
inasmuch-as (one) who had invaded already the whole kingdom of him

animo. Itaque cœpit gerere bellum non ut antea,  
in mind. Therefore he began to carry-on war not as before,

cum prædatoriâ manu, sed magno exercitu comparato,  
with a plundering band, but with a great army being provided,

et apertè petere imperium totius Numidiæ.  
and openly to seek the command of the whole of Numidia.

Cæterum, quâ pergebat, vastare  
But, wheresoever he did proceed (he began), to lay-waste

urbis (urbes), agros, agere prædas,  
cities, lands, to drive-away plunders [to drive off the cattle

augere animum suis, terrorem  
and flocks], to increase mind (spirit) to his-own (men), terror

hostibus.

to the enemies. [To increase the courage of his own men, and strike

Atherbal ubi intelligit processum-  
terror to his enemies.] Adherbal when he understands to have pro-

(esse) eò, uti regnum aut esset  
ceeded [that it had come] to-this, that (his) kingdom either should be

relinquendum, aut retinendum armis, necessario  
to-be-left, or to-be-retained by arms, necessarily

parat copias, et procedit obvius Jugurthæ.  
prepares forces, and proceeds opposite (against) to Jugurtha.

Interim exercitus utriusque consedit prope oppidum  
Meantime the army of each encamped near the town.

Cirtam, haud longè à mari; et prælium non  
Cirta, not far from the sea; and the battle (was) not

inceptum, quia erat extremum diei: sed ubi  
begun, because it was the extreme of the day: but when

plerumque noctis processit, lumine etiam tum  
 most of the night advanced, the light even then (being)

obsuro,

obscure [the night having nearly passed, and the day began to dawn],

Jugurthini milites, signo dato, invadunt castra  
 the Jugurthine soldiers, the signal being given, invade the camps

hostium; fugant que fundunt partim  
 of the enemies; put-to-flight and pour (rout) partly (some)

semisomnos, alios sumentes arma: Atherbal profugit  
 half-asleep, others taking arms: Adherbal escapes

cum paucis equitibus Cirtam: et ni fuisset  
 with a few horsemen (to) Cirta: and unless there might have been

multitudo togatorum, quæ prohibuit  
 (had been) a multitude of toga-wearers (Romans), which prohibited

Numidas insequentes mœnibus, bellum inter duos  
 the Numidians pursuing from the walls, the war between the two

reges foret coeptum et patratum uno die. Igitur  
 kings might be begun and finished in one day. Therefore

Jugurtha circumsegit oppidum, aggreditur expugnare  
 Jugurtha beset the town, attempts to storm (it)

vineis que turribus, et machinis omnium generum:  
 with mantlets and towers, and machines of all kinds:

maxumè festinans antecapere tempus  
 chiefly hastening to anticipate the time (of return)

legatorum, quos audiverat missos ab  
 of the ambassadors, whom he had heard (to have been) sent by

Atherbale Romam ante prælium factum.  
 Adherbal (to) Rome before the battle being done (fought).

Sed postquam senatus accepit de bello eorum,  
 But after that the senate received (heard) of the war of them,

tres adolescentes legantur in Africam, qui adeant  
 three young-men are deputed into Africa, who may go-to

ambos reges; nuncient verbis senatûs  
 both the kings; may announce (to them) in the words of the senate

que Romani populi, velle et censere eos discedere  
 and of the Roman people, to will and to think them to depart

ab armis:

from arms: [that it was their wish and determination, that they should

ita esse dignum que se que  
desist from war]: so to be worthy and (both) themselves and  
illis.

them. [This was due both to their dignity and that of the kings.]

Legati veniunt maturantes in Africam; magis  
The ambassadors come hastening into Africa; the more

eò quòd audiebatur Romæ, dum parant  
on-this-account, because it was heard at Rome, whilst they prepare

proficisci, de prælio facto, et oppugnatione  
to set-out, of the battle having been done (fought), and the siege

Cirtæ. Sed is rumor erat clemens. Oratione  
of Cirta. But that report was mild. The speech

quorum acceptâ, Jugurtha respondit, neque  
of whom being received, Jugurtha answered, neither

quidquam esse majus neque carius sibi  
any (thing) to be greater nor dearer to him (than)

auctoritate senatûs: se ita enisum-(esse) ab  
the authority of the senate: himself so to have endeavoured from

adolescentiâ ut probaretur ab quoque optumo:  
youth that he might be approved by every best (man):

placuisse Publio Scipioni,  
to have pleased [that he had made himself acceptable] to Publius Scipio,

summo viro, virtute, non malitiâ: adoptatum-esse  
the highest man, by virtue, not by malice: to have been adopted

in regnum à Micipsâ ob easdem artis (artes),  
into the kingdom by Micipsa for the same arts (endowments),

non penuriâ liberorum: cæterum quò fe-  
not from want of children: but by how-much he might have

cisset plura bene atque strenuè, eò  
done (had done) more (things) well and vigorously, by that

animum minùs tolerare  
(therefore) (his) mind less to endure [would less endure]

injuriam: Atherbalem insidiatum-(esse) suæ vitæ  
injury: Adherbal to have plotted for his life

dolis: quod ubi comperisset, isse obviàm  
by deceits: which when he might have found, to have gone toward

sceleri:  
(he opposed) to wickedness: [he discovered and opposed this wickedness]:

Romanum populum facturum neque rectè, neque  
the Roman people (to be) about-to-do neither rightly, neither

pro bono, si prohibuerit sese ab jure  
for [their] good, if it shall have prohibited him from the right

gentium : postremo, missurum  
of nations : lastly, (to be) about-to-send [that he was about to

brevi legatos Romam de omnibus rebus.  
send] shortly ambassadors (to) Rome concerning all things.

Ita utrique digrediuntur. Copia Atherbalis  
Thus both depart. An opportunity of Adherbal

appellandi fuit non. Jugurtha, ubi  
to-be-addressed (of addressing Adherbal) was not. Jugurtha, when

ratus-est eos decessisse Africâ, neque posset  
he supposed them to have departed from Africa, neither he might be-able

expugnare Cirtam armis propter  
to storm [neither could he storm] Cirta with arms on-account-of

naturam loci, circumdat mœnia vallo atque  
the nature of the place, he surrounds the walls with a rampart and

fossâ : extruit turris (turres), que firmat eas  
trench : raises towers, and strengthens them

præsidiiis : præterea tentare dies que noctes  
with guards : besides (he began) to try days and nights

aut per vim aut dolis : ostentare  
[to take the place] either by violence or stratagems : to display

modò præmia, modo formidinem defensoribus mœnium,  
now rewards, now terror to the defenders of the walls,

erigere suos ad virtutem hortando, prorsus  
to excite his own (men) to valour by encouraging, altogether

intentus parare cuncta. Atherbal ubi intelligit  
intent to prepare all (things). Adherbal when he understands

omnis (omnes) suas fortunas sitas in extremo,  
all his fortunes situate in extreme (danger),

hostem infestum, nullam spem auxilii, bellum non  
the enemy hostile, no hope of assistance, the war not

posse trahi penuriâ necessariarum rerum ;  
to be able to be protracted from want of necessary things ; [he]

delegit duos maxumè impigros ex iis, qui profugerant  
chose two most active out-of those, who had fled

unâ Cirtam, confirmat eos pollicendo  
 together (to) Cirta, strengthens (prevails on) them by promising  
 multa, ac miserando suum casum, uti  
 many (things), and by bewailing his-own misfortune, that  
 pergerent noctu per munitiones hostium  
 they would proceed by night through the fortifications of the enemies  
 ad proximum mare, dein Romam. Numidæ  
 to the next sea, then (to) Rome. The Numidians  
 efficiunt jussa paucis diebus; literæ  
 execute the commands in a few days; letters (a letter)  
 Atherbalis recitatæ in senatu, sententia quarum  
 of Adherbal (was) read-aloud in the senate, the purport of which  
 fuit hæc:  
 was this:

"Conscripti patres! mitto sæpè ad vos oratum  
 "Conscript fathers! I send often to you to entreat  
 non meâ culpâ, sed vis Jugurthæ subigit;  
 not by my-own fault, but the violence of Jugurtha forces (me);  
 quem tanta lubido extinguendi me invasit, uti  
 whom so-great a desire of destroying me has seized, that  
 neque habeat vos, neque immortalis (im-  
 neither he may have (he has) you, nor the immortal  
 mortales) deos in animo; malit  
 gods in (his) mind; he may have-rather (he prefers)  
 meum sanguinem quàm omnia Itaque socius  
 my blood than all (things). Therefore an ally  
 et amicus Romani populi; teneor obsessus armis  
 and friend of the Roman people, I am held besieged with arms  
 jam quintum mensem: neque beneficia mei patris  
 now the fifth month: neither the favours of my father  
 Micipsæ, neque vestra decreta auxiliantur mihi:  
 Micipsa, nor your decrees aid to me:  
 sum incertus urgear acriùs ferro,  
 I am uncertain (whether) I may be oppressed more-fiercely by iron  
 an fame. Mea fortuna dehortatur me  
 (sword), or by hunger. My fortune dissuades me  
 scribere plura de Jugurthâ: etiam expertus-sum  
 to write more concerning Jugurtha: also I have experienced



antea, parùm fidei                    esse miseris. Nisi tamen  
before,    little of faith (credit) to be to the wretched. Unless however

intelligo illum petere                    suprà quàm ego sum,  
I understand him    to seek (something) above    than    I    am,

neque sperare vestram  
[something higher than myself],    neither    to hope-for            your

amicitiàm et meum regnum simul. Occultum-est  
friendship and my    kingdom together. It has been concealed

nemini utrum existumet gravius. Nam occidit  
to no-one    which    he may think more-serious. For he killed

meum fratrem Hiempsalem initio;            dein  
my    brother    Hiempsal    in the beginning; afterwards

expulit me                    patrio regno. Quæ sanè  
he expelled me from (my) paternal kingdom. What indeed

fuerint                    nostræ injuriæ, nihil ad vos.  
may have been (have been) our    wrongs, (is) nothing to you.

Verùm nunc tenet vestrum regnum armis: tenet  
But            now he possesses your    kingdom by arms: he holds

clausum,                    atque obsidet me, quem vos posuistis  
shut (confined), and besieges me, whom you have placed

imperatorem Numidis: mea pericula declarant  
(as) a ruler to the Numidians: my dangers declare

quanti                    fecerit                    verba lega-  
of how-much (value) he may have made (has made) the words of the am-

torum. Quid est reliquum, quo possit moveri,  
bassadors. What is remaining, by which he may be-able to be moved,

nisi vestra vis? Nam ego quidem vellem et  
unless your force? For I            indeed should wish and (both)

hæc,                    quæ scribo, et illa                    quæ antea  
these (words), which I write, and those (things) which before .

questus-sum in senatu, forent vana  
I have complained in the senate, might be (were) vain (groundless)

potiùsquàm mea miseria faceret fidem                    verbis.  
rather-than    my misery should make faith (credit) to (my) words.

Sed quoniam natus-sum eò, ut essem ostentui  
But since I have been born for-this, that I might be for a spectacle

scelerum Jugurthæ, jam non-deprecor mortem  
of the wickednesses of Jugurtha, now I do not-deprecate death

neque ærumnas, tantummodo imperium inimici, et  
 nor miseries, but-only the command of an enemy, and  
 cruciatus corporis. Consulite regno  
 tortures of body. Consult (provide) for the kingdom  
 Numidiæ quod est vestrum uti libet: eripite  
 of Numidia which is your-own as it pleases (you): rescue  
 me ex impiis manibus, per majestatem  
 me from impious hands, by (for the sake of) the majesty  
 imperii, per fidem amicitiae; si ulla memoria  
 of the empire, by the faith of friendship; if any recollection  
 mei avi Masinissæ remanet apud vos.”  
 of my grand-sire Masinissa remains among you.”

His literis recitatis, fuere  
 These letters (this letter) having been read-aloud, there were (some)  
 qui censerent exercitum mittendum  
 who might think (thought) an army, to-be-sent (should be sent)  
 in Africam, et subveniendum Atherbali  
 into Africa, and to-be-relieved to Adherbal [and Atherbal re-  
 lieved] quamprimum, uti interim  
 as-soon-as-possible, that [in the mean time]  
 consuleretur de Jugurthâ, quoniam  
 it should be deliberated concerning Jugurtha, since  
 non-paruisset legatis. Sed  
 he might not have obeyed (had not obeyed) to the ambassadors. But  
 enisum summâ ope ab illis isdem  
 (it was) endeavoured with the utmost might by those same  
 fautoribus regis, tale decretum ne-fieret.  
 favourers of the king, (that) such a decree might not-be-made.  
 Ita publicum bonum, ut solet plerisque negotiis,  
 Thus the public good, as is usual in most affairs, (was)  
 devictum privatâ gratiâ. Tamen nobiles majores  
 overcome by private interest. However noble (men) greater  
 natu usi amplis honoribus,  
 by birth (elder) having used ample honours, [having enjoyed the  
 legantur in Africam: in  
 highest honours of the state], are deputed into Africa: among  
 quâs fuit Marcus Scaurus, de quo memoravimus  
 whom was Marcus Scaurus, of whom we have recorded

suprà, consularis et tum princeps senati. Hi,  
 above, a consular (man) and then chief of the senate. These,  
 quòd res erat in invidiâ et simul  
 because the thing was in envy (odium), and at-the-same-time

obsecrati à Numidis, ascendere  
 having been besought by the Numidians, embarked [on board]

navim triduo, dein brevì adpulsi Uticam,  
 a ship in-three-days, then shortly being carried (to) Utica,

mittunt literas ad Jugurtham, accedat  
 send letters (a letter) to Jugurtha, (that) he may repair

quam-ocissumè ad provinciam; se  
 (to repair) as quickly as possible to the province; themselves

missos (esse) ad eum ab senatu. Ille, ubi  
 to have been sent to him by the senate. He, when

accepit, claros homines, auctoritatem  
 he received (intelligence), [that] illustrious men, the authority

quorum audiverat pollere Romæ, venisse  
 of whom he had heard to prevail at Rome, to have come [had come]

contra suum inceptum, primò commotus metu,  
 against his undertaking, at-first moved by fear,

atque lubidine, agitabatur divorsus.  
 and by passion, was agitated different (in different ways).

Timebat iram senatûs, ni paruisset  
 He did fear the anger of the senate, unless he might have obeyed

legatis: porro animus, cæcus  
 (had obeyed) to the ambassadors: moreover (his) mind, blind

cupidine, rapiebat ad inceptum scelus.  
 with desire, did hurry (him) to the undertaken wickedness.

Tamen pravum consilium vicit in avido  
 However the depraved design conquered in (his) covetous

ingenio. Igitur, exercitu circumdato,  
 (ambitious) disposition. Therefore, the army having been placed-around,

nititur summâ vi irrumpere Cirtam,  
 he endeavours with the utmost force to break-into Cirta,

maxumè sperans sese inventurum casum victoriæ  
 chiefly hoping himself about-to-find a chance of victory

aut vi aut dolis, manu hostium  
 either by force or by stratagems, the band [the forces] of the enemies

diductâ. Ubi quod procedit secus,  
 having been separated. When which (attempt) proceeds otherwise,  
 neque potest efficere quod intenderat, uti potiretur  
 neither can he effect what he had designed, that he might possess  
 Atherbalis priusquàm conveniret legatos; venit  
 of Adherbal before-that he might meet the ambassadors; he came  
 cum paucis equitibus in provinciam, ne morando  
 with (a) few horsemen into the province, lest by delaying  
 ampliùs, incenderet Scaurum, quem metuebat  
 more (longer), he might incense Scaurus, whom he did fear  
 plurimùm. Ac tametsi graves minæ nunciabantur  
 very-much. And although heavy threats were announced  
 verbis senatûs, quòd non-desisteret ab  
 in the words of the senate, because he would not-desist from  
 oppugnatione, tamen multâ oratione consumptâ,  
 the siege, yet much speech being wasted,  
 legati discessere frustra. Postquam ea  
 the ambassadors departed in-vain. After that those (things)  
 audita-sunt Cirtæ, Italici, virtute quorum moenia  
 were heard at Cirta, the Italians, by the valour of whom the walls  
 defensabantur, confisi, deditiōe factâ, sese  
 were defended, having trusted, a surrender being made, themselves  
 fore inviolatos propter magnitudinem  
 to be about-to-be [would be] uninjured on-account-of the greatness  
 Romani populi, suadent Atherbali, uti tradat  
 of the Roman people, persuade to Adherbal, that he may deliver  
 que se et oppidum Jugurthæ, tantùm paciscatur  
 both himself and the town to Jugurtha, only may bargain  
 vitam ab eo; de cæteris  
 [and only bargain] for life from him; concerning the others  
 fore curæ senatui.  
 to be-about-to-be for a care to the senate. [That the senate would care

At ille, tametsi rebatur omnia  
 for the rest.] But he, although he did suppose all (things)  
 potiora fide Jugurthæ, tamen quia potestas  
 preferable (than) the faith of Jugurtha, however because the power  
 cogendi erat penès eosdem, si adversaretur,  
 of compelling (him) was in-the-power-of the same, if he should oppose,

fecit deditionem ita, uti Italici censuerant. Igitur  
made a surrender so, as the Italians had resolved. Therefore

Jugurtha in primis necat Atherbalem  
Jugurtha in (among) the first puts-to-death Adherbal

excruciatum: deinde interfecit omnes Numidas  
having been tortured: afterwards he killed all the Numidian

puberes, atque negotiatores promiscuè, uti quisque  
youths, and merchants promiscuously, as each

fuerat obvisus armatis. Quod postquam  
had been opposite (met) to the armed (men). Which after that

cognitum-est Romæ, et res coepta (est) agitari  
it was known at Rome, and the thing was begun to be agitated

in senatu; illi iidem ministri regis leniebant  
in the senate; those same servants of the king did mitigate

atrocitatem facti interpellando, ac sæpè gratiâ,  
the atrocity of the deed by interrupting, and often by interest,

interdum trahendo tempus jurgii. Ac ni  
sometimes by protracting the time in contentions. And unless

Caius Memmius, tribunus designatus plebis, acer  
Caius Memmius, tribune elect of the people, an acute

vir, et infestus potentiæ nobilitatis, edocuisset  
man, and hostile to the power of the nobility, might have instructed

Romanum populum, id agi,  
(had instructed) the Roman people, that to be acted, [that it was

uti scelus Jugurthæ condonaretur  
in agitation,] that the wickedness of Jugurtha might be pardoned

per paucos factiosos, profectò omnis  
through (a) few factious (persons), in-deed all

invidia dilapsa-foret consultationibus  
the envy (odium) would have passed-away by the deliberations

prolatandis. Tanta erat  
to-be-deferred (by deferring the deliberations). So-great was

vis gratiæ, atque pecuniæ regis. Sed ubi  
the force of the interest, and of the money of the king. But when

senatus, conscientiâ delicti, timet populum,  
the senate, from a consciousness of crime, fears the people,

provinciæ Numidia atque Italia decretæ (sunt)  
the provinces Numidia and Italy were decreed

futuris consulibus Sempronîa lege: Publius  
to the future , consuls by the Sempronian law: Publius

Scipio Nasica, Lucius Bestia Calpurnius declarati (sunt)  
Scipio Nasica, Lucius Bestia Calpurnius were declared

consules: Numidia obvenit Calpurnio, Italia  
consuls: Numidia came-by-lot to Calpurnius, Italy

Scipioni. Dein exercitus scribitur, qui  
to Scipio. Afterwards an army is written (levied), which

portaretur in Africam: stipendium, que alia,  
should be carried into Africa: pay, and other

quæ forent usui bello, decernuntur. At  
(things), which might be for use in war, are decreed. But

Jugurtha, nuncio accepto contra spem, quippe  
Jugurtha, a message being received against hope, forsooth

cui hæserat in animo omnia  
(one) to whom it had settled in mind (who thought) all (things)

venire Romæ; mittit filium et duos familiares  
to be-venal at Rome; sends (his) son and two intimate

cum eo legatos ad senatum; que  
(friends) with him (as) ambassadors to the senate; and

præcipit iis uti illis, quos miserat, Hiempsale  
directs to these as to those, whom he had sent, Hiempsal

interfecto, aggrediantur  
having been killed, (that) may attempt [that they should attempt]

omnis (omnes) mortalis (mortales) pecuniâ:  
(to bribe) all mortals with money:

qui postquam adventabant Romam, senatus  
who after that they did approach (to) Rome, the senate

consultus-est à Bestiâ, ne placeret  
was consulted by Bestia, whether it might please (them)

legatos Jugurthæ recipi mœnibus;  
the ambassadors of Jugurtha to be received in the walls (the city);

que ii decrevere, ut decederent Italiâ in  
and these decreed, that they should depart from Italy in

proximis decem diebus, ni venissent  
the next ten days, unless they might have come (had come)

deditum regnum que ipsum. Consul  
to surrender the kingdom and [and the king] himself. The consul

jubet nunciari Numidis ex decreto  
orders (it) to be told to the Numidians according-to. the decree

senatûs. Ita illi discedunt domum, rebus  
of the senate. Thus they depart home, (their) affairs

infectis. Interim Calpurnius, exercitu  
being unaccomplished. Mean-time Calpurnius, an army

parato, legat sibi  
being prepared, deputed to himself [selects for himself lieutenants]

nobiles homines factiosos, auctoritate quorum  
noble men factious, by the authority of whom

sperabat, quæ deliquisset fore  
he did hope, what he might have transgressed to be about-to be [would

munita, in quîs fuit Scaurus, de naturâ et  
be] protected, amongst whom was Scaurus, of the nature and

habitu cujus memoravimus suprâ. Nam multæ  
disposition of whom we have recorded above. For many

que bonæ artes animi et corporis erant in  
and good arts (qualities) of mind and of body were in

nostro consule; omnis (omnes) quas avaritia  
our consul; all which avarice

præpediebat. Patiens laborum, acri ingenio,  
did hinder. Patient of labours, with (of) a sharp disposition,

satis providens, haud ignarus belli, firmissimus  
sufficiently provident, not ignorant of war, most-firm

contra pericula et insidias. Sed legiones  
against dangers and snares. But the legions

transvectæ (sunt) per Italiam Rhëgium, atque  
were conveyed through Italy (to) Rhëgium, and

inde Siciliam, porro ex Siciliâ in Africam.  
thence (to) Sicily, moreover from Sicily into Africa.

Igitur Calpurnius, commeatibus paratis initio,  
Therefore Calpurnius, provisions being prepared in the beginning,

acriter ingressus-est Numidiam; que cepit multos  
vigorously entered Numidia; and took many

mortalis (mortales), et aliquot urbis (urbes) pugnando.  
men, and some cities by fighting.

Sed ubi Jugurtha cœpit tentare pecuniâ  
But when Jugurtha began to try (tempt him) with money

per legatos, que ostendere asperitatem  
through ambassadors, and to show the roughness (difficulty)

belli, quod administrabat, animus, æger avaritiâ,  
of the war, which he did manage, (his) mind, sick with avarice,

conversus-est facilè. Cæterùm Scaurus assumitur  
was changed easily. But Scaurus is chosen (as)

socius et administer omnium consiliorum; qui  
an associate and manager of all (his) designs; who

tametsi impugnaverant regem acerrumè à principio,  
although he had opposed the king most-sharply from the beginning,

plerisque ex factione ejus corruptis,  
most of the faction of him [of his party] being corrupted,

tamen abstractus-est à bono que honesto in  
yet he was drawn-away from good and honourable into

pravum magnitudine pecuniæ. Sed Jugurtha primùm  
depraved by the greatness of the money. But Jugurtha at-first

redimebat tantummodo moram belli, existumans sese  
did purchase only a delay of war, thinking himself

effecturum aliquid interim Romæ pretio,  
about-to-effect some (thing) in-the-mean-time at Rome by price

aut gratiâ; verò posteaquàm acceperat  
(bribery), or by interest; but after-that he received (heard)

Scaurum participem negotii, adductus in maxumam  
Scaurus partaker of the business, led into the greatest

spem pacis recuperandæ,  
hope of peace to-be-recovered (of recovering peace),

statuit præsens agere cum eis  
he resolved present (personally) to act (treat) with them

de omnibus pactionibus. Cæterùm  
about all agreements. [About a treaty.] But

interea, causâ fidei, Sextius mittitur à  
mean-time, for the sake of faith, Sextius is sent by

consule quæstor in Vaccam, oppidum Jugurthæ;  
by the consul (as) quæstor into Vacca, a town of Jugurthæ;

species cujus rei erat acceptio frumenti, quod  
the pretence of which thing was the receiving of corn, which

Calpurnius palam imperaverat legatis, quoniam  
Calpurnius openly had ordered to the ambassadors, since



induciæ agitabantur morâ deditionis.  
truces were agitated (continued) by the delay of surrender.

Igitur rex venit in castra (pl.) uti constituerat :  
Therefore the king came into the camp, as he had resolved :

ac locutus pauca, consilio præsentī,  
and having spoken a few (words), the council (being) present,

de invidiâ sui facti, atque ut acciperetur  
of the envy (odium) of his deed, and that he might be received

in deditionem, transegit reliqua secreta cum  
into surrender, transacted the remaining (things) secret with

Bestiâ et Scauro: dein accipitur in deditionem  
Bestia and Scaurus: then he is received into surrender

postero die, sententiis exquisitis quasi  
on the following day, the opinions being sought (taken) [as-if]

per-saturam. Sed uti imperatum-erat pro consilio,  
indiscriminately. But as it had been commanded before the council,

triginta elephantī, pecus, atque multi equi, cum  
thirty elephants, cattle, and many horses, with

non parvo pondere argenti traduntur quæstori.  
not a small weight of silver are delivered to the questor.

Calpurnius proficiscitur Romam ad magistratus  
Calpurnius sets-out (to) Rome to magistrates

rogandos.

to-be-asked (to elect magistrates). [To preside at the election of magis

Pax agitabatur in Numidiâ et nostro  
trates.] Peace was agitated (enjoyed) in Numidia and in our

exercitu. Postquam fama divulgavit res gestas  
army. After that fame divulged the things carried-on

in Africâ, que quo modo actæ-forent,  
in Africa, and in what manner they might have been done (had been

agitari de facto consulis  
done), (it began) to be discussed concerning the deed of the consul

Romæ per omnis (omnes) locos et conventus.  
at Rome through all places and assemblies.

Gravis invidia apud plebem: patres erant  
Heavy envy (odium) among the commonalty: the fathers were

soliciti; parûm-constabat ne probarent tantum  
anxious; it was not-evident whether they should approve so-great

**flagitium**, an subverterent decretum consulis. Ac villany, or should overthrow the decree of the consul. And **potentia Scauri**, quòd is ferebatur auctor et socius the power of Scaurus, because he was reported the adviser and associate **Bestiæ**, maxumè impediēbat eos à vero que honesto. of Bestia, chiefly did prevent them from true and honourable

At Caius Memmius, de libertate cujus (conduct). But Caius Memmius, of the freedom of whose **ingenii**, et odio potentie nobilitatis diximus suprâ, disposition, and hatred of the power of the nobility we have said above,

inter dubitationem et moras senatûs hortari (began) amid the hesitation and delays of the senate to encourage

**populum concionibus ad-vindicandum** : the people in assemblies to vindicate (punish such conduct) :

**monere ne-desererent rempublicam, ne suam** to advise they would not-forsake the republic, not their-own

**libertatem : ostendere multa superba, crudelia facinora** liberty : to point-out many proud, cruel crimes

**nobilitatis : prorsus intentus, accendebat animum** of the nobility : altogether intent, he did inflame the mind (spirit)

**plebis omni modo. Sed quoniam facundia** of the commonalty in every manner. But since the eloquence

**Memmii fuit clara que pollens Romæ eâ** of Memmius was illustrious and powerful at Rome at that

**tempestate, existumavi decere perscribere unam** time, I have thought (it) to be-fit to transcribe one

**orationem ejus ex tam multis ; ac dicam potissimum** speech of him out-of so many ; and I will say chiefly

**ea quæ disseruit in concione post reditum** those (words) which he discussed in the assembly after the return

**Bestiæ, verbis hujusmodi :** of Bestia, in words of this-kind :

“ Multa dehortantur me à vobis, “ Many (things) dissuade me from (addressing) you,

**ni studium reipublicæ superet omnia ; opes** unless (my) zeal for the republic may surmount all ; the resources

**factionis, vestra patientia, nullum jus ; ac maxumè,** of a faction, your-own patience, no right ; and chiefly,

quòd est plus periculi quam honoris innocentiae.  
because (there) is more of danger than of honour to innocence

Nam quidem piget dicere illa,  
(integrity). For indeed it grieves (me) to say those (things),

quàm fueritis his XV (quindecim)  
how you may have been (ye have been) in these fifteen

annis ludibrio superbiæ paucorum: quàm foedè que  
years for a sport to the pride of a few: how disgracefully and

quam inulti vestri defensores perierint;  
how unrevenged your defenders may have perished (have pe-

riished); uti animus sit vobis corruptus  
that the mind may be to you (your mind is) corrupted

vobis ab ignaviâ atque socordiâ: qui exsurgitis ne  
for you by indolence and slothfulness: who rise [not]

quidem nunc, inimicis obnoxiiis,  
even now, (your) enemies (being) obnoxious, [being in

atque etiam nunc  
your power, on account of their corruption], and even, now

timetis eos, quibus decet vos esse terrori. Sed  
fear them, to whom it becomes you to be for a terror. But

quamquam hæc sunt talia, tamen animus  
although these (things) are such, yet (my) mind

subigit ire obviàm potentiæ factionis.  
forces (me) to go toward (to oppose) to the power of a faction.

Certè ego experiar libertatem quæ tradita-est mihi  
Surely I will try-for the liberty which has been delivered to me

à meo parente; verùm situm-est in vestrâ manu,  
from my parent; but it is placed in your hand,

Quirites! faciam id frustra,  
[in your power], O Romans! (whether) I may do that in-vain,

an ob rem. Neque ego hortor  
or on-account-of the thing (effectually). Neither [do] I exhort

vos quod vestri majores fecere sæpe, uti eatis  
you (to think) which your ancestors have done often, that you may go

armati contra injurias. Est nihil opus  
armed against injuries. There is nothing (no) need with (of)

vi, nihil secessione. Est necesse ipsi  
force, nothing with (of) secession. It is necessary (that) they

eant præcípites suomet more. Tiberio Graccho  
may go headlong in their-own manner. Tiberius Gracchus

occiso, quem aiebant parare regnum, graves  
being slain, whom they did say to prepare (aim at) kingdom, heavy

quæstiones habitæ-sunt in Romanam plebem.  
inquisitions were held against the Roman commonalty.

Multi mortales necati-sunt in carcere, post cædem  
Many men have been put-to-death in prison, after the slaughter

Caii Gracchi, et Marci Fulvii, item vestri ordinis.  
of Caius Gracchus, and of Marcus Fulvius, also of your order.

Non lex, sed lubido eorum fecit finem utriusque  
Not law, but the caprice of them has made an end of each

cladis. Sed sanè fuerit paratio regni,  
slaughter. But indeed it may have been a procuring of kingdom,

restituere sua jura plebi. Quidquid  
to restore their-own rights to the commonalty. Whatsoever

nequitur ulcisci sine sanguine civium,  
is-unable (they are-unable) to avenge without the blood of citizens,

[let whatever could not have been punished, without shedding the blood

factum-sit jure. Taciti indignabamini  
of citizens], may have been done by right. Silent you were-indignant

ærarium expilari  
the treasury to be plundered [at the plundering of the treasury]

superioribus annis; reges et liberos populos  
in former years; [that] kings and free people

pendere vectigal paucis nobilibus; et summam  
to pay [pay] tribute to a few nobles; and the highest

gloriam et maximas divitias esse penès  
glory and the greatest riches to be in-the-power-of

eosdem: tamen habuere parùm susce-  
the same: yet they have had (accounted it) little to have under-

pissee hæc talia facinora impunè: itaque postremò,  
taken these such crimes with impunity: therefore lastly,

leges, vestra majestas, omnia divina et humana,  
the laws, your majesty, all divine and human (things),

tradita-sunt hostibus. Neque pudet aut poenitet  
have been delivered to enemies. Neither does it shame or grieve

eos qui fecere ea: sed incedunt magnificè  
those who have done those (things): but they strut pompously

per vestra ora, ostentantes sacerdotia, et  
through (before) your faces, displaying priesthoods, and

consulatus, pars suos triumphos: perinde-quasi  
consulates, part their-own triumphs: just-as-if

habeant ea honori, non prædæ. Servi  
they may have these for honour, not for plunder. Slaves

parati ære, perferunt non injusta imperia  
procured by brass (money), bear not the unjust commands

dominorum: Quirites, nati imperio, vos-toleratis  
of masters: Romans, born for command, do you-endure

servitutem æquo animo? At qui sunt hi  
slavery with even mind [calmly]? But who are those

qui occupavere rempublicam? Sceleratissimi homines,  
who have seized the republic? The most-wicked men,

cruentis manibus, immani avaritiâ, nocentissimi,  
with bloody hands, with (of) dreadful avarice, most-injurious,

que iidem superbissimi: quibus fides, decus, pietas,  
and the same most-proud: to whom faith, honour, piety,

postremò, omnia honesta atque inhonesta sunt  
lastly, all honourable and dishonourable (things) are

quæstui. Pars eorum, habent pro munimento,  
for gain. Part of them, have for a bulwark,

occidisse tribunos plebis, alii injustas  
to have killed tribunes of the commonalty, others unjust

quæstiones, plerique fecisse cædem in vos: ita  
inquisitions, most to have done slaughter against you: thus

quàm quisque fecit pessumè, tam est maxumè  
as each has done most-badly, so is-he most

tutus; transtulere  
safe; [the worse any one has acted the safer he is]; they have transferred

metum à suo scelere ad vestram ignaviam:  
fear from their-own wickedness to your indolence:

omnis (omnes) quos cupere eadem, odisse eadem,  
all whom to desire the same, to have hated the same,

metuere eadem coëgit in unum. Sed hæc est  
to fear the same has collected into one (body). But this is

amicitia inter bonos, factio inter malos. Quòd si  
 friendship among the good, faction among the bad. But if  
 vos haberetis curam libertatis tam, quàm illi  
 you might have a care of liberty so, as they  
 accensi-sunt ad dominationem; profectò respublica  
 have been inflamed to tyranny; indeed the republic  
 neque vastaretur sicuti nunc, et vestra beneficia  
 neither would be desolated as now, and your favours

forent penès optimos, non audacissimos.  
 [of offices] would be in-the-power-of the best, not the most-daring.

Vestri majores armati, bis occupavere Aventinum  
 Your ancestors armed, twice occupied the Aventine (mount)

per secessionem gratià juris parandi et  
 by a secession for-the-sake of justice to be procured and  
 majestatis constituendæ; nonne vos-nitemini  
 of dignity to-be-established; whether (or-not) will you endeavour

summâ ope pro libertate, quam accepistis  
 with the utmost might for the liberty, which you have received  
 ab illis? atque vehementiùs eò quò est  
 from them? and the more-earnestly therefore by-how-much it is

majus dedecus amittere parata, quàm non  
 a greater disgrace to lose (things) obtained, than not  
 paravisse omnino! Aliquis dicet, Quid  
 to have acquired (them) at-all! Some-one will say, What

igitur censes? vindicandum in  
 therefore thinkest-thou? (it is) to-be-vindicated against [why that

eos, qui prodidere  
 punishment should be inflicted on] those, who have betrayed

republicam hosti, non manu, neque vi;  
 the republic to the enemy, not by hand (action), neither by force;

quod est magis indignum vos fecisse, quàm  
 which is more unworthy (for) you to have done, than

accidisse illis: verùm quætionibus et indi-  
 to have happened to them: but by examinations and by the informa-

cio Jugurthæ ipsius. Qui, si est dedititius,  
 tion of Jugurtha himself. Who, if he is a surrenderer

erit profectò obediens vestris jussis: sin  
 will be indeed obedient to your commands: but-if

contemnit ea, scilicet ætimabitis qualis illa  
he despises those, forsooth you will estimate what-sort that

pax aut deditio sit, ex quâ impunitas  
peace or surrender may be, from which impunity

scelerum ad Jugurtham, maxumæ divitiæ  
of (for) crimes (accrues) to Jugurtha, the greatest riches

pervenerint ad paucos potentis (potentes), damna  
may have come to a few powerful (persons), losses

atque dedecora in rempublicam. Nisi etiam fortè  
and disgraces to the republic. Unless [also] perhaps

satietas dominationis eorum nondum tenet vos :  
a satiety of the tyranny of them not-yet possesses you :

et illa tempora, cùm regna, provinciæ, leges, jura,  
and those times, when kingdoms, provinces, laws, rights,

judicia, bella atque paces, postremò omnia divina  
judgments, wars and peaces, lastly all divine

et humana erant penès paucos, placent  
and human (things) were in-the-power-of a few, please

magis quàm hæc : autem vos, hoc est, Romanus  
more than these (times) : but you, this is, the Roman

populus, invicti ab hostibus, imperatores omnium  
people, unconquered by enemies, rulers of all

gentium habebatis satis retinere animam.  
nations did have (did account it) sufficient to retain existence.

Nam quidem quis vestrûm audebat recusare servitutem ?  
For indeed who of you did dare to refuse slavery ?

Atque tametsi ego existumo flagitiosissimum viro  
And although I think (it) most-disgraceful to a man

accepisse injuriam impunè ; tamen paterer  
to have received injury with-impunity ; yet I would suffer

æquo animo vos ignoscere sceleratissimis  
with even (patient) mind you to pardon to the most-wicked

hominibus, quoniam sunt cives ni misericordia  
men, since they are citizens unless compassion

esset casura in perniciem. Nam et fecisse  
might be about-to-fall into destruction. For and (also) to have done

malè impunè est parùm illis, quantum  
badly with-impunity is little to them, how-great (so much)

importunitatis habent, nisi deinde  
 of vexation [of insolence] they have, unless afterwards

licentia faciundi eripitur, et æterna  
 the privilege of doing (so) is taken-away, and eternal

solicitudo remanebit vobis, cum intelligetis aut  
 anxiety will remain to you, when you shall understand either

esse-serviendum, aut libertatem  
 to be-enslaved, [that you are either to be enslaved] or liberty

retinendam per manus. Nam quidem quæ spes  
 to-be-retained by hands (force). For indeed what hope

fidei aut concordiæ est? Illi volunt dominari;  
 of faith or of concord is there? They will to tyrannise;

vos esse liberi: illi facere injurias, vos prohibere:  
 you [will] to be free: they to do injuries, you to prohibit

postremò utuntur vestris sociis, veluti hostibus,  
 (them): lastly they use your allies, as enemies,

hostibus pro sociis. Ne potest pax aut  
 (your) enemies for allies. Whether can peace or

amicitia esse in mentibus tam divorsis? Quare  
 friendship be in minds so different? Wherefore

moneo que hortor vos, ne-dimittatis tantum  
 I advise and exhort you, (that) you may not-dismiss so great

scelus impunitum. Peculatus ærarii factus-est  
 wickedness unpunished. A robbery of the treasury has been made

non; neque pecuniæ ereptæ sociis per vim: quæ  
 not; neither moneys snatched from allies by force: which

quamquam sunt gravia, tamen habentur jam  
 although they are heavy (crimes), yet are had now

pro nihilo consuetudine: auctoritas senatûs  
 for nothing by custom: the authority of the senate

prodita (est) acerrumo hosti: vestrum imperium  
 has been betrayed to your most-fierce enemy: your dominion

proditum: respublica fuit venalis domi que militiæ.  
 betrayed: the republic has been venal at home and abroad.

Quæ nisi quæsitæ-erunt, nisi  
 Which unless it shall have been inquired-into, unless (it shall be)

vindicatum in noxios, quid erit reliquum,  
 vindicated against the guilty, what will be remaining,



nisi ut vivamus obedientes illis qui fecere ea?  
unless that we may live obedient to those who have done those

Nam facere quælibet impunè id est  
(things)? For to do any (things) with-impunity, that is  
esse regem. Neque ego hortor vos, Quirites! uti  
to be king. Neither do I exhort you, O Romans! that  
jam malitis vestros civis (cives) fecisse perperam  
now you-may-rather your citizens to have done amiss

quàm rectè: sed ne eatis perditum bonos,  
than rightly: but lest you may go to destroy the good,  
ignoscendo malis. Ad-hoc præstat multo in  
by pardoning to the bad. To this (besides) it is better by much in  
republicâ esse immemorem beneficii quàm maleficii.  
a republic to be unmindful of a kindness than of injury.

Bonus tantummodo fit segnior, ubi  
A good (man) only is made more-careless, when

negligas; at malus improbior.  
thou mayest neglect (him); but a bad (man) more wicked.

Ad-hoc, si injuriæ sint non, haud-egeas auxilii  
Besides, if injuries be not, thou mayest not-want of aid  
sæpe.  
often.

Caius Memmius dicundo hæc atque alia  
Caius Memmius by saying these and other (things)

hujuscemodi persuadet Romano populo, uti Lucius  
of this-kind persuades to the Roman people, that Lucius

Cassius, qui tum erat prætor, mitteretur ad  
Cassius, who then was prætor, should be sent to

Jugurtham, que duceret eum Romam, publicâ  
Jugurtha, and should lead him (to) Rome, the public

fide interpositâ, quò delicta Scauri  
faith having been interposed, in-order-that the transgressions of Scaurus

et reliquorum, quos arcessebant pecuniæ captæ,  
and of the rest, whom they did accuse of money being taken,

patefierent indicio regis. Dum  
might be-open (be discovered) by the information of the king. Whilst

hæc geruntur Romæ, qui relictî in  
these (things) are carried-on at Rome, (they) who having been left in

Numidiâ ab Bestiâ præerant exercitui, secuti  
 Numidia by Bestia did preside to the army, having followed  
 morem sui imperatoris, fecere plurima et  
 the custom of their commander, did very-many and  
 flagitiosissima facinora. Fuere qui corrupti  
 most-disgraceful crimes. There were (some) who being corrupted  
 auro, traderent (*imp. sub.*) elephantos  
 by gold, might (did) deliver the elephants  
 Jugurthæ; alii venderent perfugas; pars  
 to Jugurtha; others might (did) sell the deserters; part  
 agebant prædas ex pacatis. Tanta vis  
 did drive-away plunder from pacified (provinces). So-great a force  
 avaritiæ invaserat in animos eorum veluti  
 of avarice had invaded against the minds of them as  
 tabes. At Cassius prætor, rogatione  
 a pestilence. But Cassius the pretor, an inquiry  
 perlatâ à Caio Memmio, ac omni  
 having been carried (passed) by Caius Memmius, and all  
 nobilitate perculsâ, proficiscitur ad Jugurtham :  
 the nobility being-struck (terrified), sets-out to Jugurtha :  
 que persuadet ei, timido, et diffidenti suis rebus,  
 and persuades to him, fearful, and distrusting to his affairs,  
 ex conscientiâ, quoniam deditisset  
 from conscience, since he might have surrendered (had sur-  
 rendered) himself to the Roman people, that he may not-rather to try  
 vim quam misericordiam ejus : præterea  
 the force than compassion of it (them) : besides  
 interponit suam fidem privatim, quam ille  
 he interposes his-own faith privately, which he (Jugurtha)  
 ducebat non minoris quam publicam  
 did lead (think) not of less (value) than the public (faith).  
 Talis erat fama de Cassio eâ tempestate. Igitur  
 Such was the fame of Cassius at that time. Therefore  
 Jugurtha venit Romam cultu quàm maxumè  
 Jugurtha came (to) Rome in habit, as most  
 miserabili contra regium decus.  
 miserable contrary-to royal honour. [In mean dress, incon-

At tametsi magna vis animi  
 sistent with royal dignity.] But although great strength of mind  
 erat in ipso, confirmatus ab omnibus, potentiâ  
 was in himself, being strengthened by all, by the power  
 aut scelere quorum gesserat cuncta ea  
 or wickedness of whom he had carried-on all those (things)

quæ memoravimus suprâ, parat Caium  
 which we have recorded above, he prepares (procures) Caius

Bæbium, tribunum plebis, magnâ mercede,  
 Bæbius, a tribune of the common-people, by a great reward,

impudentiâ cujus munitus-foret contra jus et  
 by the impudence of whom he might be secured against law and

omnis (omnes) injurias. At Caius Memmius,  
 all injuries. But Caius Memmius,

concione advocatâ, quamquam plebes erat  
 an assembly being summoned, although the commonalty was

infesta regi, et pars jubebat duci in  
 hostile to the king, and part did order (him) to be led into

vincula, pars supplicium sumi de hoste  
 chains, part punishment to be taken of the enemy

more majorum, ni aperiret  
 in the manner of (our) ancestors, unless he would disclose

socios sceleris; consulens magis dignitati  
 the companions of (his) wickedness; consulting more to dignity

quàm iræ, sedare motus, et mollire  
 than to anger, (began) to allay the commotions, and to soften

animos eorum; postremò, confirmare publicam  
 the minds of them; lastly, to affirm the public

fidem fore inviolatam per sese.  
 faith to be about-to-be [should be] inviolate through himself.

Post, ubi silentium coepit, Jugurthâ producto,  
 Afterwards, when silence began, Jugurtha being led-forth,

facit verba: memorat  
 he makes words: [he, Memmius, addresses him]: recounts (his)

facinora Romæ que Numidiæ; ostendit scelera  
 crimes at Rome and at Numidia; shows (his) wickednesses

in patrem que fratres; quamquam Romanus  
 towards (his) father and brothers; although the Roman

populus intelligat quibus juvantibus que  
 people may understand (understands) by whom assisting and  
 quibus ministris egerit (*perf. sub.*) ea, tamen  
 by what servants he may have done (he did) those (things), yet  
 velle habere magis manifesta ex illo: si  
 to will to have (them) more manifest from him: if  
 aperiat verum, magnam spem sitam illi  
 he may disclose the truth, great hope (would be) placed for him  
 in fide et clementiâ Romani populi, sin  
 in the faith and the clemency of the Roman people, but-if  
 reticeat, fore non saluti  
 he be silent, to-be-about-to-be not [it would not be] for safety to (his)  
 sociis, sed corrupturum se que  
 companions, but about-to-destroy [but would destroy] himself and  
 suas spes. Dein, ubi Memmius fecit finem dicendi,  
 his hopes. Then, when Memmius made an end of speaking,  
 et Jugurtha jussus-est respondere, Caius Bæbius,  
 and Jugurtha was-ordered to answer, Caius Bæbius,  
 tribunus plebis, quem diximus suprâ  
 tribune of the common-people, whom we have said above (to have  
 corruptum pecuniâ, jubet regem tacere: ac  
 been) corrupted by money, orders the king to be-silent: and  
 tametsi multitudo, quæ aderat in concione,  
 although the multitude, which was-present in the assembly,  
 vehementer accensa, terrebat cum clamore, vultu,  
 exceedingly inflamed, did affright with clamour, countenance  
 sæpe impetu, atque omnibus aliis quæ  
 (looks), often with violence, and with all other (things) which  
 ira amat fieri; tamen impudentia vicit. Ita  
 anger loves to be done; yet impudence conquered. Thus  
 populus habitus ludibrio, discedit ex concione:  
 the people being held in ridicule, departs out-of the assembly:  
 animi augeantur Jugurthæ, que Bestiæ, et  
 minds (spirit) increase to Jugurtha, and, to Bestia, and  
 cæteris, quos illa quæstio exagitabat. Erat eâ  
 to the rest, whom that inquiry did harass. There was at that  
 tempestate quidam Numida Romæ, Massiva nomine,  
 time a certain Numidian at-Rome, Massiva by name,

**filius Gulussæ, nepos Masinissæ, qui quia fuerat**  
 son of Gulussa, grandson of Masinissa, who because he had been  
**advorsus Jugurthæ in dissensione regum, Cirtâ**  
 adverse to Jugurtha in the dissension of the kings, Cirta

**deditâ, et Atherbale interfecto, profugus**  
 being surrendered, and Adherbal being killed, (as) an exile

**abierat ex Africâ. Spurius Albinus, qui gerebat**  
 had departed out-of Africa. Spurius Albinus, who did carry-on

**consulatum cum Quinto Minucio Rufo proximo anno**  
 the consulship with Quintus Minucius Rufus in the next year

**post Bestiam, persuadet huic, quoniam sit ex**  
 after Bestia, persuades to him, since he may be (is) of

**stirpe Masinissæ, urgeat Jugurtham**  
 the stem (family) of Masinissa, (that) he may press Jugurtha

**invidiâ cum metu ob scelera,**  
 by odium with fear on-account-of (his) wickednesses, (and)

**petat**

may seek [and as odium, with fear on account of his wickedness, pressed

**regnum Numidiæ**  
 hard on Jugurtha, he, Massiva, should seek] the kingdom of Numidia

**ab senatu. Consul, avidus belli gerundi,**  
 from the senate. The consul, desirous of the war to be-carried-on,

**malebat omnia moveri quàm senescere.**  
 had-rather all (things) to be disturbed than to grow old.

**Provincia Numidia evenerat ipsi, Macedonia Minucio.**  
 The Province Numidia had come to him, Macedonia to Minucius.

**Quæ postquam Massiva cœpit agitare neque**  
 Which (things) after that Massiva began to deliberate neither

**est satis præsidii Jugurthæ in amicis; quòd**  
 is there sufficient of protection to Jugurtha in friends; because

**conscientia impediēbat alium eorum, mala fama**  
 conscience did hinder another (one) of them, bad character

**et timor animi alium: imperat Bomilcari, proximo**  
 and fear of mind another: he commands to Bomilcar, the nearest

**ac maxumè fido sibi, paret insidiatores**  
 and most faithful to him, (that) he may procure assassins

**Massivæ pretio, sicuti confecerat multa;**  
 for Massiva by a reward (bribe), as he had accomplished many (things);

ac maxumè occulte. Sin id parùm-procedat,  
 an<sup>d</sup> most secretly. But-if that may not-succeed,

interficiat Numidam quovis modo. Bomilcar maturæ  
 he may kill the Numidians in any manner. Bomilcar speedily

exsequitur mandata regis, et explorat itinera, que  
 executes the mandates of the king, and explores the journeys, and

egressus ejus, postremò,  
 egresses of him, [his routes, and time of leaving home], lastly,

cuncta loca atque tempora  
 all [his] places [of resort] and times [of frequenting them]

per homines artifices talis negotii; dein ubi  
 through men skilful of (in) such business; then when

res postulabat, tendit insidias. Igitur unus ex  
 the thing did require, he lays snares. Therefore one of

eo numero, qui parati-erant ad cædem,  
 that number, who had been procured to (for) the murder,

aggreditur Massivam paulò inconsultiùs, obtruncat  
 attacks Massiva a little too-rashly, murders

illum; sed ipse deprehensus, profitetur indicium,  
 him; but he being apprehended, confesses the information,

multis hortantibus, sed in-primis  
 [gives full information], many encouraging (him), but-particularly

Albino consule. Bomilcar, comes ejus, qui venerat  
 Albinus the consul. Bomilcar, the companion of him, who had come

Romam publicâ fide, fit reus magis ex  
 (to) Rome with the public faith, is made criminal rather according-to

æquo que bono, quàm ex jure gentium.  
 just and good, than according-to the right of nations.

At Jugurtha manifestus tanti sceleris,  
 But Jugurtha manifest (convicted) of so-great wickedness,

omisit non niti contra verum priusquam  
 omitted not to endeavour against the truth before-that

animadvortit invidiam facti esse super suam  
 he perceives the envy (odium) of the deed to be above his

gratiam atque pecuniam. Igitur quamquam dederat  
 interest and money. Therefore although he had given

quinquaginta ex amicis vades in priora  
 fifty of (his) friends (as) bailes in the former

actione, consulens magis  
 action, [when Bomilcar was first put on trial], [consulting more  
 regno, quàm vadibus, dimittit Bomilcarem  
 for his kingdom, than for the securities,] he sends-away Bomilcar  
 clam in Numidiam, veritus ne metus parendi  
 privately into Numidia, having dreaded lest a fear of obeying  
 sibi invaderet reliquos popularis (populares), si  
 to him might attack (his) remaining subjects, if  
 supplicium sumptum-foret de illo:  
 punishment might have been taken (had been taken) of him:  
 et ipse jussus à senatu decedere Italiâ,  
 and he been ordered by the senate to depart from Italy,  
 profectus-est eòdem paucis diebus. Sed postquam  
 set-out to the same (place) in a few days. But after that  
 egressus-est Româ, tacitus, respiciens eò, fertur,  
 he departed from Rome, silent, looking-back thither, he is reported,  
 postremò dixisse, urbem venalem, et maturè  
 lastly to have said, the city (to be) venal, and speedily  
 perituram, si invenerit emptorem. Interim Albinus,  
 about-to-perish, if it shall have found a purchaser. Meantime Albinus,  
 bello renovato, maturè portare in Africam  
 the war being renewed, (began) speedily to convey into Africa  
 com meatum, stipendium, que alia, quæ forent  
 provision, pay, and other (things), which might be  
 usui militibus: ac ipse statim profectus,  
 for use to soldiers: and himself immediately set-out,  
 ut conficeret bellum armis, aut deditione, aut  
 that he might finish the war by arms, or by surrender, or  
 quovis modo. At Jugurtha contra trahere  
 in any manner. But Jugurtha on-the-other-hand (began) to protract  
 omnia, et facere alias, deinde alias causas  
 all (things), and to make other, then other causes  
 moræ: pollicere deditiōem, ac deinde simulare  
 of delay: to promise a surrender, and then to pretend  
 metum: cedere instanti, et paullo pòst instare,  
 fear: to yield (to him) urging, and a-little after to urge  
 ne sui diffiderent: ita ludificare  
 (him), lest his-own (people) might distrust: thus to baffle

consulem modò morâ belli, modò pacis. Ac fuêre,  
the consul now by delay of war, now of peace. And there were

qui existumarent (*imp. sub.*) tum Albinum  
(some), who might (did) think then Albinus

haud ignarum consilii regis; neque crederent  
not ignorant of the design of the king; nor would believe

bellum tam facile tractum ex tantâ properantiâ,  
the war so easily protracted out-of (after) so-great haste,

magis socordiâ quam dolo. Sed postquam,  
rather from inactivity than by deceit. But after-that,

tempore dilapso, dies comitiorum  
the time having glided-away, the day of the elections

adventabat, Albinus, fratre Aulo relicto  
did approach, Albinus, (his) brother Aulus being left

pro prætor in castris, decessit Romam.  
[pro pretor] in the camps, departed (to) Rome.

Respublica agitabatur atrociter eâ tempestate  
The commonwealth was harassed dreadfully at that time

Romæ tribunitiis seditionibus. P. Lucullus,  
at Rome by tribunitial seditions. Publius Lucullus,

et L. Annius, tribuni plebis, nitebantur  
and Lucius Annius, tribunes of the people, did strive

continuatione magistratum, collegis  
to continue (their) magistracy, (their) colleagues

resistentibus: quæ dissensio impediabat comitia  
opposing (it): which dissension did hinder the elections

totius anni. Aulus adductus in spem eâ morâ,  
of the whole year. Aulus being led into hope by that delay,

quem diximus supra relictum (esse) proprætore in  
whom we have said above to have been left (as) proprætor in

castris, aut belli conficiundi, aut  
the camps, either (for the sake) of the war to-be-finished, or

pecuniæ capiundæ ab rege terrore exercitûs,  
of money to-be-taken from the king by the terror of (his) army,

evocat milites ex hibernis in expeditionem,  
calls-out the soldiers out-of winter-quarters into an expedition,

mense Januario: que magnis itineribus asperâ  
in the month January: and by great marches in a rough



hieme, pervenit ad oppidum Suthul, ubi thesauri  
 winter, arrived at the town Suthul, where the treasures  
 regis erant. Quod quanquam poterat neque  
 of the king were. Which although [he] was-able neither  
 capi neque obsideri, et sævitiâ temporis  
 to be taken nor to be besieged, both by the severity of the time  
 et opportunitate loci, (nam limosa  
 and by the commodiousness [defences] of the place, (for a marshy  
 planicies fecerat paludem hiemalibus aquis circum  
 plain had made a lake from the wintry waters about  
 murum situm in extremo prærupti montis)  
 the wall situate on the extreme (edge) of a rugged mountain)  
 tamen, aut gratiâ simulandi, quò adderet  
 however, either for the sake of pretending, in-order-that he might add  
 formidinem regi, aut cæcus cupidine  
 (strike) terror to the king, or blind with a desire  
 potiundi oppidi ob thesauros, agere  
 of possessing the town on-account-of the treasures, (he began) to act  
 vineas, jacere aggerem, que properare  
 (advance) mantelets, to throw-up a mound, and to hasten  
 alia, quæ forent usui incepto. At  
 other (things), which might be for use to the undertaking. But  
 Jugurtha, vanitate atque imperitiâ legati  
 Jugurtha, the vanity and ignorance of the lieutenant  
 cognitâ, subdolus augere amentiam :  
 being known, crafty (began) to increase (his) insanity :  
 missitare supplicantis legatos : ipse, quasi  
 to send-often supplicating ambassadors : himself, as-if  
 vitabundus ductare exercitum per saltuosa  
 avoiding (him) to lead (his) army through woody  
 loca, et tramites. Denique, pepulit Aulum  
 places, and cross-paths. Finally, he forced Aulus  
 spe pactionis, uti Suthule relicto,  
 by the hope of an agreement, that Suthul being left,  
 insequeretur sese in abditas regiones, veluti  
 he might pursue himself into hidden (remote) regions, as-if  
 cedentem : ita delicta fore occultiora.  
 yielding : thus (his) transgressions to be about-to-be more secret.

Interea tentabat exercitum die que noctu,  
 Meantime he did try (tempt) the army by day and by night,  
 per callidos homines: corrumpere centuriones que  
 by crafty men: to corrupt the centurions and  
 duces turmarum, uti transfugerent; uti alii, signo  
 leaders of companies, that they might desert; that others, a sign  
 dato, desererent locum. Quæ postquam  
 being given, might abandon the place. Which (things) after that  
 instruxit ex sententiâ; circumvenit castra  
 he arranged according-to (his) determination; he surrounded the camp  
 Auli de-improviso intempestâ nocte, multitudine  
 of Aulus suddenly in unseasonable night, with a multitude  
 Numidarum. Romani milites, perculsi insolito  
 of Numidians. The Roman soldiers, struck with the unusual  
 tumultu, alii capere arma; alii abdere se;  
 tumult, (began) others to take arms; others to hide themselves;  
 pars confirmare territos; trepidare omnibus  
 part to encourage the affrighted; to tremble in all  
 locis; vis hostium magna; cœlum  
 places; the force of the enemies (was) great; heaven (the sky)  
 obscuratum nocte atque nubibus, periculum  
 darkened by the night and by clouds, the danger (was)  
 anceps: postremò, erat in-incerto  
 double [on both sides]: lastly, it was doubtful (whether)  
 foret tutius fugere an manere. Sed ex eo  
 it might be safer to flee or to remain. But out-of that  
 numero, quos diximus paullo antè corruptos-(esse),  
 number, whom we have said a little before to have been corrupted,  
 una cohors Ligurum, cum duabus turmis  
 one cohort of Ligurians, with two companies  
 Thracum, et paucis gregariis-militibus, transiêre  
 of Thracians, and a few common-soldiers, went-over  
 ad regem, et centurio primi-pili tertie  
 to the king, and a centurion of the first-order of the third  
 legionis dedit locum introeundi hostibus per  
 legion gave a place of entering to the enemies through  
 munitionem, quam acceperat uti defenderet;  
 a fortification, which he had received that he might defend (it);

que eâ cuncti Numidæ irrupère. Nostri  
 and by that all the Numidians burst-in. Our (men)  
 plerique armis abjectis, occupavere proximum  
 most (their) arms being thrown-away, seized the nearest  
 collem foedâ fugâ. Nox atque præda castrorum  
 hill in shameful flight. Night and the spoil of the camps  
 remorata-sunt hostes, quo minus-uterentur  
 delayed the enemies, that they might not use (improve)  
 victoriâ (*abl.*) Dein Jugurtha postero die facit  
 the victory. Afterwards Jugurtha in the following day makes  
 verba cum Aulo in colloquio: "Tametsi tenet  
 words with Aulus in a conference: "Although he holds  
 ipsum cum exercitu clausum fame que ferro,  
 him with (his) army shut-up by famine and iron  
 tamen se memorem humanarum rerum;  
 (sword), however himself (to be) mindful of human things;  
 si faceret foedus secum,  
 if he would make a treaty with-himself, (that he would be)  
 missurum omnis (omnes) incolumes sub jugum;  
 about-to-send all safe under the yoke;  
 præterea, uti decederet Numidiâ decem  
 besides, that he should depart from Numidia in ten  
 diebus." Quæ quanquam erant gravia et  
 days." Which (things) although they were heavy and  
 plena flagitii, tamen, quia mutabantur metu  
 full of infamy, however, because they were exchanged with the fear  
 mortis, pax convenit, sicuti libuerat regi.  
 of death, peace was agreed-on, so-as it had pleased to the king.  
 Sed ubi ea comperta-sunt Romæ, metus  
 But when those (things) were discovered at Rome, fear  
 atque moeror invasere civitatem: pars dolere  
 and sorrow attacked the state: part (began) to grieve  
 pro gloriâ imperii; pars, insolita bellicarum  
 for the glory of the empire; part, unused of warlike  
 rerum, timere libertati. Omnes infesti  
 affairs, to fear for (their) liberty. All (were) hostile  
 Aulo, ac maxime qui fuerant sæpè præclari  
 to Aulus, and chiefly (those) who had been often illustrious

bello; quòd armatus quæsiverit salutem  
in war; because being armed he may have sought safety

dedecore potius quam manu. Consul  
by disgrace rather than by hand (by valour). The consul

Albinus, timens invidiam ex delicto  
Albinus, fearing odium from the transgression of (his)

fratris ob ea, ac deinde periculum,  
brother on-account-of these (things), and then danger [to him-

consulebat senatum de fœdere: et tamen  
self], did consult the senate concerning the treaty: and however

interim scribere supplementum exercitui;  
mean-time (began) to write (levy) an addition to the army;

arcessere auxilia ab sociis et Latino nomine;  
to send-for auxiliaries from the allies and the Latin name;

denique, festinare omnibus modis. Senatus decernit  
finally, to hasten in all manners. The senate decrees

ita uti fuerat par: "Nullum fœdus  
so as had been equal (proper): "No treaty

potuisse fieri suo-injussu  
to have been-able to be made [could be made] without their-order

atque populi." Consul impeditus à  
and (that) of the people." The consul being hindered by

tribunis plebis, ne-portaret secum  
the tribunes of the people, (that) he might not carry with him

copias quas paraverat, proficiscitur in Africam  
the forces which he had prepared, sets-out into Africa

paucis diebus. Nam omnis exercitus deductus  
in a few days. For all the army being led-away

Numidiâ, hiemabat in provinciâ, uti  
from Numidia, did winter in the province, as

convenerat. Postquam venit eò, quamquàm  
it had been agreed-on. After that he came thither, although

ardebat animo persequi Jugurtham, et mederi  
he did burn in mind to pursue Jugurtha, and to remedy

fraternæ invidiæ, militibus cõgnitis, quos præter  
to brotherly odium, the soldiers being known, whom besides

fugam, imperio soluto, licentia atque  
(their) flight, authority being dissolved, licentiousness and

lascivia corruperant, statuit ex copia  
 wantonness had corrupted, he determined from the plenty

rerum nihil agitandum sibi.  
 of things nothing to be agitated to (by) himself. [From the nature of

Interea, C.  
 the case, that nothing could be done by him.] Meantime, Caius

Mamilius Limetanus, tribunus plebis, promulgat  
 Mamilius Limetanus, tribune of the people, publishes

rogationem ad populum Romæ, "Uti quæreretur  
 an inquiry (bill) to the people at Rome, "That it should be inquired

in eos, consilio quorum Jugurtha neg-  
 against those, by advice of whom Jugurtha might have (had) con-

lexisset decreta senati; que qui acce-  
 temned the decrees of the senate; and who might have (had) re-

pissent pecunias ab eo in legationibus aut imperiis;  
 ceived moneys from him in embassies or commands;

qui tradidissent elephantos, que qui  
 who might have (had) delivered elephants, and who

perfugas; item qui fecissent pactiones  
 deserters; likewise who might have (had) made conventions

de pace aut bello cum hostibus." Partim  
 about peace or war with the enemies." (Persons) partly

conscii sibi, alii metuentes pericula ex invidia  
 conscious to themselves, others fearing dangers from the odium

partium, parabant impedimenta huic rogationi,  
 of parties, did prepare impediments [to this demanded-investigation],

(quoniam poterant non resistere aperte, quin  
 (since they were-able not to resist openly, but-that

faterentur illa et talia alia placere  
 they might confess those (things) and such other (things) to please

sibi)  
 to themselves) [unless they should be content to confess those, and such

occulte per amicos ac maxumè per  
 other things] secretly by (their) friends and chiefly by

homines Latini nominis et Italicos socios.  
 men of the Latin name (nation) and the Italian allies.

-Sed est incredibile memoratu, quam intenta  
 But it is incredible to be related, how intent

plebes fuerit, que quantâ vi,  
 the common-people may have been (was), and with how-great force,  
 jusserit (*perf. sub.*), decreverit, voluerit  
 (they) may have ordered, may have decreed, may have willed  
 rogationem, magis odio nobilitatis, cui illa  
 the inquiry (bill), more from hatred of the nobility, for whom those  
 mala parabantur, quàm carâ reipublicæ; tanta  
 evils were prepared, than from regard of the state; so-great  
 libido erat in partibus. Igitur cæteris perculsis  
 passion was in the factions. Therefore the rest being struck  
 metu, M. Scaurus, quem memoravimus supra  
 with fear, Marcus Scaurus, whom we have recorded above  
 fuisse legatum Bestiæ, inter lætitiâ plebis  
 to have been a lieutenant of Bestia, between the gladness of the people  
 et fugam suorum, civitate etiam tum  
 and the flight of his-own (friends), the state even then (being)  
 trepidâ, cùm tres quæditoris rogarentur  
 fearful, when (as) three inquisitors might be (were) demanded  
 ex Mamilianâ rogatione, effecerat ut  
 from [by] the Mamilian bill, [he] had accomplished that  
 ipse crearetur in eo numero. Sed quæstione  
 he might be created [selected] in that number. But the inquiry  
 exercitâ asperè, que violenter ex rumore, et  
 being carried-on roughly, and violently from report, and  
 lubricine plebis, ut insolentia sæpè ceperat  
 the passion of the people, as intemperance often had taken  
 nobilitatem ex secundis rebus, sic plebem  
 the nobility from favourable things, so (it seized) the people  
 eâ tempestate. Cæterum mos popularium  
 in that time. But the custom of popular  
 partium, et factionum senati, ac deinde omnium  
 parties, and of factions of the senate, and afterwards of all  
 malarum artium, ortus-est paucis annis antè  
 bad qualities [practices], arose in a few years before  
 Romæ, otio atque abundantia earum rerum quæ  
 at Rome, from leisure and the abundance of those [things] which  
 mortales ducunt prima. Nam antè Carthaginem  
 mortals deem first. For before Carthage

deletam, Romanus populus et senatus tractabant  
 being destroyed, the Roman people and the senate did manage  
 rempublicam placidè que modestè inter se;  
 the commonwealth quietly and moderately among themselves;  
 neque erat certamen gloriæ neque dominationis  
 neither was (there) a contest of glory nor of supremacy

inter cives: hostilis metus retinebat civitatem bonis  
 among citizens: the hostile fear did keep the state in good

artibus. Sed ubi illa formido discessit  
 qualities [practices]. But when that terror departed

mentibus, scilicet ea lascivia atque superbia  
 from (their) minds, forsooth that wantonness and pride

quæ secundæ res amant, incessere. Ita postquam  
 which prosperous things loves, came-on. Thus after-that

adepti-sunt otium, quod optaverunt in adversis rebus,  
 they obtained the leisure, which they wished in adverse things,

fuit asperius que acerbius. Namque  
 it was more-rough (injurious) and more-bitter. For

nobilitas cœpere vertere dignitatem, populus  
 the nobility began to turn (their) dignity, the people (their)

libertatem, in lubidinem: quisque ducere,  
 liberty, into passion: every one (began) to draw-away,

trahere, rapere sibi. Ita omnia abstracta-sunt  
 to drag, to seize for himself. Thus all (things) were drawn-away

in duas partis (partes). Respublica, quæ fuerat  
 into two parties. The commonwealth, which had been

media, dilacerata-(est). Cæterum nobilitas pollebat  
 middle, was torn-asunder. But the nobility did prevail

magis factione: vis plebis, soluta  
 more in party: the force of the common-people being dissolved

atque dispersa in multitudinem, minus-poterat:  
 and scattered among the multitude, was less-powerful:

agitabatur belli que domi arbitrio paucorum.  
 it was transacted of war (abroad) and at-home by the will of a few.

Ærarium, provinciæ, magistratus, gloriæ, que triumphi  
 The treasures, the provinces, magistracies, glories, and triumphs

erant penes eosdem; populus urgebatur militiâ  
 were in-the-power-of the same; [the people were harassed by war

atque inopiâ; imperatores cum paucis diripiebant  
and want:] the commanders with a few did plunder

bellicas prædas. Interea parentes aut parvi liberi  
the warlike spoils. Mean-while the parents or little children

militum pellebantur sedibus, uti quisque  
of the soldiers were expelled from (their) settlements, as every-one

erat confinis potentiori. Ita avaritia  
was neighbouring to a more-powerful (person). Thus avarice

sine modo que modestiâ, cum potentiâ  
without measure and moderation, with power (began)

invadere, polluere, et vastare omnia; habere  
to attack, to defile, and to waste all (things); to have

nihil pensi, neque sancti,  
nothing of consideration, [to regard nothing], nor of sacred, [nor

as sacred], quoad ipsa præcipitavit semet. Nam  
until it threw-headlong itself. For

ubi-primum reperti-sunt ex nobilitate, qui  
when-first (persons) were found out-of the nobility, who

anteponerent veram gloriam injustæ potentix, civitas  
would prefer true glory to unjust power, the state

cœpit moveri, et civilis dissensio, quasi permixtio  
began to be disturbed, and civil discord, as-if a confusion

terræ, oriri. Nam postquam Tiberius, et  
of the earth, (began) to arise. For after-that Tiberius, and

C. Gracchus, quorum majores addiderant multum  
Caius Gracchus, whose ancestors had added much

reipublicæ Punico atque aliis bellis, cœpere vindicare  
to the state in the Punic and in other wars, began to assert

plebem in libertatem, et patefacere scelera  
the common-people into liberty, and to expose the crimes

paucorum; nobilitas noxia atque eò perculsa,  
of a few; the nobility guilty and therefore struck (terrified),

ierat-obviam actionibus Gracchorum, modò per socios  
had opposed to the processes of the Gracchi, one-time by the allies

ac Latinum nomen, interdum per Romanos  
and the Latin name (nation), sometimes by the Roman

equites, quos spes societatis dimoverat à  
knights, whom the hope of a union had separated from



plebe: et primò necaverat ferro  
 the common-people: and first had killed with the iron (sword)  
 Tiberium, dein Caium post paucos annos ingredientem  
 Tiberius, then Caius after a few years entering-on  
 eadem, alterum tribunum, alterum triumvirum  
 the same (things), the other (one) a tribune, the other a triumvir  
 coloniis deducendis, cum M. Fulvio Flacco. Et  
 for colonies to-be-led-on, with Marcus Fulvius Flaccus. And  
 sanè animus satis moderatus fuit haud Gracchis  
 truly a mind sufficiently moderate was not to the Gracchi  
 cupidine victoriæ. Sed est satiùs vinci bono  
 from eagerness of victory. But it is preferable to be conquered in a good  
 more, quam vincere injuriam malo. Igitur  
 manner (cause), than to conquer injury in a bad (one). Therefore  
 nobilitas, usâ eâ victoriâ ex suâ lubidine,  
 the nobility, having used that victory according-to their passion,  
 extinxit multos mortales ferro aut fugâ;  
 destroyed many mortals with the iron (sword) or by banishment;  
 que addidit plus timoris quam potentiæ sibi in  
 and added more of fear than of power to themselves unto  
 reliquum. Quæ res plerumque pessum-  
 the rest (remaining time). Which thing generally has preci-  
 dedit magnas civitates: dum alteri volunt  
 pitated [destroyed] great states: whilst the others will  
 vincere alteros quovis modo, et ulcisci victos  
 to conquer the others in any manner, and to avenge the conquered  
 acerbiùs. Sed si parem disserere singillatim aut  
 more-bitterly. But if I may prepare to discuss individually or  
 pro magnitudine de studiis  
 in proportion-to the greatness (of the affair) about the zeals  
 partium et omnibus moribus civitatis, tempus deseret  
 of parties and all the morals of the state, time will fail  
 maturiùs quàm res. Quamobrem redeo  
 sooner than the thing (subject). Wherefore I return  
 ad inceptum.  
 to the undertaking.

Post fœdus Auli que fœdam fugam nostri  
 After the treaty of Aulus and the disgraceful flight of our

exercitûs, Metellus et Silanus, consules designati,  
 army, Metellus and Silanus, the consuls elect,

partiverant provincias inter se: que Numidia  
 had shared the provinces between themselves: and Numidia

evenerat Metello, acri viro, et quanquam  
 had come (by lot) to Metellus, a vigorous man, and although

adverso partibus populi, tamen æquabili  
 adverse to the factions of the people, however with (of) steady

et inviolatâ famâ. Ubi is primûm ingressus-est  
 and inviolate report. When he first entered-on

magistratum, ratus omnia alia sibi cum  
 the magistracy, having thought all other (things) for himself with

collegâ, intendit animum ad bellum quod  
 (his) colleague, he applies (his) mind to the war which

erat gesturus. Igitur diffidens veteri exercitui,  
 he was about to carry-on. Therefore distrusting to the old army,

scribere milites, arcessere præsidia  
 (he began) to write (levy) soldiers, to send-for protections [aid]

undique: parare arma, tela, equos, et cætera  
 from-every-side: to prepare arms, weapons, horses, and the other

instrumenta militiæ, ad hoc commeatum  
 instruments of warfare, to this (besides) provision

affatim; denique, omnia quæ solent esse  
 abundantly; finally, all (things) which are accustomed to be

usui in vario bello, et egenti multarum rerum.  
 for use in a changeable war, and needing of many things.

Cæterum senatus adnitebatur ad ea  
 But the senate did strive to those (things)

patranda auctoritate, socii que Latinum  
 to-be-accomplished by (its) authority, the allies and the Latin

nomen et reges mittendo auxilia ultro,  
 name (nation) and kings by sending auxiliaries voluntarily,

postremo omnis civitas summo studio.  
 lastly all the state (did strive) with the highest zeal.

Itaque omnibus rebus paratis que compositis  
 Therefore all things being prepared and arranged

ex sententiâ, proficiscitur in Numidiam,  
 according-to determination, he sets-out into Numidia,

magnâ spe civium, cùm propter bonas  
 with great hope of the citizens, as-well on-account-of (his) good  
 artis (artes), tùm maxumè quòd gerebat invictum  
 qualities, as chiefly because he did bear an unconquered  
 animum advorsum divitias: ante id tempus nostræ  
 mind- against riches: before that time our  
 opes contusæ-erant que hostium auctæ  
 resources had been bruised and (those) of the enemies increased  
 avaritiâ magistratum. Sed ubi venit in  
 by the avarice of the magistrates. But when he came into  
 Africam, exercitus Spurii Albini, pro consule,  
 Africa, the army of Spurius Albinus, [acting] for the consul,  
 traditur ei, iners, imbellis, patiens neque  
 is delivered to him, inactive, unwarlike, enduring neither  
 periculi neque laboris, promptior linguâ quàm  
 of danger nor of labour, more-ready in tongue than  
 manu, prædator ex sociis, et ipse præda  
 in hand (action), a plunderer from allies, and itself the prey  
 hostium, habitus sine imperio et modestiâ. Ita  
 of the enemies, held without authority and moderation. Thus  
 plus solitudinis accedebat novo imperatori ex  
 more of anxiety did accrue to the new commander from  
 malis moribus, quàm auxilii aut bonæ spei  
 (their) bad habits, than of aid or of good hope  
 ex copiâ militum. Tamen Metellus statuit  
 from the abundance of the soldiers. However Metellus resolved  
 non attingere bellum priùs quàm  
 not to touch the war before than he might have (had)  
 coëgisset milites laborare disciplinâ  
 compelled the soldiers to labour (under) the discipline of (our)  
 majorum, quamquam mora imminuerat et tempus  
 ancestors, although the delay had diminished both the time  
 æstivorum comitorum, et putabat animos  
 of the summer elections, and he did think the minds  
 civium intentos, expectatione eventi. Nam  
 of the citizens intent-on (him), by expectation of the issue. For  
 Albinus, percussus clade fratris Auli que  
 Albinus, struck with the defeat of (his) brother Aulus and

exercitûs, habebat milites plerumque stativis  
 of the army, did hold the soldiers generally in stationary  
 castris, quantum temporis æstivorum fuit  
 camps, as-much of the time of the summer-quarters [as] he was

in imperio, postquam decreverat non egredi  
 in authority, after-that he had resolved not to go-out

provinciâ, nisi cùm odos aut egestas pabuli  
 from the province, unless when the stench or want of forage

subegerat mutare locum. Sed neque  
 had compelled (him) to change (his) place. But neither

vigiliæ deducebantur militari more; ut  
 the watches were conducted in a military manner; as

lubebat cuique, aberat ab signis.  
 it did please to every-one, he was-absent from (his) standards.

Lixæ, permisti cum militibus, vagabantur  
 The victuallers, intermixed with the soldiers, did stray-about

diu que noctu: et palantes vastare  
 by-day and by night: and roving (were accustomed) to ravage

agros, expugnare villas, certantes agere prædas  
 the lands, to assault the country-seats, vying to drive booties

pecoris et mancipiorum; que mutare ea  
 of cattle and of slaves; and to exchange those

advectitio vino et talibus aliis cum mercatoribus:  
 for imported wine and such other (things) with the merchants:

præterea vendere frumentum datum publicè,  
 besides to sell the corn given publicly (at public

mercari panem indies: postremò, quæcunque  
 expense), to traffic-in bread daily: lastly, whatever

proba ignaviæ que luxuriæ queunt dici aut  
 disgraces of laziness and of luxury can be said or

finigi, cuncta fuêre in illo exercitu, et alia  
 be imagined, all (those) were in that army, and others

ampliùs. Sed comperior Metellum fuisse  
 more (besides). But I find Metellus to have been

non minùs magnum et sapientem virum in eâ  
 not less a great and wise man in that

difficultate, quàm in hostilibus rebus: moderatum (esse)  
 difficulty, than in hostile affairs: to have governed

tantâ temperantiâ inter ambitionem que  
 with so-great moderation between ambition and  
 sævitiam. Namque primum sustulisse  
 severity. For (I find him) first to have withdrawn  
 adjumenta ignaviæ edicto, "quisquam  
 the aids of laziness by an edict, "(that) any-one  
 ne-venderet panem in castris, aut quem alium  
 should-not-sell bread in the camps, or any other  
 coctum cibum; lixæ ne-sequerentur exercitum;  
 cooked food; (that) scullions should not-follow the army;  
 gregarius miles ne-haberet servum aut  
 (that) a common soldier should-not-have a slave or  
 jumentum in castris, neve in agmine:"  
 a beast-of-burthen in the camps, nor in the army  
 statuisset modum artè ceteris;  
 (on the march):" to have appointed a limit closely to the rest;  
 præterea movere castra quotidie transvorsis  
 moreover to move the camps daily by cross  
 itineribus; munire vallo atque fossâ  
 journeys; to fortify (them) with a rampart and with a ditch  
 juxtâ ac-si hostes adessent; ponere  
 equally as-if the enemies might be (were) at-hand; to place  
 crebras vigilias, et ipse cum legatis  
 frequent watches, and himself with the lieutenants  
 circuire eas; item adesse modò in agmine  
 to go-round them; likewise to be-present one-time in the troop (march)  
 in primis, modò in postremis, sæpè in medio,  
 among the first, one-time among the last, often in the middle,  
 ne quisquam egrederetur ordine; uti miles  
 lest any-one might go-out from the rank; that the soldier  
 portaret cibum et arma, cùm incederent  
 should carry food and arms, when they might (did) proceed  
 frequentes signis. Ita  
 numerous [when they marched in a body] with the standards. Thus  
 confirmavit exercitum brevì, magis prohibendo à  
 he strengthened the army shortly, more by preventing from  
 delictis quàm vindicando. Interea ubi Jugurtha  
 transgressions than by punishing. Mean-time when Jugurtha

accepit ex nunciis, quæ Metellus  
 received (heard) from messengers, what (things) Metellus  
 agebat; simul factus certior Romæ de  
 did act; at-the-same-time being made more-sure at Rome of  
 innocentia ejus, diffidere suis rebus, ac  
 the integrity of him, (he began) to distrust in his-own affairs, and  
 tum demum conatus-est facere veram deditionem.  
 then at-last endeavoured to make a true (real) surrender.  
 Igitur mittit legatos ad consulem cum suppliciis,  
 Therefore he sends ambassadors to the consul with entreaties,  
 qui peterent tantummodò vitam ipsi que liberis,  
 who might ask only life for himself and children,  
 dederent omnia alia  
 might surrender [that he would surrender] all other (things)  
 Romano populo. Sed cognitum-erat jam antea  
 to the Roman people. But it had been known already before  
 experimentis Metello, genus Numidarum esse infidum,  
 by trials to Metellus, the race of the Numidians to be faithless,  
 mobili ingenio, avidum novarum rerum.  
 with changeable disposition, eager of new things (revolution).  
 Itaque aggreditur legatos diversos alium ab alio;  
 Therefore he accosts the ambassadors apart one from the other;  
 ac tentando paullatim, postquam cognovit  
 and by trying (them) by degrees, after-that he knew (them)  
 opportunos sibi, persuadet pollicendo multa,  
 convenient for himself, he persuades (them) by promising many  
 uti traderent Jugurtham sibi maxumè  
 (things), that they should deliver Jugurtha to himself particularly  
 vivum, sin id procedat parum, necatum: cæterum  
 alive, but-if that may succeed little (not), killed: but  
 jubet nunciari palam regi, quæ forent  
 he orders to be announced openly to the king, what (things) might be  
 ex voluntate. Deinde ipse procedit  
 according-to (his) will. Afterwards himself proceeds  
 in Numidiam paucis diebus, intento atque infesto  
 into Numidia in a few days, with a prepared and hostile  
 exercitu: ubi tuguria erant plena hominum,  
 army: where the cots were full of men,

pecora (*pl.*) que cultores in agris, contra  
 the cattle and the cultivators (were) in the fields, contrary-to  
 faciem belli: præfecti regis procedebant obvii  
 the appearance of war: the prefects of the king did proceed opposite  
 ex oppidis et mapalibus, parati dare  
 (towards him) out-of the towns and cottages, prepared to give  
 frumentum, portare commeatum, postremò facere  
 corn, to carry provision, finally to do  
 omnia quæ imperarentur. Neque Metellus  
 all (things) which might be ordered. Neither Metellus  
 idcirco minùs incedere munito agmine,  
 therefore (began) the less to proceed with a guarded troop, [Metellus  
 sed pariter  
 did not on that account march with less precaution], but equally  
 ac-si hostes adessent, explorare latè  
 as-if the enemies might be (were) at-hand, to search widely  
 omnia, credere illa signa deditionis ostentui,  
 all (things), to believe those signs of a surrender for a show,  
 et tentare locum insidiis.  
 and to try (sound) the place for ambuscades. [And that the enemy  
 Itaue ipse erat  
 only sought a proper place for an ambushade.] Therefore himself was  
 cum expeditis cohortibus, item delectâ manu  
 with the light-armed cohorts, also with a chosen band  
 funditorum et saggitariorum, apud primos;  
 of slingers and archers, at (among) the first [in front];  
 C. Marius legatus curabat cum  
 Caius Marius (his) lieutenant did take care (was on duty) with  
 equitibus in postremo: dispertiverat  
 the cavalry in the last (the rear): he had shared (divided)  
 auxilios equites tribunis legionum, et præfectis  
 the auxiliary cavalry to the tribunes of the legions, and to the prefects  
 cohortium, in utrumque latus; uti velites  
 of cohorts, unto each side (wing); that the skirmishers  
 permixti cum his, propulsarent equitatus (*pl.*)  
 being mingled with these, might repulse the cavalry  
 hostium, quòcunque accederent. Nam erat  
 of the enemies, wheresoever they might approach. For (there) was

tantus dolus in Jugurthâ, que tanta peritia locorum  
 so-great deceit in Jugurtha, and so-great knowledge of the places  
 et militiæ, ut haberetur in-incerto absens  
 and of warfare, that it might be held doubtful (whether) absent  
 an præsens, gerens pacem an bellum, esset  
 or present, carrying-on peace or war, he might be  
 perniciosior. Erat haud longè ab eo intinere,  
 more-destructive. There was not far from that route,

quo Metellus pergebat, oppidum Numidarum,  
 by which Metellus did proceed, a town of the Numidians,  
 nomine Vacca, forum venalium rerum, maxumè  
 by name Vacca, a mart of saleable things, most  
 celebratum totius regni; ubi multi mortales Italici  
 frequented of the whole kingdom; where many mortals of the Italian  
 generis consueverant et incolere et mercari.  
 race had been accustomed both to dwell and to purchase.

Huc consul, gratiâ simul tentandi,  
 Hither the consul (went), for the sake at-the-same-time of trying (it),  
 et si opportunitates loci paterentur, imposuit  
 and if opportunities of the place might suffer (it), he placed  
 præsidium: præterea imperavit comportare  
 a garrison: moreover he ordered (them) to bring  
 frumentum, et alia, quæ forent usui bello:  
 corn, and other (things), which might be for use in war:

ratus id, quod res monebat, frequentiam  
 having thought that, which the affair did advise, the assemblage

negotiatorum et comestuum juvaturum  
 of merchants and of provisions [there] about-to-assist

exercitum, et jam fore  
 the army, [would aid his army], and now to be about-to-be

munimento rebus paratis.  
 for a defence [and would now be a defence] for the things prepared.

Inter hæc negotia, Jugurtha modò mittere  
 Among these affairs, Jugurtha now (began) to send

impensiùs supplices legatos, orare pacem:  
 more-earnestly suppliant ambassadors, to entreat peace:

dedere omnia Metello præter suam vitam  
 to surrender all (things) to Metellus except his life



que liberorum. Quos consul dimittebat  
and (that) of (his) children. Whom the consul did dismiss

item domum, uti priores, illectos ad  
also home, [and] as the former, being allured [by him] to

proditionem: neque abnuere neque polliceri  
treachery: (he appeared) neither to refuse nor to promise

regi pacem quam postulabat, et, inter eas  
to the king the peace which he did require, and, among those

moras, expectare promissa legatorum.  
delays, to await the promises of the ambassadors.

Ubi Jugurtha composuit dicta Metelli cum  
When Jugurtha compared the words of Metellus with (his)  
factis, ac animadvertit se tentari suis artibus;  
deeds, and perceived himself to be tried by his-own arts;  
quippe cui pax nunciabatur verbis, cæterùm  
forsooth to whom peace was announced in words, but

re asperrium bellum erat, maxuma  
in the thing (in reality) the roughest war was, [for] a very-great

urbs alienata, ager cognitus hostibus, animi  
city [was] alienated, the land known to the enemies, the minds

popularium tentati; coactus  
(affections) of (his) country-men tried [tampered with]; compelled

necessitudine rerum, statuit certare armis. Igitur,  
by the necessity of things, he determined to contend by arms. Therefore,

itinere hostium explorato, adductus in spem  
the route of the enemies being reconnoitred, being led into the hope

victoriæ ex opportunitate loci, parat copias  
of victory from the convenience of the place, he prepares forces

omnium generum quàm-maximas potest, ac antevenit  
of all kinds as-great-as he is-able, and outstrips

exercitum Metelli per occultos tramites. Flumen,  
the army of Metellus by concealed by-paths. A river,

nomine Muthul, oriens à meridie, erat in eâ  
by name Muthul, rising from the south, was in that

parte Numidiæ, quam Atherbal possederat in  
part of Numidia, which Adherbal had possessed in

divisione; à quo mons aberat fermè viginti  
the division; from which a mountain was-distant nearly twenty

**millia passuum, pari tractu,**  
 thousands of paces, in an equal [parallel] direction [with the river],  
**vastus ab natura et humano cultu;**  
 desert from nature and human cultivation; [and uncultivated  
 sed collis oriebatur quasi ex medio eo,  
 by man]; but a hill did arise as-if from the middle-of it,  
**pertinens in immensum, vestitus oleastro ac**  
 reaching unto an immense (extent), clothed with wild-olive and  
**myrtetis, que aliis generibus arborum, quæ**  
 with myrtle-groves, and with other kinds of trees, which  
**gignuntur arido atque arenoso humi. Autem**  
 are produced in a dry and sandy (soil) on-the-ground. But  
**media planities deserta, panuria aquæ,**  
 the middle plain (was) desert, [as there was] a scarcity of water,  
**præter loca propinqua flumini: ea consita**  
 except the places near to the river: those planted  
**arbustis frequentabantur pecore atque cultoribus.**  
 with shrubs were frequented by cattle and by husbandmen.  
**Igitur Jugurtha, acie suorum extenuatâ,**  
 Therefore Jugurtha, the line of his (men) being lengthened,  
**consedit in eo colle, quem docuimus**  
 encamped in that hill, which we have taught (shown) (to be)  
**porrectam transverso itinere: præfecit**  
 extended in a transverse way (direction): he appointed  
**Bomilcarem elephantis et parti pedestrium copiarum;**  
 Bomilcar to the elephants and to part of the foot forces;  
**que edocet eum quæ ageret: ipse propior**  
 and instructs him what (things) he should do: himself nearer  
**montem collocat suos cum omni equitatu et**  
 the mountain places his (men) with all the cavalry and  
**delectis peditibus: dein circumiens singulas turmas**  
 [chosen] foot: then going-round each-of the companies  
**et manipulos, monet. atque obtestatur, uti, memores**  
 and divisions, he reminds and beseeches, that, mindful  
**pristinæ virtutis et victoriæ, defendant**  
 of (their) ancient valour and victory, they may defend  
**sese que suum regnum ab avaritiâ Romanorum:**  
 themselves and his kingdom from the avarice of the Romans.

certamen fore cum his quos miserint (*perf. sub.*  
the contest to be about-to-be with those whom they may have sent (they

victos antea sub jugum: ducem, non animum,  
sent) conquered before under the yoke: the general, not the mind,

mutatum-(esse) illis: omnia quæ decuerint  
to have been changed for them: all (things) which may have been-fit

(*perf. sub.*) ab imperatore, provisa-(esse) suis;  
[to provide] from a commander, to have been provided for his (men);

locum (esse) superiorem, consererent manum.  
the place (ground) to be superior, they should join hand (battle),

uti prudentes cum imperitis, ne  
as skilful (persons) with unskilful, [in the localities], not (as)

pauciores cum pluribus, aut rudes cum  
the fewer with the mere-(numerous), or the ignorant with

melioribus bello: proinde essent parati  
the better [skilled] in war: wherefore they should be prepared

que intenti, signo dato, invadere Romanos: illum  
and ready, a signal being given, to attack the Romans: that

diem aut confirmaturum omnes labores et  
day either (to be) about-to-establish all (their) labours and

victorias, aut fore initium maxumarum  
victories, or to be about-to-be the beginning of the greatest

ærumnarum. Ad hoc commonefacere  
miseries. To this (besides) (he began) to remind

sui beneficii, et ostentare eum ipsum  
(each) of his kindness, and to point-out that (person) himself

aliis, viritim, uti extulerat quemque pecuniâ  
[to others,] individually, as he had exalted each by money

aut honore ob militare facinus: postremò,  
or by honour on-account-of a military exploit: finally,

excitare alium alio modo, pollicendo pro  
to rouse another in another manner, by promising according-to

ingenio cujusque, minitando, obtestando: cùm  
the disposition of every-one, by often-threatening, by beseeching: when

interim Metellus, ignarus hostium, degrediens  
[in the mean-time] Metellus, ignorant of the enemies, coming-down

monte, conspicatur cum exercitu. Primò,  
from the mountain, espies (him) with (his) army. First,

dubius quidnam insolita facies ostenderet, (nam  
 doubtful what the unusual appearance might display, (for  
 equi que Numidæ consederant inter virgulta,  
 the horses and the Numidians had encamped among the shrubs,  
 neque planè occultati humilitate arborum, et  
 neither quite concealed by the lowness of the trees, and  
 tamen incerti quidnam esset, ipsi atque  
 however uncertain what it might be, themselves and  
 militaria signa obscurati eùm naturâ loci,  
 the military standards being concealed as-well by the nature of the place,  
 tùm dolo), dein insidiis cognitis brevè,  
 as by stratagem), then the ambuscades being known shortly,  
 constituit agmen paulisper. Ibi ordinibus  
 he halted the troop (army) a-little. There the ranks  
 commutatis, instruxit aciem triplicibus  
 being changed, he arrayed (his) line with triple  
 subsidiis, in dextro latere, quod erat proximum  
 reserves, on the right side (flank), which was nearest  
 hostes: dispartit funditores et sagittarios  
 the enemies: he divides the slingers and archers  
 inter manipulos; locat omnem equitatum in  
 among the companies; places all the cavalry in  
 cornibus; ac cohortatus milites pauca  
 the wings; and having exhorted the soldiers a few (words)  
 pro tempore, deducit aciem in planum,  
 according-to the time, he leads-down the line into the level (ground)  
 principiis transvorsis sicuti  
 the van-guards (being led) across [the front being changed] so-as  
 instruxerat. Sed ubi animadvertit Numidas  
 he had arrayed (them). But when he perceived the Numidians  
 quietos, neque degredi colle, veritus ex  
 quiet, nor to come-down from the hill, having feared from  
 tempore anni et inopiâ aquæ, ne exercitus  
 the time of the year and the want of water, lest the army  
 conficeretur siti, præmisit legatum Rutilium  
 might be spent with thirst, he sent-forward the lieutenant Rutilius  
 cum expeditis cohortibus et parte equitum, ad  
 with the light-armed cohorts and part of the cavalry, to

flumen, uti antecaperet locum castris,  
the river, that he might take-previously a place for the camps,

existumans hostes remoratorios suum iter  
thinking the enemies about-to-retard his march

crebro impetu, et transversis præliis,  
by frequent assault, and indirect battles, [and flank attacks,]

et quoniam diffident armis, tentaturos  
and since they might distrust to arms, (to be) about-to-try

lassitudinem et sitim militum.

the fatigue and thirst of the soldiers. [And since he (Jugurtha)

distrusted a battle, he was about to try the effects of fatigue and thirst on

Dein ipse procedere paulatim,  
our soldiers.] Afterwards himself (began) to advance gradually,

pro re atque loco, sicuti descenderat  
according-to the affair and the place, just-as he had descended

monte: habere Marium post principia;  
from the mountain: to have Marius behind the vanguards;

ipse esse cum equitibus sinistrae alæ, qui  
himself [Metellus] to be with the cavalry of the left wing, who

facti-erant principes in agmine.  
had been made chiefs (the van) on the troop (on the march).

At ubi Jugurtha videt extremum agmen Metelli  
But when Jugurtha sees the last troop of Metellus

prætergressum suos primos, occupat montem  
having passed his-own first, he occupies the mountain

præsidio quasi duûm millium peditum, quâ  
with a guard as-if (about) of two thousand infantry, where

Metellus descenderat: ne fortè adversariis  
Metellus had descended: lest by-chance, the enemies

cedentibus foret receptui, ac post munimento:  
retreating it might be for a refuge, and afterwards for a defence:

dein, signo dato repente, invadit hostes. Alii  
then, a signal being given suddenly, he attacks the enemies. Other

Numidæ cædere postremos: pars tentare  
Numidians (began) to strike the last: part to try (them)

à sinistra ac dextrâ: infensi adesse, atque  
from the left and right: hostile to be-at-hand, and

instare : conturbare ordines Romanorum omnibus  
to press-on : to disturb the ranks of the Romans in all

locis ; quorum etiam qui fuerant obvii  
places ; of whom even (those) who had been opposite (opposed)

hostibus firmioribus animis, ludificati incerto  
to the enemies with more-strong minds, baffled by the uncertain

prælio, ipsi modò sauciabantur eminùs, neque  
battle, themselves now were wounded at-a-distance, nor

erat copia contrà feriundi aut  
was there plenty (the means) on-the-other-hand of striking (them) or

conserendi manum. Equites docti jam  
of joining hand (battle). The cavalry being taught already

antè ab Jugurthâ, recipiebant sese  
before by Jugurtha, did betake themselves (did retreat)

non confertim, neque in unum, ubicunque turma  
not closely, nor in one (body), whenever a company

Romanorum coeperat insequi, sed quàm-maximè  
of the Romans had begun to pursue, but as-much-as-possible

divorsi, alius alio. Ita priores  
apart, the other (one) from the other. Thus (being) superior

numero, si nequiverant detertere hostes à  
in number, if they had been-unable to deter the enemies from

persequendo, circumveniebant disiectos ab  
pursuing, they did surround (them) scattered from

tergo aut lateribus : sin collis opportunior  
the back [rear] or the sides : but-since the hill (was) more-convenient

fugæ quàm campi fuerant, eà verò equi  
for flight than the plains had been, there truly the horses

Numidarum consueti evadere facile  
of the Numidians being accustomed (were able) to escape easily

inter virgulta ; asperitas et insolentia loci  
among the shrubs ; the roughness and unusualness of the place

retinebat nostros. Cæterum facies totius  
did keep-back our (men). But the appearance of the whole

negotii varia, incerta, fœda, atque miserabilis ;  
business (was) variable, uncertain, foul, and wretched ;

pars dispersi à suis, cedere, alii insequi ;  
part scattered from their-own, (began) to give-way, others to pursue ;

observare neque signa neque ordines : ubi  
to regard neither standards nor ranks : where

periculum ceperat quemque, resistere ac propulsare  
danger had taken each, to resist and to repulse

ibi : arma, tela, equi, viri, hostes, cives  
there : arms, weapons, horses, men, enemies, citizens [were]

permixti ; nihil agi consilio neque imperio ;  
intermingled ; nothing to be acted by counsel nor by command ;

fors regere omnia. Itaque multum diei  
chance to govern all (things). Therefore much of the day

processerat, cùm etiam tum eventus erat in incerto.  
had advanced, when even then the issue was in a doubtful

Denique, omnibus languidis labore et  
(state). Finally, all (being) faint by labour and

æstu, ubi Metellus videt Numidas instare minùs,  
by heat, when Metellus sees the Numidians to press-on less,

conducit milites paullatim in unum ;  
he leads-together the soldiers gradually into one (body) ;

restituit ordines, et collocat quatuor legionarias  
he restores the ranks, and places four legionary

cohortes advorsum pedites hostium. Magna  
cohorts against the foot-soldiers of the enemies. A great

pars eorum fessa consederat superioribus locis.  
part of them wearied had sat-down on the higher places.

Simul orare, hortari milites,  
At-the-same-time (he began) to beseech, to exhort the soldiers,

“Ne-deficerent, neu paterentur fugientes  
“(That) they should not-fail, nor should suffer fleeing

hostes vincere : neque castra neque ullum  
enemies to conquer (them) : neither camps nor any

munimentum esse illis, quò cedentes  
fortification to be for them, whither yielding

tenderent : omnia sita in armis.”  
they might proceed-to : all (things to be) placed in arms.”

Sed nec quidem erat Jugurtha quietus interea ;  
But neither [indeed] was Jugurtha quiet mean-time ;

circuire, hortari, renovare prælium, et  
(he began) to go-about, to exhort, to renew the battle, and

ipse cum delectis tentare omnia; subvenire  
himself with chosen (men) to try all (things); to relieve

suis; instare hostibus dubiis, retinere,  
to his-own (men); to press-on to the enemies doubtful, to retain

quos cognoverat firmos, pugnando eminus.  
(those) whom he had known firm, for fighting at-a-distance.

Duo imperatores, summi viri, certabant eo  
The two commanders, very-great men, did contend in that

modo inter se: ipsi pares, ceterum  
manner between themselves: themselves equal, but

disparibus opibus. Nam virtus militum erat  
with unequal resources. For bravery of soldiers was

Metello, locus advorsus: omnia alia opportuna  
to Metellus, the place adverse: all other (things) convenient

Jugurthæ, præter milites. Denique,  
[favourable] to Jugurtha, except (his) soldiers. Finally,

ubi Romani intelligunt nequo perfugium esse  
when the Romans understand neither a refuge to be

sibi, neque copiam pugnandi fieri ab  
for themselves, nor plenty (means) of fighting to be made by

hoste, et jam erat vesper diei, evadunt  
the enemy, and now it was the evening of the day, they depart

advorso colle, sicuti  
on the opposite hill, [they charge up the hill,] as

præceptum-fuerat. Loco amisso, Numidæ  
it had been instructed (them). The place being lost, the Numidians

fusi que fugati, pauci interiire: velocitas,  
(were) routed and put-to-flight, a few perished: (their) swiftness,

et regio ignara hostibus tutata-sunt plerosque.  
and a country unknown to the enemies protected most.

Interea Bomilcar, quem diximus supra præfectum  
Meantime Bomilcar, whom we have said above to have been set-over

elephantis et parti pedestrium copiarum ab  
to the elephants and to part of the foot forces by

Jugurthâ, deducit suos paullatim in æquum  
Jugurtha, leads down his (men) gradually into the level

locum, ubi Rutilius prætergressus-est eum; ac  
place, when Rutilius passed-by him; and



quietus exornat aciem, uti res postulabat, dum  
 tranquil arrays (his) line, as the affair did require, while

legatus pergit festinans ad flumen, quò  
 the lieutenant proceeds hastening to the river, whither

præmissus-erat; neque remittit explorare quid  
 he had been sent-before; nor does he relax to examine what

hostis ageret ubique. Postquam accepit  
 the enemy might do every-where. After-that he received (heard)

Rutilium consedissee jam, et vacuum  
 Rutilius to have encamped already, and (to be) empty (free from

animo, que simul clamorem augeri  
 anxiety) in mind, and at-the-same-time the shout to be increased

ex prælio Jugurthæ, veritus ne legatus, re  
 from the battle of Jugurtha, having feared lest the lieutenant, the affair

cognitâ, foret auxilio suis laborantibus,  
 being known, might be for aid to his-own [hard-pressed] (people),

porrigit aciem latius, quo obficeret  
 he stretches (his) line more-widely, [by which he might hinder

itineri hostium quam diffidens virtuti  
 the march of the enemy] which distrusting to the valour of (his)

militum, statuerat artè; que eo modo procedit  
 soldiers, he had arranged closely; and in that manner he proceeds

ad castra Rutilii. Romani animadvertunt  
 to the camps of Rutilius. The Romans perceive

magnam vim pulveris ex-improviso; nam  
 a great force (quantity) of dust suddenly; for

ager consitus arbustis prohibebat prospectum. Et  
 the land planted with shrubs did prevent the view. And

primò rati aridam humum agitari vento;  
 first having thought the dry ground to be disturbed by the wind;

pòst, ubi vident manere æquabilem, et  
 afterwards, when they see (it) to remain equal, and

appropinquare magis que magis, sicuti acies  
 to approach more and more, as if the line [of the

movebatur, re cognitâ, properantes  
 army] was moved, the affair being known, hastening

capiunt arma, ac consistunt pro castris, sicuti  
 they take arms, and stand before the camps, as

imperabatur. Deinde, ubi ventum-est propius,  
it was ordered. Afterwards, when it was come nearer,

concurritur utrimque magno clamore. Numidæ  
it is rushed on-both-sides with a great shout. The Numidians

remorati tantummodo dum putant auxilium  
having delayed (stood) only whilst they think aid

in elephantis, postquam vident eos impeditos  
in the elephants, after-that they see them hindered

ramis arborum, atque ita disiectos circumveniri,  
by the branches of the trees, and thus scattered to be surrounded,

faciunt fugam: ac plerique, armis abjectis,  
they make flight: and most, (their) arms being thrown-away,

abeunt integri auxilio collis, aut noctis,  
depart whole (unhurt) by the aid of the hill, or of the night,

quæ jam aderat. Quatuor elephantis capti,  
which now was at-hand. Four elephants (were) taken,

omnes reliqui, quadraginta numero, interfecti.  
all the rest, forty in number, (were) killed.

At quanquam Romani erant fessi itinere, atque  
But although the Romans were wearied by the journey, and

opere castrorum, et læti que prælio, tamen  
by the work of the camps, and glad also by the battle, however

quod Metellus morabatur amplius opinione,  
because Metellus did delay more (than) opinion,

procedunt obviam  
[longer than they thought he ought,] they advance towards (him)

instructi que intenti: nam dolus, Numidarum  
arrayed and prepared: for the deceit of the Numidians

patiebatur nihil languidi neque remissi.  
did suffer nothing of faint nor of relaxed (conduct).

Ac primò, nocte obscurâ, postquam erant  
And first, the night (being) dark, after-that they were

haud procul inter se, alteri  
not far between themselves, [the Romans,] the others (began)

facere formidinem et tumultum simul apud  
to make terror and tumult at-the-same-time among

alteros strepitu,  
the others by the noise, [they each alarmed one another by the noise

velut hostes adventare: et  
 and tumult,] as-if the enemies (began) to come-up: and  
 miserabile facinus admissum (esset), pænè  
 a wretched deed would have been committed, almost  
 imprudentiâ, ni equites præmissi utrimque  
 by ignorance, unless cavalry being sent-forward on-either-side  
 exploravissent rem. Igitur pro  
 might have (had) examined the affair. Therefore instead-of  
 metu, gaudium exortum (est) repente; milites læti  
 fear, joy arose suddenly; the soldiers joyful  
 appellant alius alium, edocent acta,  
 accost another (one) another, they inform [tell] (their) deeds,  
 atque audiunt: quisque fert sua fortia  
 and hear (others'): every-one carries (extols) his-own brave  
 facta ad coelum. Quippe humanæ res habent  
 deeds to heaven. Forsooth human affairs have  
 sese ita: in victoriâ licet vel ignavis  
 themselves thus: in victory it is lawful or (even) to the cowardly  
 gloriari: advorsæ res detrectant etiam  
 to boast: adverse things detract (sink the courage of) even  
 bonos. Metellus moratus quadriduo (*sing.*) in  
 the good. Metellus having delayed four-days in  
 iisdem castris, reficit saucios cum curâ: donat  
 the same camps, refreshes the wounded with care: he presents  
 meritos in prælio more  
 (rewards those) having deserved-well in the battle in the manner  
 militiæ; laudat universos in concione, atque agit  
 of warfare; he praises all in an assembly, and acts  
 gratias: hortatur, gerant parem  
 (returns) thanks: he exhorts (them), [that] they may bear an equal  
 animum ad cætera, quæ sunt levia:  
 mind (spirit) to the rest, which are light (things):  
 pugnatum (esse) satis jam pro victoriâ, reliquos  
 to have been fought sufficiently now for victory, the rest  
 labores fore pro prædâ. Tamen misit  
 (remaining) labours to be about-to-be for spoil. However he sent  
 interim transfugas et alios opportunos  
 mean-time deserters and others convenient (persons)

exploratum ubi gentium Jugurtha,  
 to examine where of nations (where-in-the-world) Jugurtha  
 aut quid agitare; ne esset cum  
 (might be), or what he might act; whether he might be with  
 paucis, an haberet exercitum; ut, victus,  
 a few, or might have an army; how, being conquered,  
 gereret sese. At ille receperat sese in  
 he might conduct himself. But he had betaken himself into  
 saltuosa loca, et munita naturâ; que ibi coge-  
 woody places, and fortified by nature; and there did collect  
 exercitum ampliorem numero hominum, sed hebetem  
 an army very-copious in number of men, but dull  
 que infirmum, cultorem agri ac pecoris magis  
 and weak, a cultivator of the land and cattle more  
 quàm belli. Id eveniebat eâ gratiâ, quòd  
 than of war. That did happen from that favour (account), because  
 nemo omnium Numidarum sequitur regem ex fugâ  
 no-one of all the Numidians follows the king from flight  
 præter regios equites: discedunt eò, quò  
 except the royal cavalry: they depart thither, whither  
 animus cujusque fert: neque id ducitur  
 the mind of every-one carries (him): neither that is led (deemed)  
 flagitium militiæ: ita mores habent se. Igitur  
 a crime of warfare: thus manners have themselves. Therefore  
 ubi Metellus videt animum regis etiam tum esse  
 when Metellus sees the mind of the king even then to be  
 ferocem; bellum renovari, quod posset non  
 fierce; the war to be renewed, which might be-able not  
 geri nisi ex lubidine illius, præterea  
 to be carried-on unless from the pleasure of him, [Jugurtha,] besides  
 iniquum certamen sibi cum hostibus,  
 a disadvantageous contest for himself [Metellus] with the enemies,  
 illos vinci minore detrimento quam suos  
 them to be conquered with less loss than his-own (soldiers)  
 vincere,  
 to conquer, [that he (Metellus) would suffer a greater loss when victor,  
 statuit bellum  
 than the enemy would when vanquished,] he resolved the war

gerundum non praeliis, neque acie, sed  
to be carried-on not by skirmishes, nor in-open-battle, but

alio more. Itaque pergit in opulentissima  
in another manner. Therefore he proceeds into the most-wealthy

loca Numidiæ; vastat agros; capit multa castella  
places of Numidia; ravages the lands; takes many castles

et oppida, munita temerè, aut sine præsidio,  
and towns, fortified rashly (in a hurry), or without garrison,

que incendit, jubet puberes interfici; omnia  
and burns (them), orders the adults to be killed; all

alia esse prædam militum. Eâ formidine  
other (things) to be the booty of the soldiers. From that terror

multi mortales dediti obsides Romanis:  
many mortals (were) surrendered (as) hostages to the Romans:

frumentum, et alia quæ forent usui,  
corn, and other (things) which might be for use, (were)

præbita affatim: præsidium impositum ubicunque  
afforded abundantly: a garrison (was) placed wherever

res postulabat. Quæ negotia terrebant  
the thing did require [one]. Which transactions did affright

regem multo magis quàm prælium malè pugnatum  
the king by much more than the battle ill fought

ab suis. Quippe, omnis spes cujus erat  
by his-own (men). Forsooth (he), all the hope of whom was

sita in fugâ, cogeatur sequi; et qui  
placed in flight, was compelled to follow; and (he) who

nequiverat defendere sua loca  
had been-unable to defend his-own [advantageous] places (was forced)

genere bellum in alienis.  
to carry-on war in others' (places). [In places chosen by another.]

Tamen capit consilium quod videbatur optimum  
However he takes the counsel which did seem best

ex inopiâ: jubet plerumque exercitum opperiri  
from necessity: he orders most-of the army to await (him)

in eisdem locis; ipse sequitur Metellum cum  
in the same places; himself follows Metellus with

delectis equitibus: ignoratus  
chosen cavalry: unknown [unobserved by the Romans] by (his)

nocturnis et aviis itineribus, aggreditur repente  
 nightly and pathless routes, he attacks suddenly

Romanos palantes. Plerique eorum inermes  
 the Romans straggling. Most of them (being) unarmed

cadunt, multi capiuntur: nemo omnium profugit  
 fall, many are taken: no-one of all escaped

intactus; et Numidæ discedunt in proximos  
 untouched; and the Numidians depart into the nearest

colles, sicuti jussi-erant, prius quam  
 hills, so-as they had been ordered, before than it (they)

subveniretur ex castris. Interim rebus Metelli  
 might be assisted from the camps. Mean-time the affairs of Metellus

cognitis, ingens gaudium ortum (est) Romæ: ut  
 being known, great joy arose at Rome: how

gereret que se et exercitum more  
 he might (did) conduct both himself and the army in the manner

majorum; in adverso loco, tamen,  
 of (our) ancestors; (though) in an adverse place, however,

fuisset (*plup. sub.*) victor virtute;  
 he might have (had) been a conqueror by (his) valour; might (did)

potiretur agro hostium; coëgisset  
 possess with the land of the enemies; might have (had) compelled

Jugurtham, magnificum ex socordiâ Auli, habere  
 Jugurtha, splendid from the laziness of Aulus, to have

spem salutis in solitudine aut fugâ. Itaque  
 hope of safety in solitude or in flight. Therefore

senatus decernere supplicia immortalibus  
 the senate (determined) to decree thanksgivings to the immortal

Diis ob ea feliciter acta: civitas,  
 Gods on-account-of those (things) fortunately transacted: the state,

trepida antea, et sollicita de eventu belli,  
 fearful before, and anxious about the issue of the war, (began)

agere læta: fama esse præclara de Metello.  
 to act joyful: report to be illustrious about Metellus.

Igitur intentior eo, niti ad  
 Therefore more prepared on that (account), (he began) to strive to (for)

victoriam: festinare omnibus modis; tamen cavere,  
 victory: to hasten in all manners; however to beware,

necubi fieret opportunus hosti;  
 lest-any-where he might become convenient to the enemy; [give an  
 meminisse  
 advantageous opportunity to the enemy;] to have remembered (to re-  
 -invidiam sequi post gloriam. Ita quo  
 member) envy to follow after glory. Thus by what  
 erat clarior, eò (erat)  
 (by how much) he was more-illustrious, by that (by so much) (he was)  
 magis anxius: neque prædari effuso  
 more anxious: nor (did he permit) to plunder with a scattered  
 exercitu post insidias Jugurthæ. Ubi erat opus  
 army after the snares of Jugurtha. When there was need  
 frumento aut pabulo, cohortes agitabant  
 with (of) corn or with forage, the cohorts did carry-on  
 præsidium cum omni equitatu: ipse ducebat partem  
 guard with all the cavalry: himself did lead part  
 exercitûs, Marius reliquos. Sed ager vastabatur  
 of the army, Marius the rest. But the land was ravaged  
 magis igni, quàm prædâ. Faciebant castra duobus  
 more by fire, than by plunder. They did make camps in two  
 locis haud longè inter se. Ubi erat opus  
 places not far between themselves. When there was need  
 vi, cuncti aderant: ceterum agebant  
 with (of) force, all were at-hand: but they did act  
 divorsi, quò fuga atque formido crescerent  
 apart, in-order-that the flight and terror might increase  
 latiùs. Eò tempore Jugurtha sequi  
 more-widely. In that time Jugurtha (began) to follow  
 per colles; quærere tempus aut locum  
 through (over) the hills; to seek a time or place  
 pugnæ; corrumpere pabulum et fontes aquarum,  
 of battle; to spoil the forage and fountains of waters,  
 quorum erat penuria, quâ audierat hostem  
 of which there was a scarcity, where he had heard the enemy  
 venturum; ostendere se modò Metello interdum  
 about-to-come; to show himself one-time to Metellus, sometimes  
 Mario; tentare postremos in agmine,  
 to Marius; to try (attack) the last on the troop (march),

ac regredi statim in colles;  
[to attack the rear,] and to return immediately unto the hills;

rursus minitari aliis, pòst aliis; neque facere  
again to threaten to others, afterwards to others; neither make

prælium, neque pati otium; tantummodò  
battle, nor to suffer quietness; only

retinere hostem ab incepta. Ubi  
to keep-back the enemy from (his) undertakings. When

Romanus imperator videt se fatigari dolis,  
the Roman commander sees himself to be harassed by stratagems,

neque copiam pugnandi fieri ab hoste,  
nor opportunity of fighting to be made by the enemy,

statuit oppugnare magnam urbem, nomine Zama,  
he resolved to assault a great city, by name Zama,

et arcem regni in eâ parte quâ erat sita;  
and the citadel of the kingdom in that part in which it was situate;

ratus id, quod negotium poscebat,  
having considered that, which the business did require, [that]

Jugurtham venturum auxilio suis  
Jugurtha about-to-come [would come] for aid to his-own

laborantibus, que prælium fore ibi.  
labouring (hard pressed), and a battle to be about-to-be there.

At ille, edoctus à perfugis quæ  
[Would be there.] But he, instructed by deserters what (things)

parabantur, antevenit Metellum magnis itineribus;  
were prepared, outstrips Metellus by great marches;

hortatur oppidanos defendant moenia, perfugis  
exhorts the townsmen (that) they may defend the walls, deserters

additis auxilio, quod genus erat firmissimum  
being added .for aid, which kind (of men) was the most-firm

ex copiis regis, quia nequibat fallere.  
out-of the forces of the king, because it was-unable to deceive (him).

Præterea pollicetur semet adfore in tempore  
Besides he promises himself to be about-to-be-present in time

cum exercitu. Ita rebus compositis, discedit in  
with the army. Thus affairs being arranged, he departs into

loca quàm-maximè occulta; ac paullo pòst, Marium  
places as-much-as-possible hidden; and a little after, Marius



missum Siccam ex itinere, frumentatum cum  
being sent (to) Sicca out-of the march, to provide-corn with  
paucis cohortibus; quod oppidum primum omnium  
a few cohorts; which town first of all

post malam pugnam defecerat ab rege.  
after the bad (unsuccessful) battle had revolted from the king.

Eo pergit noctu cum delectis equitibus, et  
Thither he proceeds by night with chosen cavalry, and

Romanis jam egredientibus, facit pugnam in  
the Romans already going-out, he makes battle in

portâ: simul hortatur Siccenses magnâ  
the gate: at-the-same-time he exhorts the Siccenses with a great

voce, "Uti circumveniant cohortes ab tergo;  
voice, "That they may surround the cohorts from the rear;

fortunam dare illis casum præclari facinoris, si  
fortune to give to them a chance of a noble exploit, if

fecerint id; postea sese acturum  
they shall have done that; afterwards himself (to be) about-to-spend

ætatem in regno, illos in libertate sine  
(his) age in the kingdom, them in liberty without

metu." Ac ni Marius properavisset  
fear." And unless Marius might have (had) hastened

inferre signa, atque evadere oppido,  
to bear-forward the standards, and to escape from the town,

profectò cuncti aut magna pars Siccensium  
certainly all or a great part of the Siccenses

mutavissent fidem; Numidæ agunt sese  
would have changed fidelity; the Numidians act (conduct) themselves

tantâ mobilitate. Sed Jugurthini milites  
with so-great fickleness. But the Jugurthine soldiers

sustentati paullisper ab rege, postquam hostes  
being supported a-little-while by the king, after-that the enemies

urgent majore vi, paucis amissis, profugi  
press (them) with greater force, a few being lost, escaping

discedunt. Marius pervenit ad Zamam. Id oppidum  
depart. Marius arrived to Zama. That town

situm in campo, munitum-erat magis opere  
situate in a plain, had been fortified more by work (art)

quàm naturâ, egens nullius idoneæ rei, opulentum  
than by nature, wanting of no suitable thing, plentiful

armis que viris. Igitur Metellus, rebus paratis  
in arms and in men. Therefore Metellus, things being prepared

pro tempore atque loco, circumvenit cuncta  
according-to time and place, surrounds all

mœnia exercitu; imperat legatis, ubi quisque  
the walls with the army; commands to the lieutenants, where every-one

curaret: deinde, signo dato, ingens  
should take-care (command): afterwards, a signal being given, a great

clamor simul oritur undique. Neque  
shout at-the-same-time arises from-every-side. Nor [does]

ea res terret Numidas; manent infensi que  
that thing dismay the Numidians; they remain hostile and

intenti sine tumultu: prælium incipitur. Romani  
prepared without confusion: the battle is begun. The Romans

pugnare, quisque pro ingenio, pars  
(began) to fight, every-one according-to (his) ability, part

eminus glande aut lapidibus;  
from-a-distance with acorn (pellet) or with stones; [by throwing

alii evadere, alii succedere  
leaden balls and stones;] others to retire, others to succeed (them)

ac modò suffodere murum, modò aggredi  
and one-time to undermine the wall, one-time to attack (it)

scalis; cupere facere prælium in manibus.  
with ladders; to desire to make battle in hands (hand to

Oppidani contra ea volvere saxa  
hand). The townsmen against those (things) (began) to roll stones

in proximos, mittere sudes, pila, præterea  
on the nearest, to send (throw) stakes, darts, besides

tædum mistam pice et sulphure, ardentia. Sed  
torch-wood mingled with pitch and sulphur, burning. But

timor animi ne quidem muniverat satis illos, qui  
fear of mind not even had fortified sufficiently those, who

manserant procul. Nam jacula emissa tormentis  
had remained at-a-distance. For javelins sent from engines

aut manu vulnerabant plerosque, que boni  
or the hand did wound most, and the good (brave)

atque ignavi erant pari periculo, sed impari  
 and the inactive were in equal danger, but with unequal  
 famâ. Dum certatur sic apud Zamam, Jugurtha  
 fame. Whilst it is contended thus at Zama, Jugurtha  
 ex-improviso invadit castra hostium cum magnâ  
 suddenly attacks the camps of the enemies with a great  
 manu, qui erant in præsidio remissis et  
 band, (those) who were on guard (being) negligent and  
 expectantibus omnia magis quàm prælium,  
 expecting all (things) more than a battle,  
 irrumpit portam. At nostri perculsi repentino  
 he bursts the gate. But our (men) struck with sudden  
 metu, consulunt quisque sibi pro  
 fear, consult every-one for himself according-to (his)  
 moribus: alii fugere; alii capere arma:  
 habits: others (began) to flee; others to take arms:  
 magna pars vulnerati, aut occisi. Ceterùm  
 a great part (were) wounded, or slain. But  
 ex omni multitudine non ampliùs quadraginta,  
 out-of all the multitude not more (than) forty,  
 memores Romani nominis, grege facto,  
 mindful of the Roman name, a flock (body) being formed,  
 cepere locum paullò editiorem quàm alii;  
 took a place (station) a little more-elevated than the others;  
 neque quiverunt depelli inde maxumâ vi;  
 nor were they-able to be beaten-off thence by the greatest force;  
 sed pauci remittere tela missa eminus,  
 but the few (began) to throw-back the darts sent from-a-distance,  
 frustrati minùs in pluribus:  
 being disappointed less in the more (numerous): [their missiles  
 were more effective against the more numerous assailants:]  
 Numidæ accessissent propiùs, ibi verò  
 the Numidians might have approached nearer, there truly  
 ostendere virtutem, et cædere, fundere,  
 (they began) to show (their) valour, and to cut, to rout,  
 atque fugare eos maxumâ vi. Interim cum  
 and to put-to-flight them with the greatest force. Mean-time when

Metellus gereret rem acerrumè, accepit  
 Metellus might (did) carry-on the affair most-vigorously, he heard  
 hostilem clamorem et tumultum à tergo: deinde  
 a hostile shout and tumult from the rear: then (his)  
 equo conorso, animadvertit fugam fieri advorsum  
 horse being turned, he perceived a flight to be made toward  
 se quæ res indicabat esse populares.  
 himself, which thing did show (them) to be countrymen. [His

Igitur misit omnem equitatum properè ad  
 own men.] Therefore he sent all the cavalry speedily to  
 castra, ac C. Marium statim cum cohortibus  
 the camps, and Caius Marius immediately with cohorts  
 sociorum, quæ lacrymans obsecrat eum "Per  
 of the allies, and weeping beseeches him "By (their)  
 amicitiam, quæ per rempublicam, ne-sinat  
 friendship, and by the commonwealth, (that) he may not permit  
 quam contumeliam remanere in victore exercitu,  
 any disgrace to remain in (their) victorious army,  
 neve hostes abire inultos." Ille efficit  
 nor the enemies to depart unrevenged." He executes (his)

mandata brevè. At Jugurtha impeditus munimento  
 commands shortly. But Jugurtha prevented by the fortification  
 castrorum, cùm alii præcipitarentur super  
 of the camps, when others (some) might be thrown-headlong upon  
 vallum, alii properantes in angustiis,  
 the rampart, others hastening in the narrow-passes [of the gates],  
 ipsi officerent sibi,  
 themselves might (did) obstruct to themselves, [obstructed one another],

multis amissis, recipit sese in munita loca.  
 many being lost, betakes himself into fortified places.

Postquam nox aderat, Metellus, negotio  
 After-that night was-at-hand, Metellus, the business  
 infecto, revortitur in castra cum exercitu.  
 being undone, returns into the camps with the army.

Igitur postero die, priùs quàm  
 Therefore in the following day, before that he might (did)  
 egrederetur ad-oppugnandum, jubet omnem  
 go-out to-assault, he orders all

equitatum agitare pro castris in eâ parte,  
 the cavalry to be-active before the camps in that part,  
 quâ adventus regis erat: disperit  
 where the approach of the king was: he divides [he assigns]  
 portas, et proxima loca tribunis: deinde ipse  
 the gates, and the nearest places to the tribunes: then himself  
 pergit ad oppidum, atque aggreditur murum, uti  
 proceeds to the town, and attacks the wall, as  
 superiore die. Interim Jugurtha ex-occulto invadit  
 on the former day. Meantime Jugurtha secretly attacks  
 nostros repente. Qui locati-fuerant in  
 our (men) suddenly. (Those) who had been placed in  
 proximo territi paullisper  
 the nearest (place) [to the enemy] affrighted a-little  
 perturbantur: reliqui cito subveniunt. Neque  
 are confused: the rest quickly come-up. Nor  
 Numidæ quivissent resistere diutiùs, ni  
 the Numidians might have been-able to withstand longer, unless  
 pedites permixti cum equitibus facerent  
 [their] infantry mingled with the cavalry might (did) make  
 magnam cladem; quibus illi freti, non  
 a great slaughter; to (on) which they relying, (began), not  
 uti solet equestri prælio, sequi, dein cedere,  
 as is-usual in a cavalry fight, to follow, then to give-way,  
 sed concurrere advorsis equis, implicare, ac  
 but to rush-together with adverse horses, to involve, and  
 perturbare aciem: ita, suis peditibus expeditis,  
 to confuse the line: thus, their infantry being disentangled,  
 dare hostes pene victos.  
 to give (to effect), the enemies nearly vanquished. [Thus the Romans

nearly vanquished were given to the infantry, disentangled from the

Certabatur magnâ vi eodem  
 cavalry.] It was contended with great violence in the same  
 tempore apud Zamam. Ubi quisque legatus aut  
 time at Zama. Where every lieutenant or  
 tribunus curabat, eò niti acerrumè,  
 tribune did command, there (he proceeded) to strive most-vigorously,

neque alius habere spem magis in alio quam in  
nor another to have hope more in another than in

sese: que oppidani pariter agere, oppugnare,  
himself: and the townsmen equally (began) to act, to assault,

aut parare omnibus locis; alteri sauciare alteros  
or to prepare in all places; the others to wound the others

avidius quàm tegere semet; clamor  
more-eagerly than to protect themselves; the shout (was)

permixtus hortatione, lætitiâ, gemitu: item  
mingled with encouragement, with gladness, with groaning: also

strepitus armorum ferri ad cœlum: tela  
the rattling of arms to be carried to heaven (the sky): darts

volare utrimque. Sed illi qui defensabant mœnia,  
to fly on-either-side. But they who did defend the walls,

intenti prospectabant equestre prælium, ubi  
fixed did view-at-a-distance the cavalry fight, when

hostes modò remiserant pugnam paullulùm.  
the enemies only had relaxed the battle a little.

Animadverteres eos modò lætos, modò pavidos,  
Thou mayest perceive them one-time glad, one-time fearful,

uti quæque res erant Jugurthæ,  
as every affairs were to Jugurtha, [according as the contest

ac sicuti possent audiri aut  
was with Jugurtha,] and as they might be-able to be heard or

cerni à suis, alii monere, alii  
to be perceived by their-own, others (began) to advise, others

hortari, aut significare manu, aut niti  
to encourage, or to beckon with the hand, or to strain with (their)

corporibus; agitare huc et illuc, quasi  
bodies; to drive hither and thither, as-if

vitabundi aut jacentes tela. Quod ubi  
about-escaping or hurling darts. Which when

cognitum-est Mario, nam is curabat in  
it was known to Marius, for he did take-care (command) in

eâ parte, agere leniùs consulto, ac simulare  
that part, (he began) to act more-gently by design, and to pretend

diffidentiam rei: pati Numidas  
a distrust of the affair: to allow the Numidians [in the town]

visere                      praelium regis sine tumultu.  
to go-to-see [to look at] the battle of the king without confusion.

Ita illis adstrictis                      studio suorum,  
Thus they being tied-down (engaged) with zeal of their-own (people),

[while they were thus intent, and taken up with their own people,]

aggreditur murum repente magnâ vi; et jam  
he attacks the wall suddenly with great force; and now

milites aggressi scalis ceperant jam propè  
the soldiers having attempted with ladders had taken now nearly

summa, cum oppidani concurrunt, ingerunt  
the highest (parts), when the townsmen rush-together, throw

lapides, ignem, præterea alia tela. Nostri  
stones, fire, besides other weapons. Our (men)

primò resistere; deinde ubi unæ atque alteræ  
first (began) to oppose; then when one and other

scalæ comminutæ (sunt), qui supersteterant  
ladders were broken-in-pieces, (those) who had stood-on (them)

afflicti-sunt; cæteri abeunt quisque quo modo  
were dashed-down; the rest depart every-one in what manner

potuere, pauci integri, magna pars confecti  
they were-able, few whole (unhurt), a great part spent

vulneribus. Deinde nox diremit praelium utrimque.  
with wounds. Then night dissolved the battle on-either-side.

Postquam Metellus videt                      inceptum frustra,  
After-that Metellus sees (the thing) undertaken in-vain,

neque oppidum capi, neque Jugurtham facere  
nor the town to be taken, nor Jugurtha to make

pugnam nisi ex insidiis, aut suo loco;  
battle unless out-of ambushes, or in his-own (chosen) place;

et jam æstatem esse exactam, discedit ab Zamâ;  
and now the summer to be spent, he departs from Zama;

et imponit præsidia in iis urbibus, quæ defecerant  
and places garrisons in those cities, which had revolted

ab se, quæ munitæ-erant satis loco aut  
from himself, and had been fortified sufficiently by the place or

mœnibus. Collocat cæterum exercitum in provinciam  
by walls. He places the rest-of the army into the province

quæ est proxuma Numidiæ, gratiâ  
 which [is] next to Numidia, by favour (for the sake)

hiemandi. Neque concedit id tempus quieti aut  
 of wintering. Nor does he grant that time to rest or

luxuriæ ex more aliorum; sed quoniam  
 luxury according-to the custom of others; but since

bellum procedebat parum armis, parat tendere  
 the war did succeed little by arms, he prepares to stretch

insidias regi per amicos, et uti  
 snares for the king by (his) friends, [the king's,] and to use

perfidia eorum pro armis. Igitur aggreditur  
 the treachery of them instead-of arms. Therefore he attacks

multis pollicitationibus Bomilcarem, qui fuerat  
 with many promises Bomilcar, who had been

Romæ cum Jugurthâ, et fugerat judicium inde,  
 at Rome with Jugurtha, and had escaped trial thence,

vadibus datis, clam de morte Massivæ;  
 sureties being given, secretly concerning the death of Massiva;

quod erat maxuma copia fallendi per  
 because there was the greatest opportunity of deceiving through

maxumam amicitiam: ac efficit primò, uti  
 the greatest friendship: and he accomplishes first, that

veniat occultus ad se gratiâ colloquendi;  
 he may come concealed to himself for the sake of conferring;

deinde fide datâ, si tradidisset  
 then (his) faith (solemn promise) being given, if he might have delivered

Jugurtham vivum aut necatum sibi, fore,  
 Jugurtha alive or killed to himself, to be about-to-be,

ut senatus concederet impunitatem et omnia sua  
 that the senate would grant forgiveness and all his

illi; persuadet faciliè Numidæ, cum  
 (possessions) to him; he persuades easily to the Numidian, as-well

infido ingenio,  
 with faithless disposition, [as well on account of his faithless disposition,]

tum metuenti ne, si pax fieret cum Romanis,  
 then (as) fearing lest, if peace might be made with the Romans,

ipse traderetur ad supplicium per conditiones.  
 himself might be delivered to punishment by the conditions.



Ubi primùm fuit opportunum, is accedit Jugurtham  
When first it was convenient, he approaches Jugurtha

anxium, ac miserantem suas fortunas, monet,  
solicitous, and lamenting his-own fortunes, he advises,

atque lacrumans obtestatur uti provideat  
and weeping beseeches (him), that he may provide

aliquando sibi que liberis, et genti  
some-time for himself and children, and for the nation

Numidarum merenti optumò; sese  
of the Numidians deserving very-well (of him); themselves

victos (esse) omnibus præliis, agrum vastatum,  
to have been conquered in all the battles, the land ravaged,

multos mortales captos, occisos; opes regni  
many persons taken, [or] slain; the resources of the kingdom

comminutas-esse; jam et virtutem militum  
to have been broken; already both the valour of (his) soldiers

et fortunam tentatam (esse) sæpè satis:  
and fortune to have been tried often enough: he may (should)

caveat, ne, illo cunctante, Numidæ consulant  
beware, lest, [he hesitating], the Numidians may consult

sibi. Impellit animum regis his atque  
for themselves. He impels the mind of the king by these and

talibus aliis ad deditionem. Legati  
by such other (reasonings) to a surrender. Ambassadors

mittuntur ad imperatorem, qui dicerent Jugurtham  
are sent to the general, who should say Jugurtha

facturum imperata, ac tradere sese que  
about-to-do (the things) ordered, and to deliver himself and

suum regnum in fidem illius sine ullâ pactione.  
his kingdom unto the faith of him without any covenant.

Metellus properè jubet cunctos senatorii ordinis  
Metellus hastily orders all of senatorial rank

accersiri ex hibernis; habet concilium  
to be sent-for out-of winter-quarters; he holds a council

eorum, atque aliorum quos ducebat idoneos.  
of those, and of others whom he did lead (think) proper.

Ita imperat Jugurthæ more majorum  
Thus he orders to Jugurtha in the manner of (our) ancestors

ex decreto concilii, per legatos,  
 according-to the decree of the council, by the ambassadors, (to furnish)  
 ducenta millia pondo argenti, omnes  
 two hundred thousands pounds-weight of silver, all (his)  
 elephantos, aliquantum equorum et armorum. Quæ  
 elephants, some-what of horses and of arms. Which  
 postquam facta-sunt sine morâ, jubet  
 (things) after-that they were done without delay, he orders  
 omnes perfugas adduci vinctos. Magna pars  
 all the deserters to be brought-up bound. A great part  
 eorum adducti (sunt) uti jussum-erat; pauci  
 of them were brought-up as it had been ordered; a few  
 abierant in Mauritaniam ad regem Bocchum,  
 had gone-away into Mauritania to king Bocchus,  
 cùm deditio primùm cœpit. Igitur Jûgurtha, ubi  
 when the surrender first began. Therefore Jugurtha, when  
 spoliatus-est armis, que viris, et pecuniâ, cùm  
 he was stripped-of arms, and men, and money, when  
 ipse vocaretur ad Tisidium imperandum,  
 himself might be (was) called to Tisidium to-be-commanded,  
 rursus cœpit flectere suum animum, et timere  
 again began to bend (change) his mind, and to fear  
 digna ex malâ conscientiâ. Denique,  
 worthy (deserved things) from an evil consciousness. Finally,  
 multis diebus consumptis per dubitationem, cùm  
 many days being spent through (in) doubt, when  
 modò duceret omnia potiora  
 one time he might (did) deem all (things) better (than)  
 bello, tædio advorsarum rerum; interdum ipse  
 war, from weariness of adverse things; sometimes he  
 reputaret, quam gravis casus ex regno  
 might (did) revolve, how heavy the fall from a kingdom  
 in servitutem foret; multis que magnis  
 into slavery might be (was); many and great  
 præsiidiis perditis nequidquam,  
 protections being lost [by what he had surrendered] in-vain,  
 sumit bellum de-integro. Senatus, Romæ,  
 he takes (begins) war anew. [The senate, at Rome,

consultus de provinciis, decreverat Numidiam  
 having consulted about the provinces, had decreed Numidia  
 Metello. Per idem tempus haruspex  
 to Metellus.] Through (about) the same time a soothsayer  
 dixerat magna atque mirabilia portendi C.  
 had said great and wonderful (things) to be foreboded to Caius  
 Mario fortè supplicanti diis per hostias;  
 Marius by chance praying to the gods by victims; [sacrificing  
 proinde fretus diis, ageret quæ  
 to the gods;] wherefore relying on the gods, he might act what  
 agitabat animo; experiretur fortunam  
 he did revolve in mind; he might try fortune  
 quàm-sæpiussumè; cuncta eventura  
 as-often-as-possible; all (things to be) about-to-happen  
 prosperè. At ingens cupido consulatûs exagitabat  
 prosperously. But a great desire of the consulship did harass  
 illum jam antea; ad quem capiundum  
 (excite) him already before; to which to-be-taken (to obtain  
 omnia alia erant abundè, præter  
 which) all other (qualities) were abundantly, except  
 vetustatem familiæ; industria, probitas, magna  
 the antiquity of (his) family; industry, honesty, a great  
 scientia militiæ, ingens animus belli,  
 knowledge of warfare, a great mind (spirit) of (in) war,  
 modicus domi, victor lubricinis, et divitiarum,  
 moderate of (at) home, a conqueror of passion, and of riches,  
 tantummodò avidus gloriæ. Sed is natus (est) et  
 only greedy of glory. But he was born and  
 altus omnem pueritiam Arpini, ubi  
 reared (during) all (his) boyhood of (at) Arpinum, when  
 primùm ætas fuit patiens militiæ, exercuit sese  
 first (his) age was enduring of warfare, he exercised himself  
 stipendiis, faciundis, non Græcâ facundiâ,  
 in pays (military services) to-be-made, not in Greek eloquence,  
 neque urbanis munditiis; ita integrum ingenium  
 nor in polite refinements; thus (his) sound ability  
 adolevit brevè inter bonas artes. Ergo ubi  
 grew-up shortly among good arts (pursuits). Therefore when

primùm petit militarem tribunatum à populo,  
first he seeks a military tribuneship from the people,

plerisque ignorantibus faciem ejus, notus  
most (of them) not-knowing the face of him, being known

facile, declaratur  
easily, [but being known by name, as a brave soldier,] he is declared

per omnes tribus. Deinde peperit alium,  
by all the tribes. Afterwards he begot (procured) another

post alium sibi ab eo magistratu;  
(one magistracy), after another for himself from that magistracy;

que agitabat eo modo semper in potestatibus,  
and he did manage in that manner always in (his) commands,

ut haberetur dignus ampliore  
that he might be (was) held worthy with more-ample (higher

quàm gerebat. Tamen is  
authority) than he did carry-on [possessed]. However he (though)

talis vir ad id locorum audebat non  
such a man to that of places (up to that time) did dare not

adpetere consulatum, (nam postea datus-est  
to solicit the consulship, (for afterwards he was given

præceps ambitione). Etiam tum  
(precipitated) headlong by ambition). Even then

plebes alios magistratus; nobilitas  
the common-people (did bestow) other magistracies; the nobility

tradebat consulatum per manus inter se.  
did deliver the consulship through (their) hands among themselves.

Nemo novus erat tam clarus, neque tam  
No-one new (man) was so illustrious, nor so

egregiis factis, quin is haberetur  
with excellent deeds, but-that he might be (was) held

indignus illo honore, et quasi pollutus.  
unworthy with that honour, and as-if defiled. [And as if he

Igitur, ubi Marius videt dicta  
would defile it.] Therefore, when Marius sees the sayings

haruspicias intendere eòdem, quò cupido  
of the soothsayer to tend to the same (point), whither the desire

animi hortabatur, rogat missionem ab  
of (his) mind did encourage, he asks (his) discharge from

**Metello**      **gratiâ**      **petundi;**      **cui**  
**Metellus**      by favour (for the sake)      of seeking (it); to whom  
**quamquam** **virtus, gloria, atque alia**      **optanda**  
although      valour, glory, and other (things) to-be-wished  
**bonis**      **superabant, tamen contemptor**  
by good (men) did abound, however      a despiser (scornful)  
**animus, et superbia, commune malum nobilitatis,**  
mind, and pride, the common evil of the nobility,  
**inerat.**      **Itaque commotus**      **primûm**  
was-in (him). Therefore      being moved (surprised)      first  
**insolitâ re,**      **mirari consilium ejus; et**  
by the unusual thing, (he began) to wonder-at the design of him; and  
**monere quasi per amicitiam**      **"ne-inciperet**  
to advise (him) as-if through friendship (that) "he should not-begin  
**tam prava,**      **neu gereret animum**  
(things) so corrupt, [so erroneous,] nor should carry- a spirit  
**super fortunam: omnia non esse cupienda**  
above (his) fortune: all (things) not to be to-be-desired  
**omnibus; suas res debere placere**  
to (by) all; his-own things to owe (ought) to please  
**satis illi:**  
sufficiently to him: [that he ought to be satisfied with his station:]  
**postremò, caveret petere id à Romano populo,**  
lastly, he should beware to seek that from the Roman people,  
**quod negaretur jure illi."** **Postquam dixit hæc,**  
which might be denied by right to him." After-that he said these,  
**atque talia alia, neque animus Marii flectitur,**  
and such other (advices), neither the mind of Marius is bent,  
**respondit, sese facturum quæ peteret, ubi**  
he answers, himself about-to-do what he might (did) ask, when  
**primûm potuisset per publica negotia.**  
first he might have been-able by the public affairs. [As soon  
as public affairs would permit.] **Ac fertur dixisse**  
And he is reported to have said  
**postea sæpius postulanti eadem.**  
afterwards (to him) oftener requesting the same (things).  
**"Ne-festinare abire, illum petiturum**  
"He should not-hasten to depart, him about-to-seek [that he would

consulatum maturè satis cum suo filio."  
 seek] the consulship early enough with his-own son."

Is militabat eo tempore contubernio  
 He (the son) did serve in that time in the fellowship of (his)

patris ibidem, natus circiter viginti annos; quæ  
 father there, born about twenty years; which

res accenderat Marium vehementer, cùm pro  
 thing had inflamed Marius violently, as-well for

honore, quem affectabat, tùm contra Metellum.  
 the honour, which he did aim-at, then (as) against Metellus.

Ita grassari, cupidine atque irâ, pessumis  
 Thus (he began) to proceed, by desire and by anger, the worst

consultoribus: neque abstinere ullo facto, neque  
 advisers: nor to refrain from any deed, nor

dicto, quod foret modò ambitiosum,  
 saying, which might be only ambitious, [by which he might

habere milites, quibus præerat in  
 gain popularity,] to have the soldiers, to whom he was-over in

hibernis, laxiore imperio quàm antea:  
 the winter-quarters, in more-remiss command than before:

loqui criminosè, et simul magnificè, de  
 to speak censuringly, and at-the-same-time boastingly, about

bello, apud negotiatores, quorum erat magna  
 the war, among the merchants, of whom there was a great

multitudo Uticæ: "Dimidia pars exercitûs  
 multitude of (at) Utica: "If the half part of the army might be

permitteretur sibi, habiturum Jugurtham  
 (were) granted to himself, (to be) about-to-have Jugurtha

in catenis paucis diebus: trahî consultò ab  
 in chains in a few days: to be protracted designedly by

imperatore, quòd inanis homo, et regiæ  
 the commander, because the empty (vain) man, and of royal

superbiæ, gauderet nimis imperio." Omnia  
 pride, might (did) rejoice too-much in command." All

quæ videbantur illis firmiora eò, quòd  
 which (sayings) did seem to them more-sure therefore, because

corruperant familiares res  
 they had injured (their) family affairs (their property)  
 diuturnitate belli.  
 by the length of the war.

Præterea, quidam Numida, nomine Gauda, filius  
 Besides, a certain Numidian, by name Gauda, a son  
 Manastabalis, nepos Masinissæ, erat in nostro  
 of Manastabal, grandson of Masinissa, was in our  
 exercitu; quem Micipsa scripserat secundum  
 army; whom Micipsa had written (appointed) second  
 hæredem testamento, confectus morbis, et ob  
 heir by will, spent by disease, and on-account-of  
 eam causam mente paululum imminuta.  
 that cause with a mind a little diminished (impaired).

Cui petenti, Metellus negaverat utrumque,  
 To whom requesting (them), Metellus had denied each

uti poneret sellam juxtâ  
 (of the following), that he might place (his) chair near (him)

more regum, item postea turmam Romanorum  
 in the manner of kings, also afterwards a troop of Roman

equitum causâ custodiæ: honorem, quòd  
 horsemen by cause (for the sake) of guard: the honour, because

foret modo eorum quos Romanus populus  
 it might be (was) in the manner of those whom the Roman people

appellavisset reges: præsidium, quòd  
 might have (had) called kings: the guard, because

foret contumeliosum in eos, si Romani equites  
 it might be insulting unto them, if Roman horsemen

traderentur satellites Numidæ. Marius  
 should be delivered (as) guards to a Numidian. Marius

aggreditur hunc anxium, atque hortatur uti petat  
 accosts him anxious, and encourages that he may seek

poenas contumeliarum in imperatorem,  
 punishments of the insults against the commander, [received from

cum suo auxilio: extollit secundâ  
 the commander,] with his assistance: he extols with favourable

oratione hominem animo parum-valido ob  
 speech the man with a mind not-strong on-account-of

morbos: "Illum esse ingentem virum, nepotem  
diseases: "Him to be a great man, grandson

Masinissæ; si Jugurtha foret captus aut  
of Masinissa; if Jugurtha might be (were) taken or

occisus, habiturum imperium  
slain (to be) about-to-have [he would have] the government

Numidiæ sine morâ; adeò id posse evenire  
of Numidia without delay; thus that to be-able to happen

maturè si ipse  
speedily, [that indeed this might speedily happen,] if himself

missus-foret consul ad id bellum."  
might have (had) been sent (as) consul to that war."

Itaque ipse impellit et illum et Romanos equites,  
Therefore he impels both him and the Roman knights,

milites et negotiatores, alios; spes pacis  
soldiers and merchants, (and) others; the hope of peace (urges)

plerosque, uti scribant asperè Romam ad  
most, that they may write roughly (severely) to Rome to

suos necessarios in Metellum de bello; poscant  
their acquaintances against Metellus about the war; may request

Marium imperatorem. Sic consulatus petebatur  
Marius (as) commander. Thus the consulship was sought

illi à multis mortalibus honestissimâ suffragatione.  
for him by many mortals with most-honourable canvass.

Simul nobilitate fusâ  
At-the-same-time the nobility being poured (defeated) [being made of

per Mamiliam legem, eâ  
equal importance in voting,] by the Mamilian law, at that

tempestate plebes extollebat novos.  
time the common-people did extol [to office] new (men).

Ita cuncta procedere Mario. Interim  
Thus all (things) (began) to succeed for Marius. Mean-time

Jugurtha, deditione omissâ, postquam incipit  
Jugurtha, the surrender being omitted, after-that he commences

bellum parare omnia cum magnâ curâ,  
the war (began) to prepare all (things) with great care,

festinare cogere exercitum; affectare,  
to hasten to collect an army; to aim-at [to recover]



civitates quæ defecerant ab se, formidine, aut  
 the cities which had revolted from himself, by terror, or  
 ostentando præmia, communire suos locos; reficere,  
 by displaying rewards, to fortify his-own places; to repair,  
 aut commercari arma, tela, quæ alia, quæ  
 or to purchase arms, weapons, and other (things), which  
 amiserat spe pacis; allicere servitia  
 he had lost in the hope of peace; to entice the slaveries (slaves)  
 Romanorum, et tentare eos ipsos qui erant  
 of the Romans, and to try those (persons) themselves who were  
 in præsiidiis, pecuniâ; pati nihil prorsus  
 in the garrisons, by money; to suffer nothing altogether  
 intactum, neque quietum, agitare cuncta.  
 untouched, nor tranquil, to disturb all (things).  
 Igitur Vaccenses, principes civitatis quod Metellus  
 Therefore the Vaccensian, chiefs of the state where Metellus  
 imposuerat præsidium initio, Jugurthâ  
 had placed a garrison in the beginning, Jugurtha  
 pacificante, fatigati suppliciiis regis, neque  
 making-peace, being importuned by the entreaties of the king, neither  
 alienati antea voluntate, conjurant inter se; nam  
 alienated before in will, conspire among themselves; for  
 vulgus, uti solet, plerumque, et maxumè  
 the common-people, as is usual, generally, and chiefly (that)  
 Numidarum, erat, mobili ingenio, seditiosum  
 of the Numidians, was, with changeable disposition, seditious  
 atque discordiosum, cupidum novarum rerum,  
 and turbulent, desirous of new things (revolution),  
 adversum quieti et otio: dein, rebus compositis  
 inimical to rest and to leisure: then, things being arranged  
 inter se, constituunt in tertium diem, quod  
 between themselves, they appoint on the third day, because  
 is festus que celebratus per omnem Africam,  
 that (being) festive and celebrated through all Africa,  
 ostentabat ludum et lasciviam magis quam  
 did display play and wantonness more than  
 formidinem. Sed ubi tempus fuit, invitant alius  
 fear. But when the time was, they invite the other

alium - suas domos, centuriones que militares  
 (the one) another (to) their houses, the centurions and military  
 tribunos, et T. Turpilium Silanum præfectum ipsum  
 tribunes, and Titus Turpilius Silanus the governor himself  
 oppidi: obtruncant omnes eos inter epulas, præter  
 of the town: they massacre all those among the feasts, except  
 Turpilium: postea aggrediuntur milites palantes,  
 Turpilius: afterwards they attack the soldiers wandering,  
 inermes, ac sine imperio, quippe in tali die.  
 unarmed, and without command, inasmuch-as on such a day.

Plebes facit idem, pars  
 [As became such a day.] The common-people do the same, part  
 edocti ab nobilitate, alii incitati studio talium  
 instructed by the nobility, others urged from zeal of such  
 rerum, quâs ignorantibus acta, que consilium,  
 things, to whom not-knowing (their) acts, and design,  
 tumultus ipse, et novæ res, placebant satis.  
 the confusion itself, and new things, did please sufficiently.

Romani milites, improviso metu, incerti que  
 The Roman soldiers, from the sudden fear, doubtful and

ignari quid facerent potissimum, trepidare ad  
 ignorant what they should do chiefly, (began) to hurry to

arcem oppidi, ubi signa et scuta erant:  
 the citadel of the town, where the standards and shields were:

præsidium hostium, portæ clausæ antè  
 a guard of the enemies, (and) the gates being shut before

prohibebant fugam: ad hoc mulieres que  
 did hinder (their) flight: to this (besides) the women and

pueri mittere certatim pro tectis  
 boys (began) to send (cast) emulously before the roofs

ædificiorum saxa, et alia, quæ locus præbebat.  
 of the buildings stones, and other (things), which the place did afford.

Ita anceps malum neque caveri,  
 Thus the double evil (could) neither be guarded-against,

neque posse resisti infirmisimo generi  
 nor (did it appear) to be able to be opposed to the weakest sort

à fortissimis:

by the bravest: [nor could the bravest resist the weakest portion of

boni que mali, strenui et imbelles,  
 mankind:] the good and the bad, the active and the unwarlike,  
 inulti, obtruncati (sunt) juxtâ. In eâ tantâ  
 unrevenged, were slaughtered alike. In that so-great

asperitate, Numidis sævissumis, et  
 roughness (misfortune), the Numidians (being) most-cruel, and  
 oppido clauso undique, Turpilius præfectus, unus  
 the town being shut on-every-side, Turpilius the governor, one

ex omnibus Italicis profugit intactus :  
 (alone) out-of all the Italians escaped untouched :

comperimus parùm, an id evenierit ita  
 we have discovered little, whether that may have happened so

misericiordiâ hospitis, an pactione, an  
 from the compassion of (his) host, or by agreement, or

casu : nisi, quia in tanto malo turpis vita  
 by chance : unless (but), because in so-great an evil a base life

fuit potior integrâ famâ, videtur  
 was better (than) sound fame (character), he seems

improbis que intestabilis. Postquam Metellus  
 villainous and detestable. After-that Metellus

comperit de rebus actis Vaccæ, moestus  
 discovered about the things done at Vacca, sorrowful

abit paullisper è conspectu :  
 he departs a little-while out-of sight (from public) :

deinde ubi ira et ægritudo permista-sunt,  
 afterwards when anger and sorrow were-mingled,

festinat ire ultum injurias cum maxumâ curâ.  
 he hastens to go to avenge the injuries with the greatest care.

Educit legionem cum quâ hiemabat, et  
 He leads-out the legion with which he did winter, and

quàm-plurimos Numidas equites potest, expeditos,  
 as-many Numidian cavalry he is-able, prepared,

cum occasu solis : et  
 [both disencumbered], with [at] the setting of the sun : and

posterâ die circiter tertiam horam pervenit  
 in the following day about the third hour he arrives

in quamdam planitiem, circumventam locis paullò  
 into a certain plain, surrounded with places a little

superioribus. Ibi docet milites, fessos  
higher. There he teaches (informs) the soldiers, fatigued

magnitudine itineris, et jam abnuentes omnia,  
by the greatness of the march, and now refusing all (things),

oppidum Vaccam abesse non ampliùs  
[that] the town Vacca to be distant [is distant] not more

mille passuum: decere illos  
(than) a thousand of paces: to become [that it became] them

pati reliquum laborem æquo animo, dum  
to suffer the rest (remaining) labour with even mind, until

caperent poenas pro suis civibus, fortissimis  
they might take penalties for their-own citizens, very-brave

atque miserrumis viris. Præterea ostendat  
and most-wretched men. Besides he points-out

prædam benignè.  
the plunder liberally. [He liberally grants them the plunder of the

Sic animis eorum arrectis, jubet  
place.] Thus the minds (spirits) of them being raised, he orders

equites ire in primo, latè, pedites  
the cavalry to go in front, extended, the infantry

quàm-arctissumè, et occultare signa. Ubi  
as-closely-as-possible, and to conceal the standards. When

Vaccenses animadvertère exercitum pergere  
the Vaccenses perceived the army to proceed

advorsum se, rati primò esse  
against themselves, having thought (it) at-first to be

Metellum, uti res erat, clausere portas: deinde  
Metellus, as the thing was, they shut the gates: then

ubi vident agros neque vastari, et eos qui  
when they see the lands neither to be ravaged, and those who

aderant primi Numidas equites; arbitrati  
were present first (to be) Numidian cavalry; having thought (it)

rursum Jugurtham, procedunt obvii  
again (to be) Jugurtha, they proceed opposite (towards him)

cum magno gaudio. Equites que pedites, signo  
with great joy. The cavalry -and infantry, a signal

dato repentè, alii cædere  
being given suddenly, others (some began) to slaughter

vulgum effusum oppido; alii festinare  
 the common-people poured-forth from the town; others to hasten  
 ad portas: pars capere turrets: ira, atque spes  
 to the gates: part to take the towers: anger, and the hope  
 prædæ posse plus quam lassitudo. Ita  
 of booty to be-able (to do) more than fatigue. Thus

Vaccenses lætati (sunt) modò biduum ex  
 the Vaccenses rejoiced only two-days from (their)

perfidia: magna et opulens civitas fuit cuncta  
 treachery: the great and wealthy city was all

pœnæ aut prædæ.  
 for punishment or for booty. [Was given up to punishment or booty.]

Turpilius, quem præfectum oppidi ostendimus  
 Turpilius, whom (being) governor of the town we have shown

suprà profugisse unum ex omnibus,  
 above to have escaped one (alone) out-of all,

jussus à Metello dicere causam;  
 being commanded by Metellus to say (plead his) cause;

postquam expurgat sese parùm, condemnatus que  
 after-that he clears himself little, being condemned and

verberatus, solvit pœnas capite; nam  
 scourged, he loosed (paid) penalties by (his) head; [life;] for

is erat civis ex Latio. Per idem  
 he was a citizen out-of Latium. Through (during) the same

tempus Bomilcar, impulsu cujus Jugurtha  
 time Bomilcar, by the instigation of whom Jugurtha

inceperat deditionem, quam deseruit metu,  
 had begun the surrender, which he abandoned from fear,

suspectus regi, et ipse suspiciens eum,  
 being suspected to (by) the king, and he suspecting him, (began)

cupere novas res; quærere dolum ad  
 to desire new things (revolution); to seek a stratagem to

perniciem ejus; fatigare animum diu  
 the destruction of him [Jugurtha]; to weary (his) mind by-day

que noctu; denique, tentando omnia, adjungit  
 and by-night; finally, by trying all (things), he unites (as)

socium sibi Nabdalsam, nobilem hominem,  
 an associate to himself Nabdalsa, a noble man,

clarum magnis opibus, que acceptum suis  
 illustrious by great riches, and received (popular) to his-own  
 popularibus: qui solitus-erat plerumque ductare  
 countrymen: who had been accustomed generally to lead  
 exercitum seorsum ab rege, et exsequi omnes  
 an army apart from the king, and to execute all  
 res, quæ superaverant Jugurthæ, fesso aut  
 things, which had remained-over to Jugurtha, fatigued or  
 adstricto majoribus; ex quo gloria que opes  
 bound-down to greater (affairs); from which glory and riches  
 inventæ illi. Igitur dies statuitur insidiis  
 were found to (by) him. Therefore a day is appointed for the snares  
 consilio utriusque: placuit cætera parari  
 by the plan of each: it pleased (them) the rest to be prepared  
 ex tempore, uti res posceret. Nabdalsa  
 according-to time, as the thing might demand. Nabdalsa  
 profectus (est) ad exercitum, quem jussus habebat  
 set-out to the army, which being ordered he did have  
 inter hiberna Romanorum, ne hostibus  
 between (near) the winter-quarters of the Romans, lest the enemies  
 inultis ager vastaretur.  
 (being) unrevenged the land might be ravaged. [Lest the land might  
 be ravaged by the enemy with impunity.] Postquam, is, percussus  
 magnitudine facinoris, venit non ad tempus; que  
 by the greatness of the crime, came not to time; and  
 metus impediēbat rem: Bomilcar, simul cupidus  
 fear did hinder the thing: Bomilcar, at-the-same-time desirous  
 patrandi incepta, et anxius timore  
 of perpetrating his undertakings, and anxious from the fear of (his)  
 socii, ne vetere consilio omissio, quæreret  
 associate, lest the old design being laid-aside, he might seek  
 novum; mittit letteras ad eum per fideles  
 a new (one); sends letters (a letter) to him by faithful  
 homines: in quibus accusare molliem que  
 men: in which (he began) to accuse the softness and  
 socordiam viri; testari Deos, per quos  
 inactivity of the man; to attest the Gods, through whom

juravisset; monere, ne-converteret  
 he might have (had) sworn; to advise, (that) he should not-turn

præmia Metelli in pestem: exitium  
 the rewards of Metellus into (his) plague (ruin): destruction

adesse Jugurthæ; cæterum id modò agitari,  
 to be at-hand to Jugurtha; but that now to be discussed,

ne periret suâ virtute, an Metelli:  
 whether he might perish by his valour, or (that) of Metellus:

proinde reputaret cum suo animo,  
 wherefore he should revolve with his-own mind, (whether)

mallet præmia an cruciatum. Sed cùm hæ  
 he might prefer rewards or torture. But when these

litteræ allatæ (sunt), Nabdalsa, fessus, corpore  
 letters were brought, Nabdalsa, fatigued, (his) body

exercito, fortè quiescebat in lecto; ubi, verbis  
 being exercised, by-chance did rest in a bed; where, the words

Bomilcaris cognitis, cura, deinde somnus cepit,  
 of Bomilcar being known, anxiety, then sleep took

utì solet ægrum animum. Erat quidam  
 (seized him), as it is-wont a sick mind. There was a certain

Numida ei, fidus curator negotiorum, que  
 Numidian to him, a faithful manager of (his) affairs, and

acceptus, et particeps omnium consiliorum,  
 received (approved), and a partaker of all (his) designs,

nisi novissumi. Qui postquam, audivit litteras  
 unless of the newest (last). Who after-that, he heard the letters

allatas, ratus, ex consuetudine,  
 (letter) being brought, having thought, according-to custom,

opus esse operâ, aut suo ingenio, introiit  
 need to be with (his) assistance, or his understanding, entered

in tabernaculum: illo dormiente, sumit ac perlegit  
 into the tent: he sleeping, he takes and reads-through

epistolam positam temerè super caput in pulvino:  
 the letter placed rashly above (his) head on the pillow:

dein, insidiis cognitis, pergit properè ad regem.  
 then, the snares being known, he proceeds quickly to the king.

Nabdalsa experrectus paullo pòst, ubi reperit  
 Nabdalsa being awaked a little after, when he found

neque epistolam, et cognovit omnem rem, uti  
neither the letter, and knew all the thing, as

acta-erat,  
it had been transacted, [and was informed of what had taken place,]  
primò conatus (est) persequi indicem; postquam id  
at-first endeavoured to pursue the informer; after-that that  
fuit frustrà, accedit Jugurtham gratiâ  
was in-vain, he approaches Jugurtha by favour (for the sake)

placandi: præventum perfidiâ  
of appeasing (him): (he says) to have been-prevented by the treachery  
sui clientis, facere, quæ ipse paravisset:  
of his dependant, to do, what (things) he might have prepared

lacrumans, "obtestatur per amicitiam,  
(had intended): weeping, "he beseeches (him) by friendship,

que per sua acta fideliter antea,  
and by his (deeds) transacted faithfully before, (that)

ne-haberet sese suspectum super tali scelere."  
he would not-have himself suspected about such guilt."

Rex respondit placidè ad ea, aliter atque  
The king answered calmly to those (words), otherwise and

gerebat animo. Bomilcare, que multis aliis,  
(than) he did bear in mind. Bomilcar, and many others,

quos cognoverat socios insidiarum, interfectis,  
whom he had known associates of the snares, being slain,

oppresserat iram, ne qua seditio oriretur ex  
he had repressed (his) wrath, lest any sedition might arise out-of

eo negotio. Neque fuit ulla dies aut nox quieta  
that business. Neither was any day or night tranquil

Jugurthæ post id locorum: neque  
to Jugurtha after that of places (that circumstance): neither (was

credere satis cuiquam loco, neque  
he able) to believe (trust) sufficiently to any place, nor

mortali, neque tempori: metuere cives que  
person, nor time: (he began) to fear citizens and

hostes juxtà: circumspectare omnia, et pavescere  
enemies alike: to look-around-on all (things), and to fear

omni strepitu: requiescere noctu alio atque  
in every noise: to rest by night in another (one) and



**alio loco,**  
 another place, [he continually changed his place of repose at night,]  
**contra regium decus: interdum excitus somno,**  
 against royal propriety: sometimes roused from sleep, (his)  
**armis arreptis, facere tumultum: exagitari ita**  
 arms being snatched-up, to make a tumult: to be harassed thus  
**formidine, quasi vecordiâ. Igitur, ubi Metellus**  
 by fear, as-if by insanity. Therefore, when Metellus  
**cognovit ex perfugis de casu Bomilcaris,**  
 knew from deserters concerning the calamity of Bomilcar,  
**et indicio patefacto, parat que festinat**  
 and the information being laid-open, he prepares and hastens  
**cuncta rursus tamquam ad integrum bellum.**  
 all (things) again as-if to a fresh war.  
**Dimittit Marium domum, fatigantem de**  
 He dismisses Marius home, wearying (him) about (his)  
**profectione, et simul invitum et offensum,**  
 departure, and at-the-same-time unwilling and offended,  
**ratus parum idoneum sibi. Et plebes**  
 having thought (him) little useful for himself. And the common-people  
**Romæ, litteris quæ missæ-erant de Metello ac**  
 at Rome, the letters which had been sent about Metellus and  
**Mario cognitis, acceperant volenti animo**  
 Marius being known, had received (them) with a willing mind  
**de ambobus. Nobilitas, quæ fuerat antea**  
 concerning both. (His) nobility, which had been before  
**decori, esse invidiæ imperatori: at humilitas**  
 for honour, (began) to be for envy to the commander: but humbleness  
**generis addiderat favorem illi alteri: cæterum**  
 of race had added favour to that other: but [moreover]  
**studia partium magis quàm sua bona aut mala**  
 the zeals of parties more than their-own good or bad  
**moderata in utroque. Præterea, seditiosi**  
 (qualities) directed in each. Besides, seditious  
**magistratus exagitare vulgum,**  
 magistrates (began) to harass [agitate] the common-people,  
**arcessere Metellum capitis omnibus concionibus,**  
 to impeach Metellus of head (capitally) in all harangues,

celebrare virtutem Marii in majus.  
to celebrate the valour of Marius into greater (too highly).

Denique, plebes accensa (est) sic, uti opifices  
Finally, the common-people was inflamed so, that the artisans

que omnes agrestes, quorum res que fides  
and all the rustics, whose thing (property) and credit

erant sitæ in manibus,  
were placed in (their) hands, [who depended on their daily work for

operibus relictis, frequentarent  
support,] (their) works being left, might (did) frequent

Marium, et ducerent sua necessaria  
Marius, and might lead (did deem) their-own necessary (matters)

post honorem illius.  
after the honour of him. [And postponed their own necessary affairs

Ita nobilitate percussâ,  
to the honour of Marius.] Thus the nobility being struck, [defeated],

consulatus mandatur novo homini post multas  
the consulship is committed to a new man after many

tempestates: et postea frequens populus rogatus  
epochs: and afterwards a numerous people being asked

à Manlio Mantino, tribuno plebis, quem  
by Manlius Mantinus, tribune of the common-people, whom it (they)

vellet gerere bellum cum Jugurthâ, jussit  
might will to carry-on the war with Jugurtha, ordered

Marium. Sed senatus decreverat Numidiam  
Marius. But the senate had decreed Numidia

Metello; ea res fuit frustra. Eodem tempore,  
to Metellus; that thing was in-vain. In the same time,

Jugurtha, varius que incertus, amicis amissis,  
Jugurtha, changeable and uncertain, (his) friends being lost,

plerosque quorum ipse necaverat, cæteri formidine;  
most of whom himself had killed, the rest from fear;

pars profugerant ad Romanos, alii ad regem  
part had fled to the Romans, others to king

Bocchum: cum bellum posset neque  
Bocchus: when the war might be (was) able neither

geri sine administris, et duceret  
to be carried-on without managers, and he might lead (did deem it)

periculosum experiri fidem novorum in tantâ  
dangerous to try the faith of new (ones) in so-great

perfidia veterum, agitabatur. Neque res neque  
treachery of the old, was harassed. Neither a thing nor

consilium, aut quisquam hominum placebat illi  
a plan, or any-one of men did please to him

satis : mutare itinera que præfectos  
sufficiently : (he began) to change (his) routes and governors

in-dies : modo pergere advorsum hostes interdum  
daily : one-time to proceed against the enemies sometimes

in solitudines : sæpè habere spem in fugâ, at paullo  
into deserts : often to have hope in flight, but a little

pòst in armis : dubitare an crederet minùs  
after in arms : to doubt whether he should believe (trust) less

virtuti an. fidei popularium. Ita,  
to the valour or to the faith of (his) countrymen. Thus,

quòcunque intenderat, res erant advorsæ.  
wheresoever he had directed (his mind), things were adverse.

Sed inter eas moras, Metellus ostendit sese repentè  
But among those delays, Metellus shows himself suddenly

cum exercitu. Numidæ parati (sunt), que  
with (his) army. The Numidians were prepared, and

instructi pro tempore  
arrayed according-to the time [as well as the time and occasion

ab Jugurthâ : dein prælium incipitur. In  
would permit] by Jugurtha : then a battle is begun. In

quâ parte rex adfuit pugnæ, ibi certatum (est)  
what part the king was-present to the battle, there it was contended

aliquamdiu : omnes cæteri milites ejus pulsi (sunt)  
some-time : all the rest-of the soldiers of him were repulsed

que fugati primo congressu. Romani potiti (sunt)  
and put-to-flight in the first encounter. The Romans possessed

signorum et armorum et aliquanto numero  
of the standards and arms and some number

hostium. Nam pedes magis quàm arma  
of the enemies. For (their) feet more than arms

tutata-sunt Numidas ferme in omnibus præliis.  
protected the Numidians almost in all the battles.

Jugurtha eâ fugâ modò diffidens impensiùs suis  
 Jugurtha in that flight now distrusting more-earnestly to his  
 rebus, pervenit cum perfugis et parte equitatûs  
 affairs, arrived with the deserters and part of the cavalry  
 in solitudines, dein Thalam, in magnum et  
 into deserts, then to Thala, into a great and  
 opulentum oppidum, ubi plerique thesauri, que  
 wealthy town, where most-of the treasures, and

multus cultus pueritiæ  
 much furniture of boyhood (relating to youthful instruction) of (his)  
 filiorum erat. Postquam quæ comperta-sunt  
 sons was. After-that which (things) were discovered

Metello, quamquam cognoverat arida  
 to (by) Metellus, although he had known dry (parched)  
 atque vasta loca esse inter Thalam que proximum  
 and desert places to be between Thala and the next  
 flumen, in spatio quinquaginta millium; tamen,  
 river, in a space of fifty miles; however

aggreditur supervadere omnes asperitates ac  
 he attempts to surmount all asperities (difficulties) and  
 etiam vincere naturam, spe belli patrandi,  
 even to overcome nature, in the hope of the war to-be-completed,  
 si potitus-foret ejus oppidi.  
 if he might have possessed [if he got possession] of that town.

Igitur, jubet omnia jumenta levare  
 Therefore, he orders all the beasts-of-burden to be lightened

sarcinis, nisi frumento decem dierum:  
 from the baggages, except corn of [for] ten days:

cæterum utres modò, et alia idonea  
 but [moreover] bladders only, and other (things) proper

aquæ portari. Præterea conquirat plurimum  
 for water to be carried. Besides he seeks the most

domiti pecoris ex agris quàm potest,  
 of tamed cattle out-of the lands as he is-able, [he collects as

que eò  
 many tame cattle from the fields as he can,] and there (on them)

imponit vasa cujusque modi, pleraque  
 he places the vessels of every manner (kind), most (of them)

lignea, collecta ex tuguriis Numidarum. Ad  
wooden, gathered out-of the cottages of the Numidians. To

hoc imperat finitumis qui  
this (besides) he orders to the neighbouring (people) wh.

dederant se Metello post fugam regis,  
had surrendered themselves to Metellus after the flight of the king,

quisque portaret quum plurimum aquæ;  
(that) every-one should carry as-much-as-possible of water;

prædicat diem que locum ubi forent  
he appoints-before the day and place where they should-be

præstò. Ipse onerat jumenta ex flumine,  
at-hand. Himself loads the beasts-of-burden from the river,

quam aquam diximus suprâ esse proxumam  
which water we have said above to be nearest

oppido. Instructus eo modo proficiscitur ad  
to the town. Furnished in that manner he sets-out to

Thalam. Deinde ubi ventum-est ad id loci, quò  
Thala. Afterwards when it was come to that of place, where

præceperat Numidis; et castra posita-sunt  
he had instructed to the Numidians [to be]; and the camps were placed

que munita; tanta vis aquæ dicitur  
(pitched) and fortified; so-great a force (quantity) of water is said

missa repentè coelo, ut ea foret  
(to have been) sent suddenly from heaven, that that might be (was)

modo satis que super exercitui. Præterea  
now enough and above (more) for the army. Besides

commeatus amplior spe;  
(there was) provision more-abundant (than) hope; [than was hoped

quia Numidæ, sicuti plerique in novâ deditione,  
for;] because the Numidians, as most in a new surrender,

intenderant officia.  
had strained (their) offices. [Had exceeded what they were required

Cæterùm milites usi (sunt) religione magis  
to do.] But the soldiers used religion more (than)

pluviâ, que ea res addidit multum animis  
the rain, and that thing added much to the minds (spirits)

eorum; nam rati (sunt) sese esse curæ  
of them; for they imagined themselves to be for care

immortalibus Diis. Deinde perveniunt ad Thalam  
to the immortal Gods. Afterwards they arrive at Thala

postero die, contra opinionem Jugurthæ.  
on the following day, contrary-to the opinion of Jugurtha.

Oppidani, qui crediderant se munitos  
The townsmen, who had believed themselves fortified

asperitate locorum, percussi magnâ atque  
by the roughness of the places, struck by the great and

insolitâ re, parare bellum nihilo segniùs;  
unusual thing, (began) to prepare war by nothing more-inactively;

nostri facere idem. Sed  
[not the less on that account;] our (men) to do the same. But

rex jam credens nihil infectum Metello,  
the king now believing nothing undone to (by) Metellus,

quippe qui industriâ vicerat omnia, arma,  
inasmuch-as who by industry had vanquished all (things) arms,

tela, locos, tempora, denique naturam ipsam,  
weapons, places, times (seasons), finally nature herself,

imperitantem cæteris, profugit noctu ex  
ruling to the rest (of things), escaped by night out-of

oppido cum liberis, et magnâ parte pecuniæ;  
the town with (his) children, and with a great part of the money;

neque moratus postea in ullo loco ampliùs  
neither having delayed afterwards in any place more (than)

unâ die, aut unâ nocte, simulabat sese properare  
one day, or one night, he did pretend himself to hasten

gratiâ negotii; cæterùm timebat  
by favour (for the sake) of business; but he did fear

proditionem, quam putabat posse vitare celeritate.  
treachery, which he did think to be-able to avoid by speed.

Nam talia consilia capi per otium et  
For (he knew) such counsels to be taken through leisure and

ex opportunitate. At ubi Metellus videt oppidanos  
from opportunity. But when Metellus sees the townsmen

intentos prælio, simul oppidum munitum et  
intent in the battle, at-the-same-time the town fortified both

operibus et loco, circumvenit mœnia vallo  
by works and by the place, he surrounds the walls with a rampart

que fossâ. Deinde jubet agere vineas  
and a ditch. Then he orders to act (put-in-action) mantelets

locis maxumè idoneis ex copiâ;  
in the places most suitable according-to the opportunity;

[in such places, out of the whole number of places, that were most suitable

que jacere aggerem super eas, et  
for them;] and to throw a mound above (beyond) those, and

turribus impositis super aggerem tutari opus et  
towers being placed upon the mound to defend the work and

administros. Contra hæc oppidani  
the managers (engineers). Against these (things) the townsmen (began)

festinare, parare; prorsus nihil fieri reliquum  
to hasten, to prepare; altogether nothing to be made left

ab utrisque. Denique Romani  
by each. [Nothing was left undone by each.] Finally the Romans

fatigati multo labore antè, que præliis, potiti (sunt)  
wearied by much labour before, and battles, possessed

oppido modò, post quadraginta dies,  
with the town [took the town] now, after forty days,

quàm ventum-erat eò; omnis præda  
than (since) it had been come thither; all the booty

corrupta (est) à perfugis. Postquam ii vident  
was destroyed by the deserters. After-that those see

murum feriri arietibus, que suas res  
the wall to be struck by the (battering) rams, and their things

afflictas, comportant aurum atque  
overthrown [and ruined], they carry the gold and

argentum et alia quæ decuntur prima  
silver and other (things) which are deemed the first [most valu-

regiam domum; ibi, onerati vino et  
able] (to) the royal house; there, loaded with wine and

epulis, corrumpunt que illa et domum, et semet  
with feasts, they destroy both them and the house, and themselves

igni; et ipsi volentes pendere eas pœnas,  
by fire; and themselves willing paid those penalties,

quas victi metuerant ab hostibus. Sed  
which being conquered they had feared from the enemies. But

pariter cum Thalâ captâ, legati  
 equally (at the same time) with Thala being taken, ambassadors  
 venerant ad Metellum ex oppido Lepti, orantes  
 had come to Metellus out-of the town Leptis, praying  
 uti mitteret præsidium que præfectum eò;  
 that he would send a garrison and a governor thither; [that]  
 quemdam Hamilcarem, nobilem, factiosum hominem  
 a certain Hamilcar, a noble, factious man  
 studere novis rebus; advorsum  
 to study for new things; [was exciting a revolution;] against  
 quem neque imperia magistratuum neque leges  
 whom neither the commands of the magistrates nor the laws  
 valerent; ni festinaret id, suam salutem,  
 might avail; unless he should hasten that, their-own safety,  
 socios illorum, fore in summo periculo.  
 the allies of them, to be about-to-be in the highest danger.  
 Nam Leptitani jam-inde à principio Jugurthini  
 For the Leptitani ever-since from the beginning of the Jugurthine  
 belli miserant ad consulem Bestiam, et postea  
 war had sent to the consul Bestia, and afterwards  
 Romam, rogatum amicitiam que societatem. Deinde,  
 to Rome, to entreat friendship and alliance. Afterwards,  
 ubi ea impetrata (sunt), mansere semper  
 when those (things) were obtained, they remained always  
 boni que fideles, et fecerant gnavè cuncta  
 good and faithful, and had done actively all (things)  
 imperata à Bestiâ, Albino, que Metello; que ita  
 ordered by Bestia, Albinus, and Metellus; and thus  
 adepti (sunt) facile ab imperatore, quæ  
 obtained easily from the commander, what (things)  
 petebant. Quatuor cohortes Ligurum emissæ  
 they did ask. Four cohorts of Ligurians were sent-out  
 eò, et Caius Annius præfectus. Id oppidum  
 thither, and Caius Annius (as) governor. That town  
 conditum-est ab Sidoniis, quos accepimus  
 was built by the Sidonians, whom we have received (heard)  
 profugos ob civiles discordias venisse  
 (being) exiles on-account-of civil discords to have come



in eos locos; cæterùm situm inter duas Syrtes,  
into those places; but situate between the two Syrtes,

quibus nomen inditum ex re.

to which the name (was) given from the thing. [From the nature

Nam sunt duo sinus in extremâ  
of the thing.] For there are two bays in the remotest

Africâ prope, impares magnitudine, pari  
Africa nearly, unequal in size, with equal (similar)

naturâ, quorum proxuma terra sunt præalta;  
nature, of which (the parts) nearest to the land are very-deep;

cætera alta, uti fors tulit; alia vadosa  
the rest deep, as chance has brought (directed); others fordable

in tempestate. Nam ubi mare cœpit esse magnum  
in a tempest. For when the sea has begun to be great

et sævire ventis, fluctus trahunt limum, que  
and to rage by the winds, the waves draw [move] mud, and

arenam et ingentia saxa: ita facies locorum  
sand and huge rocks: thus the appearance of the places

mutatur simul cum ventis; nominatæ-sunt Syrtes  
is changed together with the winds; they have been named Syrtes

ab tractu. Lingua ejus  
(quicksands) from the drawing [or dragging.] The language of that

civitatis modò conversa (est) connubio Numidarum;  
state lately was changed by marriage of the Numidians;

pleraque legum que cultûs Sidonica,  
most (things) of laws and of living (are) Sidonian, [their

quæ retinebant  
laws and customs are, for the most part, Sidonian,] which they did retain

eò faciliùs, quòd agebant ætatem procul  
therefore more-easily, because they did act (spend) age (life) far

ab imperio regis. Multi que vasti loci erant  
from the authority of the king. Many and desert places were

inter illos et frequentem Numidiam.  
between them and numerous (inhabited) Numidia [and the

Sed quoniam venimus in has  
densely inhabited Numidia.] But since we have come into these

regiones per negotia Leptitanorum, videtur non  
regions through the affairs of the Leptitani, it seems not

indignum memorare egregium atque mirabile facinus  
 unworthy to relate an excellent and admirable exploit  
 duorum Carthaginiensium; locus admonuit nos  
 of two Carthaginians; the place has reminded us  
 eam rem.  
 that thing.

Tempestate quâ Carthaginienses imperitabant  
 In the time in which the Carthaginians did rule-over  
 pleræque Africae, Cyrenenses quoque fuere magni  
 to most-of Africa, the Cyrenians also were great  
 atque opulenti. Ager in medio arenosus,  
 and wealthy. The land in the middle (was) sandy,  
 unâ specie; neque erat flumen neque mons,  
 with one appearance; neither was there river nor mountain,  
 qui discerneret fines eorum; quæ res habuit  
 which might distinguish the bounds of them; which thing held  
 eos in magno que diuturno bello.  
 them in a great and lasting war. [Which thing kept the

• Postquam

Carthaginienses and the Cyrenians in perpetual war.] After-that

legiones item classes utrimque sæpè fusæ (sunt),  
 the legions also the fleets on-either-side often were routed,  
 que fugatæ, et alteri attriverant alteros  
 and put-to-flight, and the others (the one) had wasted the others  
 aliquantum; veriti ne alius aggrederetur mox  
 some-what; having feared lest another might attack soon-after  
 victos que victores defessos, faciunt  
 the conquered and the conquerors wearied, they make  
 sponsonem per inducias, uti legati proficiscerentur  
 an agreement by truces, that deputies should depart

domo certo die; in quo loco fuissent  
 from home on a certain day; in what place they might have been  
 obvii is haberetur communis finis  
 opposite (had met) that should be held the common boundary  
 utriusque populi. Igitur duo fratres missi  
 of each people. Therefore the two brothers sent  
 Carthagine, quibus nomen erat Philænis,  
 from Carthage, to whom the name was Philæni,

maturavêre pergere iter; Cyrenenses iêre  
 hastened to proceed [with] the journey; the Cyrenians went  
 tardiùs. Cognovi parum, ne id evenerit  
 more-slowly. I have learned little, whether that may have happened  
 socordiâ an casu. Ceterùm tempestas solet  
 by inactivity or by chance. But a tempest is accustomed  
 retinere in illis locis haud secùs atque in  
 to detain in those places not otherwise and (than) in  
 mari. Nam ubi ventus coortus per æqualia  
 sea. For when the wind having arisen through the level  
 loca et nuda gignentium  
 places and naked (of things) producing [and destitute of vegetation]  
 excitavit arenam humo, ea agitata magnâ  
 has raised the sand from the ground, that being shaken with great  
 vi, solet implere ora que oculos; ita  
 violence, is accustomed to fill the faeces and eyes; thus  
 prospectu impedito, morari iter. Postquam  
 the view being obstructed, to delay the journey. After-that  
 Cyrenenses vident se esse aliquanto posteriores,  
 the Cyrenians see themselves to be by some-thing later,  
 et metuunt poenas domi ob rem  
 and fear punishments at home on-account-of the thing  
 corruptam; criminari  
 being spoiled; [ill managed] (they began) to accuse  
 Carthaginienses digressos domo antè tempus;  
 the Carthaginians having departed from home before the time;  
 conturbare rem; denique malle omnia quàm  
 to confuse the affair; finally to prefer all (things) than  
 abire victi. Sed cùm Pœni peterent  
 to depart overcome. But when the Carthaginians might (did) ask  
 aliam conditionem, tantummòdo æquam, Græci  
 another condition, provided only equal (fair), the Greeks  
 faciunt optionem Carthaginiensium, vel,  
 [of Cyrene] make (offer) a choice of the Carthaginians, either,  
 ut illi obruerentur vivi ibi,  
 that they should be overwhelmed (buried) alive there (in those places),  
 quos peterent fines suo populo; vel sese  
 which they might seek (as) boundaries for their people; or themselves

processuros eâdem conditione in quem locum  
about-to-advance with the same condition into what place

vellent: Philæni, conditione probatâ,  
they might will: the Philæni, the condition being approved,

condonavêre que se que suam vitam reipublicæ;  
bestowed both themselves and their life to the state;

ita obruti (sunt) vivi. Carthaginienses  
thus they were overwhelmed (buried) alive. The Carthaginians

consecravêre aras Philænis fratribus in eo loco;  
consecrated altars to the Philæni brothers in that place;

que alii honores instituti (sunt) domi illis. Nunc  
and other honours were instituted at home to them. Now

redeo ad rem. Postquam Jugurtha, Thalâ  
I return to the thing (subject). After-that Jugurtha, Thala

amissâ, putat nihil satis firmum contra Metellum;  
being lost, thinks nothing sufficiently firm against Metellus;

profectus per magnas solitudines cum paucis,  
having set-out through great deserts with a few,

pervenit ad Gætulos, ferum que incultum genus  
he arrived to the Gætulians, a fierce and uncultivated race

hominum; et eo tempore ignarum Romani  
of men; and in that time ignorant of the Roman

nominis. Cogit multitudinem eorum in-unum: ac  
name. He collects a multitude of them together: and

paullatim consuefacit habere ordines, sequi  
by-degrees accustoms (them) to hold ranks, to follow

signa, observare imperium, item facere alia  
standards, to observe command, also to do other

militaria. Præterea perducit proximos  
military (things). Besides he leads-over the nearest (friends)

regis Bocchi, magnis muneribus et majoribus  
of king Bocchus, by great presents and by greater

promissis ad studium sui:  
promises to a zeal of him: [to be zealous for him, and his

quís adjutoribus aggressus regem, impellit  
cause:] by which helpers having accosted the king, he urges

utî suscipiat bellum advorsum Romanos. Id  
(him) that he may undertake war against the Romans. That

fuit facilius que pronius eâ gratiâ,  
 was more-easy and more-inclined (ready) from that favour (account),

quòd Bocchus, initio hujusce belli, miserat  
 because Bocchus, in the beginning of this war, had sent

legatos Romam petitem fœdus et amicitiam. Quam  
 ambassadors to Rome to solicit a treaty and friendship. Which

opportunissimam rem, bello incepto, pauci  
 most convenient thing, the war being begun, a few

impediverant cæci avaritiâ, quîs erat mos  
 had hindered blind by avarice, to whom it was a custom

vendere omnia honesta atque inhonesta.  
 to sell all (things) honourable and dishonourable.

Etiam filia Jugurthæ nupserat antea Boccho.  
 Also the daughter of Jugurtha had married before to Bocchus.

Verum ea necessitudo ducitur levis apud Numidas  
 But that relationship is deemed light among Numidians

que Mauros: quod singuli habent quam-plurimas  
 and Moors: because each have very many

uxores, quisque pro opibus; alii  
 wives, every-one according-to (their) riches; others (some)

denas; alii plures: sed reges amplius eò. Ita  
 ten; others more: but the kings more therefore. Thus

animus distrahitur multitudo: obtinet  
 (their) mind (affection) is divided by the multitude: it obtains

nullam pro sociâ: omnes sunt pariter viles.  
 none for a partner: all are equally cheap (despised).

Igitur, exercitus conveniunt in locum placitum  
 Therefore, the armies assemble into a place agreed-on

ambobus: ibi fide datâ et acceptâ, Jugurtha  
 to-both: there faith being given and received, Jugurtha

accendit animum Bocchi oratione: Romanos esse  
 inflames the mind of Bocchus by a speech: the Romans to be

injustos, profundâ avaritiâ,  
 unjust, with (of) profound avarice, [insatiable in their avarice,]

communes hostes omnium: illos habere eandem  
 common enemies of all: them to have the same

causam belli cum Boccho, quam secum, et  
 cause of war with Bocchus, which (they had) with him, and

cum aliis gentibus; lubidinem imperitandi, quibus  
with other nations; a lust of ruling, to whom

omnia regna sint advorsa: tum sese,  
all kingdoms are inimical: then himself,

Carthaginienses paullò antè, item regem Persen;  
the Carthaginians a little before, also king Perses;

pòst uti quisque videatur opulentissimus, ita  
afterwards, as each may seem most-wealthy, so

fore hostem Romanis.

to be about-to-be an enemy to the Romans. [So he would be considered

His atque aliis talibus  
as an enemy of the Romans.] These and other such (words)

dictis, constituunt iter ad oppidum Cirtam;  
being said, they appoint (their) march to the town Cirta;

quòd Q. Metellus locaverat prædam, que captivos,  
because Quintus Metellus had placed the booty, and -the prisoners,

et impedimenta ibi. Ita Jugurtha ratus (est)  
and the baggages there. Thus Jugurtha thought (it)

fore pretium operæ, urbe aut captâ;  
to be about-to-be the price of the labour, the city either being taken;

aut si Romanus venisset auxilio  
or if the Roman (general) might have come to aid

suis, sese certaturos prælio. Nam,  
to his-own, themselves (to be) about-to-contend by a battle. For,

callidus, festinabat id modo imminuere pacem  
crafty, he did hasten that now to diminish the peace

Bocchi;  
of Bocchus; [to lessen Bocchus's chance of making peace;] lest

agitando moras, mallet aliud quàm  
by managing delays, he should wish-rather another (thing) than

bellum. Postquam imperator cognovit de societate  
war. After-that the commander knew of the alliance

regum, facit copiam pugnandi, non temerè  
of the kings, he makes an opportunity of fighting, not rashly

omnibus locis, neque uti consueverat sæpè  
in all places, nor as he had been accustomed often

jam, Jugurthâ victo: ceterum castris  
already, Jugurtha being conquered: but the camps

munitis haud procul ab Cirtâ, opperitur reges;  
being fortified not far from Cirta, he awaits the kings;

ratus esse melius, Mauris cognitis,  
having thought (it) to be better, the Moors being known, [the cha-

facere pugnam ex  
racter of the Moors being known,] to make battle according-to

commodo, quoniam is novus hostis  
convenience, [advantageously,] since that new enemy

accesserat. Interim, fit certior Româ  
had come-up (was added). Mean-time, he is made more-sure from Rome

per litteras, provinciam Numidiam datam (esse)  
by letters, the province Numidia to have been given

Mario. Nam acceperat antè, factum (esse)  
to Marius. For he had received (news) before, to have been made

consulem. Quibus  
consul. [For he had before heard that he was made consul.] By which

rebus percussus supra bonum atque honestum,  
things being struck beyond (what was) good or honourable,

neque tenere lacrimas neque moderari  
(he was able) neither to hold (his) tears nor to govern

linguam: egregius vir in aliis artibus,  
(his) tongue: an excellent man in other arts (qualities),

pati ægritudinem nimis molliter.  
(he was able) to endure sorrow too softly (effeminately).

Quam rem alii vortebant in superbiam;  
Which thing others did turn into pride; [did attribute to

alii bonum ingenium  
pride;] others (said) (his) good ability [his honourable spirit]

accensum-esse contumeliâ: multi, quòd victoria  
to have been inflamed by the insult: many (said), because the victory

jam parta eriperetur ex manibus:  
already obtained might be (was) snatched out-of (his) hands:

cognitum satis nobis, illum excruciatum (esse)  
it has been known sufficiently to us, him to have been tormented

magis honore Marii quàm suâ injuriâ; neque  
more by the honour of Marius than by his-own injury; nor

fuisse laturum tam anxie, si provincia  
to have been about-to-bear (it) so solicitously, if the province

adempta traderetur alii quàm Mario. Igitur  
 taken-away might be delivered to another than to Marius. Therefore

impeditus eo dolore, et quia videbatur  
 hindered by that grief, and because it did seem (the part)

stultitiæ curare alienam rem suo periculo,  
 of folly to attend-to another's affair with his-own danger,

mittit legatos ad Bocchum postulatum  
 he sends ambassadors to Bocchus to request (that)

“ne-fieret hostis Romano populo sine  
 “he would not-become an enemy to the Roman people without

caussâ: eum habere magnam copiam societatis que  
 cause: him to have a great opportunity of an alliance and,

amicitiæ conjungendæ,  
 of-friendship to be joined, [of entering into alliance and friendship

quæ esset potior bello:  
 with the Roman people,] which might be better (than) war:

quamquam confideret suis opibus, tamen,  
 although he might (did) trust to his resources, however,

debere non mutare incerta pro certis;  
 to owe (he ought) not to change uncertain (things) for certain;

omne bellum sumi facile, cæterùm desinere  
 every war to be taken-up easily, but to end

ægerrumè; initium et finem ejus non esse in  
 most-difficultly; the beginning and end of it not to be in

potestate ejusdem, licere cuivis, etiam  
 the power of the same (person), to be-lawful for any-one, even

ignavo, incipere; deponi cùm victores  
 for the cowardly, to begin (it); to be laid-aside when the conquerors

velint: proinde consuleret sibi que suo  
 may will: wherefore he should consult for himself and for his

regno; neu misceret suas florentes res cum  
 kingdom; nor should he mix his flourishing affairs with

perditis Jugurthæ.” Rex facit verba placidè satis  
 the ruined (affairs) of Jugurtha.” The king answers calmly enough

ad ea: “Sese cupere pacem, sed misereri  
 to those (words): “Himself to desire peace, but to pity

fortunarum Jugurthæ; si eadem copia fieret  
 of the fortunes of Jugurtha; if the same opportunity might be made



illi, omnia conventura." Imperator  
to him, all (things) (should be) about-to-agree." The commander

rursus mittit nuncios, contra postulata  
again sends messengers, against [in reply to] the requests

Bocchi. Ille probare partim, abnuere alia.  
of Bocchus. He (willed) to approve partly, to refuse other (parts).

Eo modo, nunciis missis que remissis sæpè  
In that manner, messengers being-sent and sent-back often

ab utroque, tempus procedere, et bellum  
by each, the time (began) to advance, and the war

trahi intactum ex voluntate Metelli.  
to be protracted untouched according-to the will of Metellus.

At Marius, ut diximus suprà, factus consul  
But Marius, as we have said above, being made consul

cupientissimâ plebe, postquam populus jussit  
by the most-eager common-people, after-that the people ordered

provinciam Numidiam ei, jam antea infestus  
the province Numidia for him, already before hostile

nobilitati; verò tum multus atque  
to the nobility; but then [he] (began) much (frequently) and

ferox instare; modò lædere singulos,  
haughty to urge (them); now to injure (insult) individuals,

modò universos: dictitare, "Sese cepisse  
now the whole: to say-often, "Himself to have taken

consulatum spolia ex illis victis:" præterea alia  
the consulship (as) spoils from them overcome:" besides other

magnifica pro se, et dolentia illis; interim  
splendid (things) for himself, and grieving to them; mean-time

habere prima, quæ erant opus bello:  
to have first, (those things) which were needful for war:

postulare supplementum legionibus; arcessere  
to require a complement for the legions; to send-for

auxilia à populis, et regibus, que sociis: præterea  
auxiliaries from peoples, and kings, and allies: besides

accire quemque fortissimum ex Latio, plerosque  
to summon each bravest (man) out-of Latium, [the] most

cognitos militiâ, paucos famâ, et  
known [to him] in warfare, [a] few by fame, and

**ambiendo cogere homines, stipendiis**  
 by canvassing to compel [to induce] men, (their) pays  
**emeritis, proficisci secum. Neque**  
 (military duties) being served-out, to set-out with him. Nor  
**senatus, quamquam erat adversus, audebat**  
 the senate, although it was hostile (to him), did dare  
**abnuere illi de ullo negotio: cæterum etiam**  
 to refuse to him about any business: [thing:] but even  
**lætus decreverat supplementum;**  
 joyful had decreed a complement; [a new levy of soldiers;]  
**quia putabatur militiam plebi neque**  
 because it was thought warfare (to be) to the common-people neither  
**volenti,**  
 willing, [because military service was thought to be disagreeable to the  
**et Marius aut amissurus usum**  
 common people,] and Marius either about-to-lose the advantage  
**belli aut studium vulgi. Sed ea res**  
 of the war or the zeal of the common-people. But that thing  
**sperata (est) frustrâ. Tanta lubido eundi cum**  
 was hoped in-vain. So-great a passion of going with  
**Mario invaserat plerosque: quisque**  
 Marius had seized most (of them): each (did think)  
**sese fore locupletem prædâ; rediturum**  
 himself to be about-to-be wealthy by the booty; about-to-return  
**domum victorem: trahebant**  
 [and would return] home conqueror: they did draw (resolve) [they  
**alia hujuscemodi animis; et**  
 did fancy] other (things) of-this-kind in (their) minds; and  
**Marius arrexerat eos non paullum suâ oratione.**  
 Marius had roused them not a little by his speech.  
**Nam, postquam, omnibus quæ postulaverat**  
 For, after-that, all (things) which he had required  
**decretis, vult scribere milites, advocavit**  
 being decreed, he wills to write (levy) soldiers, he summoned  
**concionem populi, causâ hortandi,**  
 an assembly of the people, by cause (for the sake) of exhorting (them),  
**et simul exagitandi nobilitatem,**  
 and at-the-same-time of harassing [inveighing against] the nobility,

utî consueverat; deinde disseruit hoc modo:  
as he had been accustomed; then he discoursed in this manner:

“Ego scio Quirites, plerosque petere imperium  
“I know Romans, most (persons) to solicit power

à vobis, et gerere, postquam adepti-sunt,  
from you, and to carry (it) on, after-that they have obtained (it),

non iisdem artibus: primò esse industrios,  
not by the same arts (qualities): at first to be industrious,

supplices, modicos, dehinc agere ætatem  
suppliant, moderate, afterwards to act (spend their) age

per ignaviam et superbiam; sed videtur  
through sloth and pride; but (the thing) seems

contrà mihi. Nam quo universa  
otherwise to me. For by what (by how much) the whole

respublica est pluris, quàm consulatus aut  
commonwealth is of more (consequence), than the consulship or

prætura, eo illam debere  
the prætorship, by that (by so much) that to owe (ought)

administrari majore curâ, quàm hæc peti.  
to be administered with greater care, than these to be sought.

[That offices ought to be administered with greater care, than they are

sought for.] Neque fallit me, quantum negotii  
Neither does it deceive me, how-much of business

sustineam cum vestro maximo beneficio.

I may support with your greatest kindness. [How great a

task your kindness has imposed on me.] Parare bellum, et  
To prepare war, and

simul parcere ærario; cogere eos ad  
at-the-same-time to spare to the treasury; to compel these to

militiam, quos nolis  
warfare, [to military service,] whom thou mayest be-unwilling

offendere; curare omnia domi que foris; et  
to offend; to take-care-of all (things) at home and abroad; and

agere ea inter invidos, occursantes,  
to act those (things) among the envious, the thwarting,

factiosos, est, Quirites, asperius  
the factions, is, Romans, more-rough (more-difficult) (than)

cpinione. Ad hoc, si alii  
supposition. [Is supposed.] To this (besides), if others.

deliquêre, vetus nobilitas, fortia facta  
have transgressed, (their) ancient nobility, the brave deeds

majorum, opes cognatorum et affinium,  
of (their) ancestors, the resources of relations and of kinsmen,

multæ clientelæ, omnia hæc adsunt  
many patronages, all these (things) are-present

præsidio: omnes spes sitæ mihi in memet;  
for a safeguard: all hopes (are) placed for me in myself;

quas est necesse tutari virtute et innocentia:  
which it is necessary to defend by valour and by integrity:

nam alia sunt infirma. Et,  
for other (qualities) [my other dependencies] are weak. And,

intelligo illud Quirites, ora omnium esse  
I understand that Romans, the countenances of all to be

conversa in me; æquos et bonos favere,  
turned upon me; the equal (just) and good to favour (me),

quippe mea benefacta procedunt reipublicæ;  
because my benefits succeed for the state; [a faithful

nobilitatem  
discharge of my duty is for the good of the republic;] the nobility

quærere locum invadendi. Quò est  
to seek a place (opportunity) of attacking (me). Wherefore it is

adnitendum mihi acriùs, uti vos neque  
to-be-striven to (by) me more-vigorously, that you neither

capiamini, et illi sint frustrà.  
may be taken, [ensnared,] and they may be in-vain (disappointed).

Fui ita à pueritiâ ad hoc ætatis, ut  
I have been so from boyhood to this (period) of age, that

habeam omnes labores, pericula consueta.  
I may have all labours, dangers accustomed. [That I am

Est non consilium,  
accustomed to all labours and dangers.] It is not (my) design,

Quirites, uti quæ faciebam ante vestra  
Romans, that what (things) I did do [before] (as) your

beneficia gratuito,  
benefits gratuitously, [before I received any reward from you,]

deseram ea, mercede acceptâ. Est difficile  
I may desert those, a reward being received. It is difficult

illis temperare in potestatibus,  
for those to govern in authorities, [to act with moderation in

qui simulavêre sese probos per  
power,] who have pretended themselves honest through

ambitionem; vertit in naturam jam ex  
ambition; it has turned into nature now from

consuetudine mihi benefacere, qui egi omnem  
custom for me to act-well, who have acted (spent) all

ætatem in optumis artibus. Jussistis  
(my) age in the best arts [pursuits]. You have ordered

me gerere bellum cum Jugurtha; quam rem  
me to carry-on the war with Jugurtha; which thing

nobilitas tulit ægerrumè. Reputate, quæso, cum  
the nobility has borne most-hardly. Consider, I pray, with

vestris animis, num sit melius id mutari, si  
your minds, whether it may be better that to be changed, if

mittatis quem ex illo globo nobilitatis ad hoc,  
ye may send any out-of that band of the nobility to this,

aut aliud tale negotium, hominem veteris prosapiæ,  
or other such business, a man of old stock,

ac multarum imaginum, et nullius stipendii;  
and of many statues, and of no military-service;

scilicet ut in tantâ re, ignarus omnium,  
forsooth that in so-great an affair, ignorant of all (things),

trepidet, festinet, sumat aliquem monitorem  
he may tremble, may hurry, may take some admonisher

sui officii ex populo. Evenit ita plerumque;  
of his duty out-of the people. It has happened so generally;

ut is, quem vos jussistis imperare, quærat  
that he, whom you have ordered to command, may seek

aliud imperatorem sibi. At ego scio, Quirites,  
another commander for himself. But I know, Romans,

qui postquam facti-sunt consules, cœperint  
(those) who after-that they were made consuls, may have begun

legere acta majorum, et militaria  
to read the deeds of (their) ancestors, and the military

præcepta Græcorum; præposterī homines! Nam  
 precepts of the Greeks; the preposterous men! For  
 est posterius tempore, prius re atque usu,  
 it is later in time, (but) sooner in fact and experience,  
 genere quàm fieri.  
 to carry-on (an office) than to be made (an officer). [Qualifications

and experience ought to precede the election of any one to the consul-

Compare me  
 ship, if it is to be advantageous to the republic.] Compare me  
 nunc, Quirites, novum hominem, cum superbiâ  
 now, Romans, a new man, with the pride  
 illorum. Quæ illi solent audire et legere,  
 of them. What (things) they are accustomed to hear and to read,  
 egomet vidi partem eorum; gessi alia;  
 I-myself have seen part of them; I have carried-on others;  
 quæ illi litteris ego didici ea  
 what they (have learned) by letters I have learned those (things)

militando. Nunc existimate vos facta an  
 by serving-in-war. Now think ye (whether) deeds or  
 dicta sint pluris. Contemnunt meam  
 words may be of more (value). They despise my

novitatem, ego, ignaviam illorum. Fortuna  
 newness (obscurity), I, the inactivity of them. (My) fortune

mihi, probra objectantur illis.  
 (is objected) to me, (their) disgraces are objected to them.

Quamquam ego existumo naturam omnium unam et  
 Although I think the nature of all one and

communem, sed quemque fortissimum  
 common, but (I think) each bravest (man)

generosissimum. Ac si posset jam quæri  
 the most-noble. And if it might be-able now to be inquired

ex patribus Albini aut Bestiæ, ne  
 from the fathers of Albinus or of Bestia, whether

maluerint me an illos gigni ex se;  
 they may have-rather me or them to be begotten of themselves;

quid creditis responsuros, nisi, sese  
 what believe ye (them) about-to-answer, unless, themselves

voluisse liberos, quàm optimos? Quòd  
 to have willed children, as the best (the best possible)? But  
 si despiciunt me jure; faciant idem suis  
 if they despise me by right; let them do the same to their  
 majoribus; quibus nobilitas cœpit ex virtute,  
 ancestors; to whom (their) nobility has begun out-of valour,  
 uti mihi. Invident meo honori; ergo invideant  
 as to me. They envy to my honour; therefore let them envy  
 labori, innocentiae, meis periculis etiam;  
 to (my) labour, integrity, to my dangers also;  
 quoniam cepi illum per hæc. Verum  
 since I have received that (honour) by these. But (those)  
 homines corrupti superbiâ agunt ætatem  
 men corrupted by pride act (spend) age [their life]  
 ita, quasi contemnant vestros honores;  
 so, as-if they may despise [as if they despised] your honours;  
 petunt hos, quasi vixerint honestè.  
 they seek these (honours), as-if they may have lived honourably.  
 Næ illi sunt falsi, qui expectant pariter  
 Truly they are deceived, who expect equally  
 diversissimas res, voluptatem ignaviæ, et  
 the most-different things, the pleasure of inactivity, and  
 præmia virtutis. Atque etiam cùm faciunt verba  
 the rewards of valour. And also when they make words  
 apud vos aut in senatu,  
 among you [when they speak before you] or in the senate,  
 extollunt suos majores plerâque oratione; putant  
 they praise their ancestors in most-of the speech; they think  
 sese clariores memorando fortia facta eorum;  
 themselves more-illustrious by recording the brave deeds of them;  
 quod est contrâ. Nam quanto vita  
 which is on-the-contrary. For by how-much the life  
 illorum præclarior, tanto socordia horum  
 of them (was) more-illustrious, by so-much the indolence of these (is)  
 flagitiosior. Et profectò res habet se ita :  
 more-criminal. And truly the thing has itself thus :  
 gloria majorum est quasi lumen posteris,  
 the glory of ancestors is as-if a light to (their) posterities,

neque patitur bona neque mala eorum  
 nor suffers the good nor evil (qualities) of them (to remain)  
 in occulto. Ego, Quirites, patior inopiam hujusce  
 in secret. I, Romans, suffer the want of this  
 rei. Verum licet mihi  
 thing. [Of having illustrious ancestors.] But it is-lawful for me  
 dicere meamet facta, id quod est multo præclarius.  
 to say my own deeds, that which is by much more-illustrious.  
 Nunc videte quàm iniqui sint. Quod  
 Now see how unjust they may be (they are). What  
 arrogant sibi ex alienâ virtute, concedunt  
 they assume to themselves from others' valour, they grant  
 non id mihi ex mea; scilicet, quia habeo  
 not that to me out-of my-own; forsooth, because I have  
 non imagines, et quia nova nobilitas est  
 not images (statues), and because a new nobility is  
 mihi; quam certè est meliùs peperisse quàm  
 for me; which surely it is better to have produced than  
 corrupisse acceptam. Equidem ego ignoro non,  
 to have spoiled (it) received. Indeed I am ignorant not,  
 si velint jam respondere mihi, orationem  
 if they may will now to answer to me, a speech  
 abundè facundam et compositam fore  
 abundantly eloquent and composed (laboured) to be about-to-be  
 illis. Sed, cùm in vestro  
 to them. [Will be at their command.] But, when [amidst your  
 maximo beneficio lacerent me que vos  
 most ample favour] they may tear (they revile) me and you  
 maledictis omnibus locis, placuit non reticere,  
 with reproaches in all places, it has pleased (me) not to be-silent,  
 ne quis duceret modestiam in conscientiam.  
 lest any-one might lead (construct) moderation into consciousness.  
 Nam quidem nulla oratio potest lædere me, ex  
 For indeed no speech is-able to injure me, according-to  
 sententiâ mei animi. Quippe, est necesse vera  
 the opinion of my mind. Because, it is necessary a true (speech)  
 prædicet benè; vita que mei  
 may declare well; [must speak well of me;] (my) life and my



mores superant falsam. Sed quoniam  
 manners overcome (are above) a false (one). But since  
 vestra consilia accusantur, qui imposuistis  
 your counsels are accused, who have placed (conferred)  
 summum honorem et maxumum negotium mihi;  
 the highest honour and the greatest business to (on) me;  
 reputate etiam atque etiam . num id  
 revolve also and also (again and again) whether that  
 sit poenitendum. Possum non ostentare imagines  
 may be to-be-repented. I am-able not to display statues  
 neque triumphos aut consulatus meorum majorum  
 nor triumphs or the consulships of my ancestors  
 caussâ fidei;  
 by cause (for the sake) of faith (proof); [in order to obtain your confi-  
 dence;] at si res postulet hastas,  
 but if the thing may require (I can display) spears,  
 vexillum, phaleras, alia militaria dona, præterea  
 a standard, trappings, other military gifts, besides  
 cicatrices advorso corpore. Hæ sunt meæ  
 scars in opposite (front) body. These are my  
 imagines, hæc nobilitas, non relictæ  
 statues, this (my) nobility, not left [to me]  
 hæreditate, ut illa illis, sed quæ ego quæsi  
 by inheritance, as those to them, but which I have sought  
 meis plurimis laboribus et periculis. Mea verba  
 by my very-many labours and dangers. My words  
 sunt non composita;  
 are not composed; [they say my language is not polished;]  
 facio id parvi; virtus ipsa ostendit  
 I make (regard) that of little (consequence); virtue herself shows  
 se satis; est opus illis artificio uti  
 herself sufficiently; there is need to them with (of) artifice that  
 tegant turpia facta oratione. Neque didici  
 they may cover shameful deeds by speech. Nor have I learned  
 Græcas litteras. Placebat parum dicere  
 Greek letters (literature). It did please (me) little to learn  
 eas, quippe quæ profuerunt nihil  
 those (letters), forsooth which profited nothing to (their)

doctoribus ad virtutem. At  
 teachers to valour. [To make them brave men.] But

doctus-sum illa multo optuma reipublicæ;  
 I have been taught those (things) by much the best for the state;

ferire hostem, agitare præsidia, metuere  
 to strike an enemy, to agitate (mount) guards, to fear

nihil, nisi turpem famam; pati hiemem et  
 nothing, unless a base character; to suffer winter and

æstatem juxta; requiescere humi; tolerare inopiam  
 summer alike; to rest on the ground; to endure want

et laborem eodem tempore. Ego hortabor milites  
 and labour in the same time. I will exhort the soldiers

his præceptis; neque colam illos arctè,  
 by these precepts; neither shall I treat them strictly (parsimo-

me opulenter; neque faciam laborem  
 niously), myself richly; nor shall I make the labour

illorum meam gloriam. Hoc est utile, hoc civile  
 of them my glory. This is useful, this citizen-like

imperium. Namque, cum tute agas per  
 authority. For, when thou-thyself mayest act by

mollitiem, cogere exercitum  
 softness (remissness), [in luxury and indulgence,] to force an army

supplicio, id est esse dominum,  
 by punishment, [to perform its duties,] that is to be a despot,

non imperatorem. Vestri majores, faciundo hæc  
 not a commander. Your ancestors, by doing these

atque talia, celebravêre que se que  
 and like (things), have distinguished both themselves and

republicam. Quis nobilitas freta, ipsa dissimilis  
 the state. On whom the nobility relying, itself unlike

moribus, contemnit nos æmulos illorum; et repetit  
 in manners, despises us the rivals of them; and seeks

omnes honores non ex merito, sed quasi debitos  
 all honours not according-to merit, but as-if due

a vobis. Cæterùm superbissimi homines errant  
 [from you]. But these most-haughty men mistake

procul. Majores eorum reliquêre illis omnia,  
 far. The ancestors of them left to them all (things)

quæ licebat, divitias, imagines, præclaram  
 which it was-lawful, riches, statues, an illustrious

memoriam sibi; reliquere non virtutem;  
 memory of themselves; they have left not virtue;

neque poterant: ea sola neque datur neque  
 nor were they able: that alone neither is given nor

accipitur dono. Aiunt me sordidum et  
 is received by gift. They say me (to be) mean and

incultis moribus; quia exorno convivium  
 with uncultivated manners; because I adorn a banquet

parum scite; neque habeo ullum histrionem neque  
 little skilfully; neither have I any buffoon nor

coquum pluris pretii quam villicum: quæ  
 cook of more price than (my) steward: which (charges)

lubet mihi, Quirites, confiteri. Nam accepi  
 it pleases to me, Romans, to confess. For I have received

ita, et ex meo parente et ex aliis sanctis  
 (heard) so, both from my parent and from other reverend

viris, munditias convenire mulieribus, laborem viris,  
 men, refinements to suit to women, labour to men,

que plus gloriæ quam divitiarum oportere esse  
 and more of glory than of riches to behove (ought) to be

omnibus bonis: arma, non supellectilem, esse  
 to all good (men): arms, not furniture, to be

decori. Quin, ergo, faciant id semper quod  
 for ornament. But, therefore, let them do that always which

juvat, quod æstumant carum: ament,  
 delights (them), which they value dear: let them love,

potent: ubi habuere adolescentiam, ibi  
 let them drink: where they have had (their) youth, there

agent senectutem, in conviviis, dediti  
 let them act (spend) old-age, in banquets, devoted

ventri, et turpissimæ parti corporis; relinquunt  
 to the belly, and to the basest part of the body; let them leave

sudorem, pulverem, et alia talia nobis, quibus  
 sweat, dust, and other such (things) to us, to whom

illa sunt jucundiora epulis. Verum est  
 those (things) are more-pleasant (than) feasts. But it is

non ita. Nam ubi turpissimi viri dedecoravêre  
not so. For when the basest men have disgraced

se omnibus flagitiis, eunt ereptum præmia  
themselves with all infamies, they go to snatch-away the rewards

bonorum. Ita luxuria et ignavia, pessumæ artes,  
of the good. Thus luxury and indolence, the worst arts

injustissimè officiunt nihil illis, qui  
(qualities), most-unjustly injure nothing to those, who

coluêre eas; sunt cladi innoxie  
have cultivated them; they are for destruction to the innocent

reipublicæ. Nunc quoniam respondi illis,  
state. Now since I have answered to them,

quantum mei mores, non flagitia illorum  
as-much-as my manners, not the infamies of them

poscebant; loquar pauca de republicâ.  
did require; I shall speak a few (words) concerning the state.

Primum omnium, Quirites, habete bonum animum  
First of all, Romans, have a good mind

de Numidiâ; nam removistis omnia  
(spirit) concerning Numidia; for you have removed all (things)

quæ tutata-sunt Jugurtham ad hoc tempus,  
which have protected Jugurtha to this time, (viz.)

avaritiam, imperitiam, superbiam. Deinde exercitus  
avarice, unskillfulness, pride. Then the army

ibi, est sciens locorum,  
there, is knowing of the places, [acquainted with the localities,]

sed mehercule magis strenuus quàm felix: nam  
but by-Hercules more brave than fortunate: for

magna pars ejus attrita-est avaritiâ aut  
a great part of it has been wasted by the avarice or

temeritate ducum. Quamobrem, vos, quibus  
by the rashness of the commanders. Wherefore, you, to whom

militaris ætas est, adnitimini mecum, et capessite  
a military age is, strive with me, and take-in-hand

republicam; neque metus ceperit  
the state; neither fear may have taken (let-it-take)

quemquam ex  
any-one [neither let fear take possession of any one] from

calamitate aliorum, aut superbiâ imperatorum.  
the misfortune of others, or from the pride of-commanders.

Egomet adero vobiscum in agmine, idem  
I-myself shall be-present with you on the march, the same (your)

consultor in prælio, et socius periculi  
adviser in battle, and the companion of the danger [with you];

que geram me que vos juxtâ in omnibus  
and I shall conduct myself and you alike in all

rebus. Et profecto, diis juvantibus, omnia  
things. And truly, the gods assisting, all (things)

sunt matura, victoria præda, laus: si quæ  
are ripe, victory booty, praise: if which (things)

essent dubia, aut procul, tamen, decet omnes  
might be (wére) doubtful, or far-off, yet, it becomes all

bonos subvenire reipublicæ. Etenim nemo  
good (men) to aid to the state. For no-one

factus (est) immortalis ignaviâ: neque quisquam  
has been made immortal - by indolence: nor any

parens optavit liberis, utî forent æterni;  
parent has wished for (his) children, that they might be everlasting;

magis utî exigèrent vitam boni que honesti.  
rather that they might spend life (as) good and honest (men).

Dicerem plura, Quirites, si verba adderent virtutem  
I would say more, Romans, if words might add valour

timidis: nam puto abundè dictum strenuis."  
to the fearful: for I think abundantly said for the brave."

Oratione hujuscemodi habitâ, postquam Marius  
A speech of this-kind being held, after-that Marius

videt animos plebis arrectos, onerat naves  
sees the minds of the common-people roused, he loads ships

properè commeatu, stipendio, armis, que aliis  
speedily with provision, with pay, with arms, and with other

utilibus: jubet A. Manlium, legatum,  
useful (things): he orders Aulus Manlius, (his) lieutenant,

proficisci cum his. Ipse, interea, scribere  
to set-out with these. Himself, (began) meanwhile, to write (levy)

milites, non more majorum, neque ex  
soldiers, not in the manner of (our) ancestors, nor according-to

classibus, sed uti libido cujusque erat,  
 classes (tribes), but as the desire of every-one was,

plerosque censos capite.  
 most (of them) registered by the head (nominal citizens). [Most

Alii  
 of them were of the sixth or poorest class of citizens.] Others

memorabant id factum (esse) inopiâ bonorum,  
 did relate that to have been done from want of good (men),

alii per ambitionem consulis; quod  
 others through the ambition of the consul; because

celebratus-erat que auctus ab eo genere;  
 he had been distinguished and increased by that kind (of people);

[because he owed his reputation and advancement to office principally to

et quisque egestissimus  
 that class of people;] and every most-needy (person) (was)

opportunissimus homini quærenti potentiam; cui  
 most-suitable to a man seeking power; to whom

sua sunt neque curæ, quippe nulla  
 his-own (things) are neither for a care, because (he has) none

quæ, et omnia videntur honesta cum  
 which (exist), and all (things) seem honourable with

pretio. Igitur, Marius profectus in  
 a price (reward). Therefore, Marius having set-out into

Africam cum majore numero aliquanto quàm  
 Africa with a greater number by something than

decretum-erat, advehitur Uticam paucis diebus.  
 had been decreed, is borne to Utica in a few days.

Exercitus traditur ei à P. Rutilio legato.  
 The army is delivered-up to him by Publius Rutilius the lieutenant.

Nam Metellus fugerat conspectum Marii; ne  
 For Metellus had avoided the sight of Marius; lest

videret ea quæ audita animus  
 he might see those (things) which being heard (his) mind

nequiverat tolerare. Sed consul, legionibus que  
 had been unable to endure. But the consul, the legions and

auxiliariis cohortibus expletis, proficiscitur in  
 auxiliary cohorts being filled-up, sets-out into

fertilem agrum, et onustum prædâ. Donat  
a fertile land, and loaded with booty. He presents

omnia capta ibi militibus: dein aggreditur  
all (things) taken there to the soldiers: then he attacks

castella et oppida parum munita naturâ et viris:  
the castles and towns little fortified by nature and by men:

facere multa prælia, cæterùm alia levia  
(he began) to make many battles, but other light (ones)

aliis locis. Interim, novi milites  
in other (different) places. Mean-time, the new soldiers (began)

adesse pugnae sine metu; videre fugientes capi  
to be-present to battle without fear; to see the fleeing to be taken

aut occidi; quemque fortissimum tutissimum:  
or to be slain; every bravest (man) the safest:

libertatem, patriam, que parentes, et omnia alia  
liberty, country, and parents, and all other

tegi armis: gloriam atque divitias  
(things) to be protected by arms: glory and riches

quæri. Sic brevi spatio,  
to be sought (acquired) [thereby]. Thus in a short space (time),

novi que veteres coaluere, et virtus omnium  
the new and the old (soldiers) coalesced, and the valour of all

facta (est) æqualis. At ubi reges cognoverunt de  
was made equal. But when the kings knew of

adventu Marii, abeunt diversi in difficiles  
the arrival of Marius, they depart different (apart) into difficult

locos. Ita, placuerat Jugurthæ, speranti hostes  
places. Thus, it had pleased to Jugurtha, hoping the enemies

mox effusos, posse invadi; Romanos, sicuti  
by-and-by scattered, to be-able to be attacked; the Romans, so-as

plerosque, metu remoto, futuros laxius  
most (persons), fear being removed, about-to-be more-remissly

que licentius. Interea, Metellus profectus  
and more-licentious. Mean-time, Metellus having set-out

Romam, accipitur lætissimis animis contra suam  
to Rome, is received with most-joyful minds against his

spem: juxta carus plebi que patribus  
hope: equally dear to the common-people and to the fathers

postquam invidia decesserat. Sed Marius  
 after-that the odium had departed. But Marius (began)  
 attendere pariter impigrè que prudenter res  
 to observe equally actively and prudently the affairs  
 suorum et hostium: cognoscere quid boni  
 of his-own (men) and of the enemies: to know what of good  
 esset utrisque, aut contrà: explorare itinera  
 might be to each, or otherwise: to reconnoitre the routes  
 regum, antevenire consilia et insidias  
 of the kings, to come-before (prevent) the designs and snares  
 eorum: pati nihil remissum apud se, neque  
 of them: to allow nothing negligent with himself, nor  
 tutum apud illos. Itaque, aggressus  
 safe with them [the kings]. Therefore, having attacked  
 sæpè et Gætulos et Jugurtham agentes  
 often both the Gætuli and Jugurtha acting (driving)  
 prædas ex nostris sociis, fuderat itinere,  
 booties from our allies, he had routed (them) on the march,  
 que exuerat regem ipsum haud procul ab  
 and had stripped the king himself not far from  
 Cirtâ armis.  
 Cirta from (of his) arms. [Compelled him to fly with loss of arms.]  
 Quæ postquam cognovit modò gloriosa,  
 Which (things) after-that he knew (to be) only glorious,  
 neque belli patrandi, statuit  
 nor (a means) of the war to-be-accomplished, he determined  
 circumvenire singulas urbes, quæ erant  
 to surround each-of the cities, which were  
 opportunissumæ viris, aut loco pro hostibus,  
 most-convenient in men, or in place (situation) for the enemies,  
 et adversum se; ita Jugurtham aut  
 and against himself; thus Jugurtha either (would be)  
 nudatum præsidiis, si pateretur ea,  
 stripped from (of) the garrisons, if he should suffer those (things),  
 aut certaturum prælio. Nam Bocchus sæpè miserat  
 or about-to-contend in battle. For Bocchus often had sent  
 nuncios ad eum, "velle amicitiam.  
 messengers to him, "to will [saying, that he wished] the friendship



Romani populi, ne-timeret quid  
 of the Roman people, (that) it might not-fear any (thing)  
 hostile ab se." Exploratum-est parum; ne  
 hostile from himself." It has been discovered little, whether  
 simulaverit id, quò improvisus  
 he may have pretended that, in-order-that (being) unexpected  
 accederet gravior, an mobilitate ingenii,  
 he might come-on more-heavy, or from fickleness of disposition,  
 solitus mutare pacem atque bellum. Sed  
 being accustomed to change peace and war. But  
 consul adire oppida que munita castella,  
 the consul (began) to approach the towns and fortified castles,  
 uti statuerat; avortere alia partim vi,  
 as he had determined; to turn-away (alienate) others partly by force,  
 alia metu, aut ostentando præmia ab hostibus.  
 others by fear, or by displaying rewards from the enemy.  
 Ac primò gerebat mediocria, existumans  
 And at-first he did carry-on moderate (things), thinking  
 Jugurtham venturum in manus ob  
 Jugurtha about-to-come into (his) hands on-account-of  
 tutandos suos.  
 protecting his-own (people). [Would come in his power, by being forced  
 to protect his own people.] Sed ubi accepit illum  
 to protect his own people.] But when he received (heard) him  
 abesse procul, et intentum aliis negotiis,  
 to be-distant far, and intent to (on) other affairs,  
 visum-est tempus aggredi majora et magis aspera.  
 it seemed time to attempt greater and more rough  
 Erat magnum atque valens  
 (difficult things). There was a great and prevailing (powerful)  
 oppidum, nomine Capsa, inter ingentes solitudines;  
 town, by name Capsa, among great deserts;  
 conditor cujus memorabatur Libys Hercules.  
 the founder of which was recorded [to be] the Libyan Hercules.  
 Cives ejus habebantur immunes apud Jugurtham,  
 The citizens of it were held free with Jugurtha,  
 levi imperio, et fidelissumi ob ea:  
 (under) light government, and most faithful on-account-of those (things):

muniti advorsum hostes, non modo mœnibus, et  
fortified against enemies, not only by walls, and  
armis, atque viris, verum etiam multò magis  
by arms, and by men, but also by-much more

asperitate locorum. Nam præter  
by the roughness (difficulty) of the places. For except (the places)

propinqua oppido, omnia vasta, inculta,  
near to the town, all (were) desert, uncultivated,

egentia aquæ, infesta serpentibus, vis quarum  
wanting of water, infested by serpents, the violence of which (is)

acrior inopiâ cibi, sicuti omnium ferarum: ad  
more-sharp from want of food, so-as of all wild-beasts: to

hoc, natura ipsa serpentium perniciosa,  
this (besides), the nature itself of serpents (being) destructive,

accenditur magis siti quàm aliâ re.  
is inflamed more by thirst than by (any) other thing.

Maxima cupido potiundi ejus invaserat  
A very-great desire of possessing of it [Capsa] had seized

Marium, cùm propter usum belli,  
Marius, as-well on-account-of the use (convenience) of the war,

tum quia res videbatur aspera: et  
then (as) because the thing did seem rough: (arduous): and

Metellus ceperat oppidum Thalam magnâ gloriâ,  
Metellus had taken the town Thala with great glory,

situm quæ munitum haud dissimiliter; nisi quod  
situate and fortified not differently; unless that

aliquot fontes erant non longè à mœnibus apud  
some fountains were not far from the walls at

Thalam: Capsenses utebantur unâ jugi  
Thala: the Capsenses did use one continual (ever-flowing)

aquâ modò, atque eâ intra  
[one never-failing spring of] water only, and that within

oppidum, cæterâ pluviâ. Id  
the town, the rest [they used was] rain (water). That

tolerabatur faciliùs, eò, quæ ibi et in omni  
was endured more easily, therefore, both there and in all

Africâ, quæ agebat incultiùs procul à mari,  
Africa, which did act (live) more-rudely far from the sea,

quia Numidæ vescebantur plerumque lacte  
 because the Numidians did feed generally with (on) milk  
 et ferinâ carne, neque quærebant salem, neque  
 and with wild flesh, nor did they seek salt, nor  
 alia irritamenta gulæ. Cibus erat illis  
 other incitements of the throat (luxury). Food was to them  
 adversum famem atque sitim, non lubidini neque  
 against hunger and thirst, not for pleasure nor  
 luxuriæ. Igitur, omnibus exploratis, consul,  
 for luxury. Therefore, all (things) being reconnoitred, the consul,  
 credo, fretus Diis (*abl.*), nam poterat non  
 I believe, relying on the Gods, for he was-able not  
 providere satis contra tantas difficultates consilio:  
 to provide sufficiently against so-great difficulties by counsel:  
 quippe tentabatur etiam inopiâ frumenti,  
 because he was tried [threatened] also with want of corn,  
 quòd Numidæ student pabulo pecoris magis  
 because the Numidians study for the food of cattle more  
 quam arvo,  
 than for the land, [because the Numidians are more occupied with  
 et contulerant jussu regis  
 cattle, than with tillage,] and they had carried [by order of the king]  
 in munita loca quodcunque natum-fuerat: autem  
 into fortified places whatsoever had been produced: but  
 ager aridus, et vacuus frugum eâ tempestate;  
 the land (was) dry, and empty of fruits in that time;  
 nam erat extremum æstatis; tamen, exornat  
 for it was the last of summer; however, he furnishes (himself)  
 providenter satis pro copiâ rei:  
 providently enough according-to the opportunity of the thing:  
 attribuit omne pecus, quod fuerat prædæ  
 he assigns all the cattle, which had been for booty  
 superioribus diebus, agendum auxiliaribus  
 in the former days, to-be-acted (driven) by the auxiliary  
 equitibus; jubet A. Manlium, legatum, ire  
 horsemen; he orders Aulus Manlius, (his) lieutenant, to go  
 cum expeditis cohortibus ad oppidum Laris, ubi  
 with the light-armed cohorts to the town of Laris, where

locaverat stipendium et commeatum: que dicit se  
 he had placed pay and provision: and he says himself  
 venturum eodem, prædabundum, post paucos  
 about-to-come to the same (place), plundering, after a few  
 dies. Sic suo incepto occultato, pergit ad  
 days. Thus his undertaking being concealed, he proceeds to  
 flumen Tanam. Cæterum distribuerat quotidie in  
 the river Tana. But he had distributed daily on  
 itinere pecus exercitui per centurias, item æqualiter  
 the march cattle to the army by hundreds, also regularly

turmas;

(by) companies; [by companies of infantry, and proportionably by troops

et curabat, uti utres fierent ex  
 of cavalry;] and did take-care, that bladders might be made out-of  
 coriis: simul, et lenire inopiam frumenti,  
 hides: at-the-same-time, both to mitigate the want of corn,

et omnibus ignaris, parare quæ forent mox  
 and all (being) ignorant, to prepare what might be by-and-by

usui: denique, cum ventum-est ad flumen sexto  
 for use: finally, when it was come to the river in the sixth

die, maxuma vis utrium effecta (est). Ibi  
 day, a very-great force (quantity) of bladders was completed. There

castris positis levi munimento, jubet milites  
 the camps being placed with a slight defence, he orders the soldiers

capere cibum, atque esse paratos, uti egrederentur  
 to take food, and to be prepared, that they should go-out

cum occasu solis; omnibus sarcinis abjectis,  
 with the setting of the sun; all the baggages being cast-away,

onerare que se et jumenta modò aquâ.  
 to load both themselves and the beasts-of-burden only with water.

Dein, postquam tempus visum (est), egreditur  
 Then, after-that the time seemed (fit), he goes-out

castris; que itinere facto totam noctem,  
 from the camps; and the march being made the whole night,

consedit: facit idem proxumâ. Dein  
 he sat-down (encamped): he does the same on the next. Afterwards

pervenit tertiâ, multo ante adventum  
 he arrived on the third (day), by much before the coming

lucis, in tumulosum locum, intervallo non  
 of light (day), into a hilly place, in an interval (of) not  
 ampliùs duùm millium ab Capsâ; que opperitur  
 more (than) of two miles from Capsa; and waits  
 ibi quàm-occultissime potest cum omnibus copiis.  
 there as-secretly-as he is able with all the forces.

Sed ubi dies cœpit, et multi Numidæ, metuentes  
 But when day began, and many Numidians, fearing  
 nihil hostile, egressi (sunt) oppido, jubet repente  
 nothing hostile, came-out from the town, he orders suddenly

omnem equitatum et velocissimos pedites tendere  
 all the cavalry and the swiftest infantry to proceed

cursu ad Capsam, et obsidere portas: deinde,  
 in a race (haste) to Capsam, and to block-up the gates: afterwards,

ipse intentus sequi properè, neque sinere  
 himself prepared (began) to follow speedily, nor to permit

milites prædare. Quæ, postquam  
 [nor did he permit] the soldiers to plunder. Which (things), after-that

oppidani cognovere, trepidæ res, ingens metus,  
 the townsmen knew, the fearful things, great fear,

improvisum malum, ad hoc pars civium  
 an unforeseen evil, to this (besides) part of the citizens

extra mœnia in potestate hostium, coëgere  
 without the walls in the power of the enemies, compelled (them)

utî facerent deditionem. Cæterum oppidum  
 that they should make a surrender. But the town

incensum (est); puberes Numidæ interfecti; omnes  
 was set-on-fire; the adult Numidians killed; all

alii venundati; præda divisa militibus. Id  
 the others sold; the booty divided to the soldiers. That

facinus contra jus belli admissum (est) non  
 crime against the right (law) of war was committed not

avaritiâ, neque scelere consulis; sed quia  
 from avarice, nor by the wickedness of the consul; but because

locus opportunus Jugurthæ, difficilis aditu  
 the place (was) convenient for Jugurtha, difficult in access

nobis: genus hominum mobile, infidum,  
 to us: the kind of men (was) fickle, faithless,

coërcitum antè neque beneficio neque metu.  
restrained before neither by kindness nor by fear.

Postquam Marius, magnus et clarus antea,  
After-that Marius, great and illustrious before,

patravit tantam rem sine ullo incommodo  
accomplished so-great a thing without any inconvenience

suorum, cœpit haberi major atque  
of his-own (troops), he began to be accounted greater and

clarior: omnia non benè consulta  
more-illustrious: all (things) not well planned

trahebantur in virtutem. Milites habiti  
were drawn (construed) into valour. The soldiers held

modesto imperio, et simul locupletes,  
in moderate authority, and at-the-same-time wealthy, (began)

ferre ad cœlum; Numidæ timere  
to bear (extol him) to heaven; the Numidians (began) to fear (him)

magis quam mortalem; postremò, omnes socii atque  
more than mortal; lastly, all the allies and

hostes credere, aut divinam mentem esse illi, aut  
enemies to believe, either a divine mind to be to him, or

cuncta portendi nutu deorum.  
all (things) to be foreboded by the nod of the gods. [By the will of

Sed, ubi ea res evenit bene, consul  
the gods.] But, when that thing happened well, the consul

pergit ad alia oppida: capit pauca, Numidis  
proceeds to other towns: he takes a few, the Numidians

repugnantibus; corrumpit igni plura deserta  
resisting; destroys by fire more deserted

propter miserias Capsensium: omnia  
on-account-of the misfortunes of the Capsenses: all (things)

complentur luctu atque cæde. Denique,  
are filled with mourning and with slaughter. Finally,

potitus multis locis, (abl.) ac plerisque  
having possessed many places, and most (of them)

incruento exercitu, aggreditur aliam rem, non  
with a bloodless army, he attempts another thing, not

eâdem asperitate quâ Capsensium,  
with the same roughness (danger) with which (the affair) of the Capsenses,

cæterùm haud secus difficilem. Namque haud  
but not otherwise (less) difficult. For not

longè à flumine Muluchâ, quod disjungebat regnum  
far from the river Mulucha, which did separate the kingdom

Jugurthæ que Bocchi, erat saxeus mons inter  
of Jugurtha and of Bocchus, there was a stony mountain between

cæteram planitiem, satis patens,  
the rest-of [in the midst of] a plain, sufficiently opening (wide),

mediocri castello, editus in-immensum, uno  
[on top,] with a moderate castle, elevated immensely, one

perangusto aditu relicto: nam omnis natura  
very-narrow approach being left: for all the nature (of the

(erat) præceps, velut opere atque consulto.  
place) was steep, as-if by work and by design.

Quem locum Marius intendit capere summâ  
Which place Marius resolves to take with the highest (utmost)

vi, quòd thesauri regis erant ibi: sed ea res  
force, because the treasures of the king were there: but that thing

gesta (est) melius forte quàm consilio. Nam  
was carried-on better by chance than by counsel. For

satis magna vis virorum atque  
(there was) a sufficiently great force of men and

armorum, et frumenti castello, et fons aquæ,  
of arms, and of corn in the castle, and a fountain of water,

locus importunus aggeribus que turribus, et aliis  
the place troublesome by ramparts and by towers, and by other

machinationibus;

engines; [the place unfit for mounds and towers, and other engines of war;]

iter castellanorum admodùm angustum,  
the road of the castle-defenders very narrow,

præcisum utrimque: vineæ agebantur  
cut-across on-either-side: mantelets were acted (put in motion)

frustrâ cum ingenti periculo. Nam cum eæ  
in-vain with great danger. For when those

processerant paullò, corrumpebantur igni aut  
had advanced a little, they were destroyed by fire or

lapidibus: milites neque consistere pro  
by stones: the soldiers (were able) neither to stand before

opere, propter iniquitatem loci; neque  
 the work, on-account-of the unevenness of the place; nor  
 administrare inter vineas sine periculo: quisque  
 to manage between the mantelets without danger: every  
 optumus cadere aut sauciari; metus  
 best (man) (continued) to fall or to be wounded; fear  
 augeri cæteris. At Marius, multis diebus et  
 to be increased to the rest. But Marius, many days and  
 laboribus consumptis, anxius trahere  
 labours being wasted, solicitous (began) to draw (ponder)  
 cum suo animo, ne omitteret inceptum,  
 with his mind, whether he should omit the undertaking,  
 quoniam erat frustra; an opperiretur fortunam,  
 since it was in-vain; or he should wait-for fortune,  
 quâ (abl.) usus-fuerat sæpè prosperè.  
 which he had used (experienced) often successfully.  
 Quæ, cùm æstuans, agitare  
 Which (things), when boiling (perplexed), he might (did) deliberate  
 multos dies que noctes, quidam Ligus, gregarius-miles  
 many days and nights, a certain Ligurian, a common-soldier  
 ex auxiliariis cohortibus, egressus castris  
 out-of the auxiliary cohorts, having gone-out from the camps  
 aquatum, animadvertit cochleas repentes inter  
 to water, perceived snails creeping among  
 saxa, haud procul ab latere castelli, quod erat  
 the stones, not far from the side of the castle, which was  
 avorsum præliantibus; quarum cùm  
 turned-away from (those) fighting; of which [snails] when  
 peteret unam atque alteram, dein plures,  
 he might (did) seek one and another, then more,  
 studio legundi, egressus-est paullatim propè ad  
 from a desire of gathering, he went by-degrees nearly to  
 summum montis. Ubi, postquam intellexit  
 the highest (point) of the mountain. Where, after-that he perceived  
 solitudinem, vortit animum  
 a desert, [deserted place,] he turned (conceived) a mind  
 visundi ignara more humanæ cupidinis.  
 of going-to-see unknown (things) in the manner of human desire.



Et fortè grandis ilex coaluerat in eo loco  
And by chance a large holm-oak had grown-up in that place

inter saxa, modò paullulum prona, dein  
among the rocks, now (in part) a little bent, then

inflexa, atque aucta in altitudinem, quò natura  
curved, and increased into height, whither nature

fert cuncta gignentium; ramis cujus  
carries all of growing (things); to the branches of which

modò, nisus, modò eminentibus saxis,  
one-time, having leaned, one-time to the projecting rocks,

Ligus perscribit planitiem castelli; quòd  
the Ligurian writes-out (observes) the plain of the castle; because

cuncti Numidæ aderant intenti præliantibus.  
all the Numidians were-present intent to (those) fighting.

Omnibus exploratis quæ ducebat  
All (things) being examined which he did lead (deem)

fore usui mox, regreditur eâdem,  
to be about-to-be for use by-and-by, he returns by the same (way),

non temerè, uti ascenderat, sed tentans et  
not rashly, as he had ascended, but trying and

circumspiciens omnia. Itaque adit Marium  
looking-round-on all (things). Therefore he goes-to Marius

propere; edocet acta; hortatur "tentet  
quickly; informs (the things) done; exhorts (that) "he may attempt

castellum ab eâ parte, quâ ipse ascenderat  
the castle from that part, by which himself had ascended

castellum; pollicetur sese ducem itineris que  
the castle; he promises himself the guide of the journey and

periculi." Marius misit ex  
of the danger." Marius sent (some) out-of (those)

presentibus cum Ligure cognitum promissa  
present with the Ligurian to know the promises

ejus; quorum uti ingenium cujusque erat, ita  
of him; of whom as the disposition of each was, so

nunciavêre rem difficilem aut facilem. Tamen  
they announced the thing difficult or easy. However

animus consulis paillum arrectus. Itaque  
the mind of the consul (was) a little excited. Therefore

delegit ex copiâ tubicinum et cornicinum  
 he chose out-of the plenty (number) of trumpeters and bugle-men  
 quinque quàm velocissimos, et quatuor centuriones  
 five as most-swift, and four centurions  
 cum his, qui forent præsidio; que jubet omnes  
 with these, who might be for a guard; and orders all  
 parere Liguri; et constituit proximum diem  
 to obey to the Ligurian; and appoints the-next day  
 ei negotio. Sed ubi tempus visum (est)  
 for that business. But when the time seemed (proper)

ex præcepto, omnibus paratis que  
 according-to instruction, all (things) being prepared and  
 compositis, pergit ad locum. Cæterum illi, qui  
 arranged, he proceeds to the place. But they, who  
 præerant centuriis, prædocti ab duce,  
 were-over to the centuries, previously-instructed by the guide,  
 mutaverant arma que ornatum, capite atque  
 had changed (their) arms and uniform, the head and  
 pedibus nudis, uti prospectus que nisus per  
 feet (being) naked, that the view and climbing through

saxa foret facilius; gladii et scuta  
 (among) the rocks might be more-easy; (their) swords and shields

super terga; verum ea  
 (were placed) upon (their) backs; but those (shields were)

Numidica ex coriis, gratiâ ponderis;  
 Numidian (made) out-of hides, by favour (on account) of the weight;

et simul quò offensa  
 and at-the-same-time in-order-that (the things) struck-against

streperent leviùs. Igitur Ligus prægrediens,  
 might sound more-lightly. Therefore the Ligurian going-before,

vinciebat laqueis saxa, et si quæ radices  
 did tie with ropes the rocks, and if any roots

eminebant vetustate, allevati quibus milites  
 did project from age, lifted by which the soldiers

ascenderent faciliùs; interdum levare  
 might ascend more-easily; sometimes (he began) to lighten (assist)

manu timidos insolentiâ itineris;  
 by the hand the fearful from the unusualness of the way;

mittere singulos (*plur.*) inermes præ se, ubi  
to send each unarmed before himself, when

ascensus erat paullò asperior; deinde ipse sequi  
the ascent was a little more-rough; then himself to follow

cum armis illorum, tentare potissimùm quæ  
with the arms of them, to try very-particularly what

videbantur dubia nisui; ac ascendens  
did seem doubtful for leaning (climbing); and ascending

sæpius eâdem, que descendens, dein statim  
very-often by the same (way), and descending, then immediately

digrediens, addere audaciam cæteris. Igitur,  
stepping-aside, to add boldness to the rest. Therefore,

fatigati diu que multum, perveniunt tandem in  
being fatigued long and much, they arrive at-length into

castellum, desertum ab eâ parte, quòd omnes  
the castle, deserted from (on) that part, because all

aderant advorsum hostes, sicuti aliis diebus.  
were-present against the enemies, so-as in other days.

Ubi Marius cognovit ex nunciis, quæ  
When Marius knew from messengers, what (things)

Ligus egerat, quamquam habuerat Numidas  
the Ligurian had acted, although he had had the Numidians

intentos prælio toto die, tum verò  
engaged to (on) the battle in the whole day, then truly

cohortatus milites, ipse et egressus extra  
having exhorted the soldiers, himself also having gone out without

vineas, testudine actâ,  
the mantelets, a penthouse-engine being acted (put in motion), [the sol-

diers forming a testudo with their shields, over their heads and on their

(coëpit) succedere, et simul, terrere  
sides,] began to advance, and at-the-same-time, to affright

hostem tormentis que sagittariis, et  
the enemy with shooting-engines and with archers, and

funditoribus eminens. At Numidæ, vineis  
with slingers at-a-distance. But the Numidians, the mantelets

Romanorum subversis, item incensis sæpè antea,  
of the Romans being overthrown, also burned often before,

tutabantur non sese moenibus castelli; sed  
did defend not themselves in the walls of the castle; but (continued)

agitare dies que noctes pro muro; maledicere  
to be-active days and nights before the wall; to rail

Romanis, ac objectare vecordiam Mario;  
to the Romans, and to object-often insanity to Marius;

minari servitium Jugurthæ nostris militibus;  
to threaten the slavery of Jugurtha to our soldiers;

[and to threaten our soldiers, that they would become the slaves of

esse feroces secundis rebus. Interim,  
Jugurtha;] to be fierce in favourable things. Mean-time,

omnibus Romanis que hostibus intentis  
all the Romans and the enemies (being) intent to (on)

prælio, his certantibus pro gloriâ atque imperio,  
the battle, these [fighting] for glory and authority,

illis pro salute, magnâ vi utrimque, signa  
those for safety, with great force on-either-side, the signs

(cœperunt) canere repente à tergo;  
(trumpets) (began) to sing (sound) suddenly from the rear;

ac mulieres et pueri primò, qui processerant visum  
and the women and boys first, who had gone-forth to see

fugere; deinde uti quisque erat proximus  
(began) to flee; then as every-one was nearest

muro; postremò, cuncti armati que inermes.  
to the wall; lastly, all the armed and unarmed.

Ubi quod accidit, Romani instare,  
When which (thing) happened, the Romans (began) to press-on,

fundere eò acriùs, ac tantummodò sauciare  
to rout therefore more-vigorously, and only to wound

plerosque; dein vadere super corpora  
most (of them); then to proceed over the bodies

occisorum, avidi gloriæ, certantes petere murum;  
of the slain, greedy of glory, contending to seek the wall;

neque præda morari quemquam omnium.  
nor plunder (was able) to delay any-one of all.

Sic temeritas Marii correcta forte, invenit  
Thus the rashness of Marius being corrected by chance, found (acquired)

gloriam ex culpâ. Cæterum, dum ea res geritur,  
glory from fault. But, whilst that thing is carried-on,

L. Sulla quæstor venit in castra cum magno  
Lucius Sylla (as) quæstor came into the camps with great (much)

equitatu; quod relictus-erat Romæ, uti  
cavalry; because [he] had been left at Rome, that

cogeret ex Latio, et à sociis. Sed  
he might collect [them] out-of Latium, and from the allies. But

quoniam res admonuit nos tanti viri,  
since the thing (subject) has reminded us of so-great a man,

visum-est idoneum dicere paucis de natura  
it has seemed proper to say in a few (words) about the nature

que cultu ejus. Enim neque sumus  
(disposition) and education [habits] of him. For neither are we

dicturi de rebus Sullæ alio loco; et  
about-to-say of the affairs of Sylla in another place; and

L. Sisenna persecutus optumè et diligentissimè  
Lucius Sisenna having followed-up best and most-diligently

omnium, qui dixere eas res, videtur  
of all (those), who have said (treated) those things, seems

mihi locutus ore parùm libero.  
to me having spoken with a mouth little (by no means) free.

Igitur  
[His relation seems to me to have but little political freedom.] Therefore

Sulla fuit nobilis patriciæ gentis, familiâ  
Sylla was a noble (man) of patrician nation (family), the family

extinctâ propè ignaviâ majorum, eruditus  
being extinct nearly by the indolence of (his) ancestors, skilled

juxtâ atque doctissumè Græcis atque Latinis  
alike and most-learnedly in Greek and in Latin

litteris, ingenti animo, cupidus voluptatum, sed  
letters, with a great mind, desirous of pleasures, but

cupidior gloriæ; esse luxurioso otio;  
more-desirous of glory; (he was able) to be in luxurious ease;

tamen voluptas nunquam  
[luxurious when at leisure;] however pleasure never

remorata (est) ab negotiis, nisi quòd potuit  
retarded (him) from (his) affairs, unless that it was-able

consuli honestiùs de uxore :  
to be consulted more honourably about (his) wife : [unless he had

consulted his own character more in matrimonial affairs :] (he was)  
facundus, callidus, et facilis amicitia; incredibilis  
eloquent, crafty, and easy in friendship; an incredible  
altitudo ingenii ad negotia simulanda;  
depth of ability to affairs to-be-dissembled; [of concealing

largitor multarum rerum, ac maxumè  
his affairs;] a bestower of many things, and chiefly  
pecuniæ; atque felicissimo omnium ante  
of money; and (being) most-fortunate of all before

civilem victoriam, fortuna fuit nunquam super  
the civil victory, (his) fortune was never above (his)

industriam; que multi dubitavêre esset  
industry; and many have doubted (whether) he might be (he was)

fortior an felicior. Nam habeo incertum  
more-brave or more-fortunate. For I have (it) doubtful

pudeat magis an pigeat disserere  
(whether) it may shame [more] or may grieve (me) to discuss

quæ fecerit postea. Igitur  
what (things) he may have done (he did) afterwards. Therefore

postquam Sulla venit in Africam atque in castra  
after-that Sylla came into Africa and into the camps

Marii, cum equitatu, uti dictum-est supra,  
of Marius, [with the cavalry,] as has been said above, (being)

rudis antea et ignarus belli, factus-est solertissimus  
unskilled before and ignorant of war, he became most-intelligent

omnium in paucis tempestatibus.  
[the most skilful soldier] of all in a few seasons.

Ad-hoc appellare milites  
[In a short time.] Besides (he was accustomed) to address the soldiers

benignè; dare beneficia multis rogantibus, ipse  
kindly; to give benefits to many asking, himself

(dare) aliis per se; invitus accipere; sed  
(to give) to others by himself; unwilling to receive (any); but

reddere ea properantiùs, quàm mutuum æs;  
to return those more-quickly, than borrowed brass (a loan);

ipse repetere ab nullo: laborare id magis,  
 himself to ask-again from no-one: to labour-for that more (rather),  
 ut quàm-plurimi deberent illi: agere joca, atque  
 that as-many-as-possible should owe to him: to act jests, and  
 seria cum humillimis; adesse multus in  
 serious (matters) with the humblest; to be present much in  
 operibus, in agmine, atque ad vigiliis: neque  
 the works, on the troop (march), and at the watches: nor  
 interim lædere famam consulis, aut cujusquam  
 mean-time to injure the character of the consul, or of any  
 boni, quod prava ambitio solet:  
 good (man), which corrupt ambition is accustomed (to do):  
 tantummodò neque pati alium priorem  
 only neither to suffer (any) other former [to be before  
 consilio neque manu; antevenire plerosque.  
 him] in counsel nor in hand (action); to outstrip most.

Quibus rebus et artibus,  
 [He excelled most others.] By which things and arts (qualities),  
 factus (est) brevi carissimus Mario que militibus.  
 he became shortly most-dear to Marius and to the soldiers.

At postquam, Jugurtha amiserat oppidum Capsam  
 But after-that, Jugurtha had lost the town Capsa

que alios munitos locos, et utiles sibi, et  
 and other fortified places, and useful to himself, and

simul magnam pecuniam, mittit nuncios ad  
 at-the-same-time great money, he sends messengers to

Bocchum, adduceret copias quam-primùm  
 Bocchus, (that) he should lead-up (his) forces as-soon-as-possible

in Numidiam: tempus prælii faciundi adesse.  
 into Numidia: the time of battle to-be-made to be-at-hand.

Quem, ubi accepit cunctari, dubium belli;  
 Whom, when he received (heard) to delay, doubtful of the war,

atque trahere rationes pacis: corrumpit  
 and to draw (to devise) reasons of peace: he corrupts (bribes)

rursùs, ut antea, proximos ejus donis, que  
 again, as before, the nearest (friends) of him by gifts, and

pollicetur tertiam partem Numidiæ Mauro ipsi, si  
 promises a third part of Numidia to the Moor himself, if

**Romani** **expulsi** **Africâ,** **aut** **suis**  
 the Romans (should be) driven-out from Africa, or his-own  
**finibus** **integrîs,** **bellum** **compositum-foret.**  
 territories (being) entire, the war might have been arranged.

[Or peace being so made with the Romans, that he (Jugurtha) should lose  
**Bocchus,** **illectus** **eo** **præmio,** **accedit**  
 no territory.] Bocchus, allured by that reward, comes-to

**Jugurtham** **cum magnâ** **multitudine.** **Ita** **exercitu**  
 Jugurtha with a great multitude. Thus the army  
**amborum** **conjuncto,** **invadunt** **Marium** **jam**  
 of both being united, they attack Marius now

**proficiscentem** **in** **hiberna,** **decimâ** **parte** **diei**  
 setting-out into winter-quarters, the tenth part of the day

**vix** **reliquâ,** **rati** **noctem,** **quæ** **jam**  
 scarcely (being) left, having thought the night, which now

**aderat,** **fore** **munimento** **sibi**  
 was-at-hand, to be about-to-be for a defence to themselves

**victis;** **et** **si** **vicissent,** **nullo**  
 being conquered; and if they might have conquered, (to be) no

**impedimento,** **quia** **erant** **scientes** **locorum:**  
 obstruction, because they were knowing of the places:

**contrâ,** **utrumque** **casum**  
 [acquainted with the locality:] on-the-other-hand, each chance

**fore** **difficiliorem** **Romanis** **in** **tenebris.**  
 to be about-to-be more-difficult to the Romans in the darknesses.

**Igitur** **consul** **cognovit** **simul,** **ex** **multis,** **de**  
 Therefore the consul knew at-the-same-time, from many, of

**adventu** **hostium,** **et** **hostes** **ipsi** **aderant;**  
 the arrival of the enemies, and the enemies themselves were-at-hand;

**et** **priusquam** **exercitus** **quivit** **instrui,** **aut**  
 and before-that the army was-able to be arrayed, or

**colligere** **sarcinas,** **denique,** **antequam**  
 to collect the baggages, finally, before-that (it was able)

**accipere** **signum** **aut** **ullum** **imperium,** **Mauri** **atque**  
 to receive a signal or any command, the Moorish and

**Gætuli** **equites** **incurrunt** **in** **nostros** **non**  
 Gætulian horse rush against our (men) not



acie, neque ullo more praelii, sed catervatim,  
 in line (of battle), nor in any manner of battle, but in-troops,  
 uti fors conglobaverat quosque. Omnes qui  
 as chance had collected every (troop). All who  
 trepidi improvise metu, ac tamen memores  
 fearful from the unforeseen terror, and however mindful  
 virtutis, aut capiebant arma, aut defensabant ab  
 of valour, either did take arms, or did protect from  
 hostibus alios capientes; pars ascendere  
 the enemies others taking (them); part (began) to mount (their)  
 equos, ire obviam hostibus: pugna fieri magis  
 horses, to go towards to the enemies: the battle to become more  
 similis latrocinio quam praelio: equites, pedites  
 like to a robbery than to a fight: horse, foot  
 permixti sine signis, sine ordinibus, cedere  
 mingled without standards, without ranks, to slaughter  
 alios, obtruncare alios; circumvenire ab tergo  
 others (some), to maim others; to surround from the rear  
 multos pugnantes accerrumè contra adversos:  
 many fighting most-vigorously against (those) opposite:  
 neque virtus, neque arma tegere  
 neither valour, nor arms (were able) to cover (protect) (them)  
 satis; quod hostes erant plures numero et  
 sufficiently; because the enemies were more in number and  
 circumfusi undique. Denique, veteres Romani que  
 poured-round on-every-side. Finally, the veteran Romans and  
 novi, et scientes belli ob ea  
 the new (recruits), and (those) knowing of war on-account-of those  
 facere orbes, si locus aut casus  
 (things) (began) to make rings, if the place or chance  
 conjunxerat quos: atque ita tecti atque instructi  
 had united any: and thus protected and arrayed  
 ab omnibus partibus, simul, sustentabant  
 from all parts, at-the-same-time, they did support  
 vim hostium. Neque fuit Marius territus aut  
 the force of the enemies. Neither was Marius affrighted or  
 magis demisso animo quàm antea, in eo tam  
 more with cast-down mind than before, in that so

aspero negotio; sed vagari passim cum  
rough a business; but (he began) to hover every-where with

suâ turmâ, quam paraverat magis ex  
his-own troop, which he had prepared (raised) rather out-of

fortissumis quàm familiarissumis; ac modò  
the bravest than the most-intimate; and one-time

succurrere suis laborantibus, modò invadere  
to aid to his-own (men) labouring, one-time to attack

'manu hostes, ubi obstiterant  
with (his) band the enemies, where they had opposed

confertissumi; consulere militibus,  
most-dense; to advise to the soldiers, [to aid his soldiers by

quoniam poterat non imperare, omnibus  
fighting,] since he was able not to command, all

conturbatis. Que jam dies consumptus-erat, cum,  
being disordered. And now the day had been spent, when,

tamen, barbari remittere nihil, atque  
however, the barbarians (began) to relax nothing, and

instare acriùs, uti reges præceperant,  
to press-on more-vigorously, as the kings had ordered,

rati. noctem pro se. Tum  
having thought the night for themselves (in their favour). Then

Marius trahit consilium ex copiâ  
Marius draws (takes) counsel from the plenty (condition)

rerum; atque occupat duos colles propinquos inter  
of things; and seizes two hills near among

se, uti esset locus  
themselves, [near to one another,] that there might be a place

receptui suis. In uno quorum parùm amplo  
for a retreat for his (men). In one of which little extensive

castris, erat magnus fons aquæ:  
(not large enough) for camps, was a great fountain of water:

alter opportunus usui, quia editus et  
the other (was) convenient for use, because (it was) raised and

præceps magnâ parte: egebat munimento paucâ.  
steep in great part: did want with fortification in few

Cæterùm jubet  
(in small part). [Required but little fortification.] But he orders

Sullam agitare noctem cum equitibus apud  
Sylla to agitate (spend) the night with the cavalry at

aquam. Ipse contrahit in unum dispersos  
the water. Himself draws together into one (body) the scattered

milites, hostibus conturbatis neque minùs :  
soldiers, the enemies being disordered neither (not) less :

dein subducit cunctos pleno gradu in collem.  
then he withdraws all in full pace unto the hill.

Ita reges, coacti difficultate loci, deterrentur  
Thus the kings, compelled by the difficulty of the place, are deterred

prælio : neque, tamen, sinunt suos abire  
from battle : nor, however, do they permit their (men) to depart

longiùs, sed utroque colle circumdato multitudine,  
farther, but each hill being surrounded by the multitude,

effusi, consedêre. Dein crebris ignibus factis,  
scattered, they sat-down. Then frequent fires being made,

barbari lætari suo more, exsultare,  
the barbarians (began) to rejoice in their manner, to exult,

strepere vocibus plerumque noctis : et  
to roar with voices most of the night : and (their)

duces ipsi feroces ; quia fugêre non,  
generals themselves (were) fierce ; because they fled not,

agere ut pro victoribus.

(they began) to act as for conquerors. [As if they were conquerors.]

Sed cuncta ea facilia visu Romanis,  
But all those (things were) easy to be seen by the Romans,

ex tenebris et editioribus locis, que erant  
out-of the darknesses and the higher places, and were

magno hortamento. Verò Marius confirmatus  
for great encouragement. But Marius being encouraged

plurimùm imperitiâ hostium, jubet  
very-much by the ignorance of the enemies, orders

quam-maximum silentium haberi ; ne quidem  
the greatest-possible silence to be kept ; not indeed (even)

signa canere, uti solebant  
the signs (trumpets) to sing (to sound), as they were accustomed

per vigilias ; deinde ubi lux adventabat,  
through the watches ; then when light (day) did approach,

hostibus jam defessis, ac captis somno paullo  
 the enemies now being wearied, and taken with sleep a little  
 antè, de-improviso vectigales tubicines  
 before, (he orders) suddenly the tributary trumpeters  
 omnes simul, item cohortium, turmarum,  
 all together, also (those) of the cohorts, of companies,

legionum, canere signa,  
 [of the troops of horse,] of legions, to sound the signs (trumpets),

milites tollere clamorem, atque erumpere portis.  
 the soldiers to raise a shout, and to burst-forth from the gates.

Mauri atque Gætuli, exciti repentè ignoto  
 The Moors and Gætulians, roused suddenly by the unknown

et horribili sonitu, poterant neque fugere, neque  
 and horrible sound, were-able neither to flee, nor

capere arma, neque facere aut providere quidquam  
 to take arms, nor to do or to provide any

omnino; ita vecordia quasi ceperat  
 (thing) at-all; thus madness as-it-were had taken (seized)

cunctos terrore, formidine strepitu, clamore, nullo  
 all with terror, with dismay by the noise, by shout, none

subveniente, nostris instantibus tumultu.  
 assisting, our (men) pressing-on with tumult.

Denique omnes fusi (sunt), que fugati; arma  
 Finally all were routed, and put-to-flight; (their) arms

et pleraque militaria signa capta; que plures  
 and most-of the military standards taken; and more

interempti (sunt) eo prælio, quàm omnibus  
 were destroyed in that battle, than in all

superioribus. Nam fuga impedita (est) somno et  
 the former. For flight was hindered by sleep and

insolito metu. Dein Marius proficiscitur in  
 by unusual fear. Then Marius sets-out into

hiberna, uti cœperat, que decreverat agere  
 winter-quarters, as he had begun, which he had resolved to act

in maritimis oppidis, propter commeatum;  
 (spend) in the maritime towns, on-account-of provision;

neque tamen factus (est) socors aut insolens victoriâ;  
 nor however was he made inactive of haughty by victory;

sed incedere quadrato agmine pariter  
 but (continued) to march in a squared troop (array) equally  
 atque in conspectu hostium. Sulla curabat  
 and (as) in sight of the enemies. Sylla did take-care  
 cum equitatu apud dextimos, A. Manlius  
 (commanded) with the cavalry at (on) the right, Aulus Manlius  
 cum funditoribus et sagittariis, præterea cohortes  
 with the slingers and archers, besides the cohorts  
 Ligurum in sinistrâ parte; locaverat  
 of the Ligurians (commanded) in the left part; he had placed  
 tribunos primos et extremos cum expeditis  
 tribunes first and last with the light-armed  
 manipulis. Perfugæ minumè cari, et  
 divisions. Deserters (persons) by-no-means dear, and  
 scientissumi regionum, explorabant iter  
 most-skilful of the countries, did reconnoitre the march  
 hostium. Consul simul providere  
 of the enemies. The consul at-the-same-time (continued) to provide  
 omnia, quasi nullo imposito;  
 all (things), as-if no-one being placed-over (the men);  
 adesse apud omnes, laudare, increpare  
 to be-present at (with) all, to praise, to chide (those)  
 merentes. Ipse armatus que intentus item cogebat  
 deserving. Himself armed and prepared also did compel  
 milites; neque munire castra secus  
 the soldiers; nor (did he cease) to fortify the camps otherwise  
 atque facere iter;  
 and (than) to make the march; [he fortified his camps with the same  
 mittere cohortes ex  
 care that he had made his march;] to send cohorts out-of  
 legionibus excubitum in portâ, auxilios equites  
 the legions to watch in the gate, the auxiliary cavalry  
 pro castris; præterea locare alios super vallum  
 before the camps; besides to place others above the rampart  
 in munimentis, ipse circuire vigiliis, non  
 in the fortifications, himself to go-about the watches, not  
 diffidentia futuri quæ  
 from distrust of future (completion of) what he might have (had)

imperavisset, quàm uti labos exæquatus cum  
ordered, as that the labour being equalled with

imperatore esset militibus volentibus.  
the commander might be to the soldiers willing. [That the com-

mander sharing in the toils of the soldiers, they might the more willingly

Et sanè Marius coercebat exercitum  
bear them.] And truly Marius did restrain (his) army

magis pudore, quàm malo illo et aliis  
more by shame, than by evil (severity) in that (time) and in other

temporibus Jugurthini belli; quod multi aiebant  
times of the Jugurthine war; which many did say

fieri per ambitionem; pars quòd habuisset  
to be done through ambition; part (said) because he might have held

voluptati à pueritiâ consuetam duritiam, et alia  
for pleasure from boyhood (his) accustomed hardihood, and other

quæ cæteri vocant miserias. Nisi tamen  
(things) which the rest call miseries. Unless (but) however

respublica gesta (est) benè atque decorè, pariter  
the state was carried-on well and becomingly, equally

ac sævissumo imperio. Igitur citi  
and (as) in the most-cruel authority. Therefore speedy

speculatores ostendunt sese simul  
spies show themselves at-the-same-time

undique haud longè ab oppido Cirta, quarto  
from-every-side not far from the town Cirta, in the fourth

die; quâ re hostis intelligitur adesse. Sed  
day; by which thing the enemy is understood to be-at-hand. But

quia redeuntes diversi, alius ab  
because returning different, the one (from one, the other) from

aliâ parte, atque omnes significabant idem;  
another part, and all did signify (prove) the same

consul incertus quonam modo instrueret  
(thing); the consul doubtful in what manner he should arrange

aciem, nullo ordine commutato, paratus  
the line (of battle), no order being changed, prepared

advorsum omnia opperitur ibidem. Ita  
against all (things) he waits in-the-same-place. Thus

spes frustrata (est) Jugurtham, qui distribuerat  
 hope disappointed Jugurtha, who had divided (his)

copias in quatuor partes, ratus aliquos ex  
 forces into four parts, having thought some out-of

omnibus æquè venturos hostibus ab tergo.  
 all equally about-to-come to (on) the enemies from the rear.

Interim Sulla, quem hostes attigerant primùm,  
 Mean-time Sylla, whom the enemies had reached first,

cohortatus suos, ipse que alii invadunt  
 having exhorted his (men), himself and the others attack

Mauros turmatim et equis confertis  
 the Moors by-troops and with horses crowded

quàm-maxumè; cæteri manentes in loco  
 as-much-as-possible; the rest remaining in (their) place (began)

tegere corpora ab jaculis emissis  
 to cover (protect) (their) bodies from the javelins sent

eminùs, et obtruncare, si qui venerant  
 from-a-distance, and to massacre, [such,] if any [as] had come

in manus. Dum equites præliantur eo  
 into (their) hands. Whilst the cavalry fight in that

modo, Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus,  
 manner, Bocchus with the infantry, which the son of him,

Volux, adduxerat, neque adfuerant in priore  
 Volux, had led-up, nor had they been-present in the former

pugnâ, morati in itinere, invadunt postremam  
 battle, having delayed on the march, attack the last [rear]

aciem Romanorum. Marius agebat tum apud  
 line of the Romans. Marius acted then at (with)

primos, quòd Jugurtha ibi cum plurimis.  
 the first, [in front,] because Jugurtha [was] there with very-many.

Dein Numida, adventu Bocchi cognito,  
 Then the Numidian, [Jugurtha,] the arrival of Bocchus being known,

convortit clàm cum paucis ad pedites; ibi  
 turns secretly with a few (men) to the infantry; there

exclamat Latinè, nam didicerat loqui  
 he cries-out Latinly, [in Latin,] for he had learned to speak (that

apud Numantiam, "Nostros pugnare  
 language) at Numantia, "Our (men) to fight

frustrâ; Marium interfectum (esse) paullo antè  
in-vain; Marius to have been slain a little before

suâ manu :” simul ostendere  
by his-own hand :” at-the-same-time (he began) to show (his)

gladium oblitum sanguine, quem cruentaverat  
sword smeared with blood, which he had stained-with-blood

in pugnâ, nostro pedite occiso impigre  
in the battle, our foot-soldiery being slain actively (bravely)

satis.

enough. [Which he had stained with the blood of one of our foot-soldiers,

Quod ubi milites accepêre  
quickly slain.] Which when the soldiers received (heard)

terrentur magis atrocitate rei quam  
they are affrighted more by the dreadfulness of the thing than

fide nuncii; que barbari simul  
by the faith (belief) of the messenger; and the barbarians at-the-same-time

tollere animos, et incedere  
(began) to raise (their) minds (spirits), and to advance

acriùs in percussos Romanos. Que jam  
more-vigorously against the astonished Romans. And now

aberant paullùm à fugâ, cùm Sulla, iis  
they were-distant little from flight, when Sylla, those

profligatis advorsum quos îerat, rediens, incurrit  
being routed against whom he had gone, returning, rushes-on

Mauris ab latere. Bocchus avertitur statim.  
to the Moors from the flank. Bocchus is turned immediately.

At dum Jugurtha cupit sustentare suos et retinere  
But whilst Jugurtha desires to support his-own and to retain

victoriam jam propè adeptam, circumventus ab  
the victory now nearly obtained, being surrounded by

equitibus dextrâ sinistrâ, omnibus occisis,  
the cavalry on the right (and) left, all being killed, (he)

solus vitabundus erumpit inter tela hostium.  
alone about-escaping bursts-forth between the darts of the enemies.

Atque Marius interim, equitibus fugatis, accurrit  
And Marius mean-time, the cavalry being put-to-flight, runs-up

auxilio suis, quos acceperat jam  
to aid to his (men), whom he had received (heard) [now]



pellī. Denique hostes jam fusi (sunt)  
to be repulsed. Finally the enemies now were routed

undique. Tum horribile spectaculum in  
on-every-side. Then (was) a horrible sight in

patentibus campis; sequi, fugere; occidi,  
the open plains; (they were seen) to follow, to flee; to be killed,

capi; equi atque viri afficti; ac multi,  
to be taken; horses and men dashed-down; and many,

vulneribus acceptis, posse neque fugere,  
wounds being received, (were seen) to be-able neither to flee,

neque pati quietem; modò niti, ac  
nor to endure rest; one-time to lean (to stand-up), and

statim concidere: postremò, omnia quà  
immediately to fall-down: lastly, all (places) where

visus erat, constrata telis, armis, cadaveribus;  
the view was, were strewed with darts, with arms, with dead-bodies;

et humus infecta sanguine inter ea. Postea  
and the ground stained with blood between them. Afterwards

loci consul jam victor haud dubiè,  
of place (after this event) the consul now conqueror not doubtfully,

pervenit in oppidum Cirtam, quò profectus  
arrived into the town Cirta, whither having set-out

initio intenderat. Eò legati  
in the beginning he had determined (to arrive). Thither ambassadors

veniunt à Boccho post quintum diem, quàm  
come from Bocchus after the fifth day, than (since)

barbari pugnauerant malè iterum; qui petivêre  
the barbarians had fought badly again; who sought

ab Mario verbis regis, "Mitteret  
from Marius in the words of the king, (that) "He would send

duos quàm-fidissumos ad eum: velle  
[two] (persons) as-faithful-as-possible to him: to will

disserere cum iis de suo commodo et de  
to discuss with them about his-own advantage and about (that)

Romani populi." Ille statim jubet L. Sullam et  
of the Roman people." He immediately orders Lucius Sylla and

A. Manlium ire. Qui, quamquam ibant acciti:  
Aulus Manlius to go. Who, although they did go sent-for:

tamen, placuit facere verba apud  
 however, it pleased (them) to make words (a speech) at (to)  
 regem, uti aut flecterent avorsum ingenium,  
 the king, that either they might bend a disinclined disposition,  
 aut accenderent vehementius cupidum  
 or might inflame (it) more-earnestly (being) desirous  
 pacis. Itaque Sulla, facundiæ cujus  
 of peace. Therefore Sylla, to the eloquence of whom  
 concessum (est) à Manlio, non ætati, locutus (est)  
 it was yielded by Manlio, not to age, spoke  
 pauca verba hujuscemodi: "Rex Bocche, magna  
 a few words of this-kind: "King Boochus, great  
 lætitia est nobis, cùm dii monuère te talem  
 gladness is to us, when the gods have advised thee such  
 virum, uti aliquando malles pacem  
 a man, that some-time (at length) thou shouldst prefer peace  
 quàm bellum; neui commaculares te optimum  
 than war; nor shouldst stain thyself a very-good (man)  
 miscendo cum Jugurthâ, pessimo omnium: simul,  
 by mingling with Jugurtha, the worst of all: at-the-same-time,  
 demeres nobis acerbam necessitudinem  
 thou shouldst take from us the bitter necessity  
 persequi pariter te errantem, et illum  
 to pursue (punish) equally thee erring, and him  
 sceleratissimum. Ad hoc, visum (est) melius  
 most-guilty. To this (besides), it seemed better  
 Romano populo, inopi jam à principio, quærere  
 to the Roman people, poor already from the beginning, to seek  
 amicos quàm servos; que rati(sunt) tutius imperitare  
 friends than slaves; and they thought safer to rule  
 volentibus quàm coactis. Vero nulla amicitia  
 (them) willing than compelled. But no friendship (is)  
 opportunior tibi nostrâ: primùm, quòd  
 more convenient to thee (than) ours: firstly, because  
 absumus procul; in quo minimum offensæ,  
 we are-distant far; in which (case) the least of offence (is),  
 [there is the least cause of offence, but of] par gratia, ac-si  
 equal favour, as-if

adessemus: dein, quòd habemus parentes  
 we might be-at-hand: then, because we have (people) obeying (us)  
 abundè; satis amicorum fuit neque nobis,  
 abundantly; (but) enough of friends has been neither to us,  
 neque cuiquam omnium. Atque, utinam hoc  
 nor to any-one of all. And, O-that this

placuisset tibi à principio! profectò,  
 might have pleased to thee from the beginning! certainly,

accepiſſes multo plura bona ad hoc  
 thou mightest have received by much more good (things) to this  
 tempus, quam perpessus-es mala. Sed quoniam  
 time, than thou hast suffered evil. But since

fortuna regit pleraque humanarum rerum, cui  
 fortune rules most of human things, to which

ſcilicet placuisse experiri et nostram  
 forsooth she has pleased to try [that you try] both our

vim et gratiam; nunc quando licet per illam,  
 force and favour; now when it is-lawful through her,

festina atque perge uti cœpiſti. Habes multa  
 hasten and proceed as thou hast begun. Thou hast many

atque opportuna quòd superes  
 and convenient (means) in-order-that thou may'st exceed

faciliùs errata officiis.  
 more-easily (the things) erred-in by kindnesses. [By kind services.]

Postremò, demitte hoc in tuam pectus, Romanum  
 Lastly, send-down this into thy breast, the Roman

populum nunquam victum-esse beneficiis. Nam  
 people never to have been overcome by favours. For

tute ſcis quid valeat bello." Bocchus  
 thyself knowest what it may prevail in war." Bocchus (answered)

placidè et benignè ad ea; simul facit  
 calmly and kindly to those (words); at-the-same-time he makes

pauca verba pro suo delicto:  
 a few words for his transgression: [and spoke briefly in ex-

"Se cepisse arma non  
 tenuation of his transgression:] "Himself to have taken arms not

hostili animo, sed ob tutandum  
 with a hostile mind, but on-account-of protecting (his)

regnum: nam nequivisse pati eam partem  
kingdom: for to have been-unable to endure that part

Numidiæ, unde expulerit (*perf. sub.*) Jugurtham  
of Numidia, whence he may have expelled (he expelled) Jugurtha

vi, factam suam jure belli, vastari à  
by force, being made his-own by the right of war, to be ravaged by

Mario: præterea, legatis missis Romam antea,  
Marius: besides, ambassadors having been sent to Rome before,

repulsum (esse) ab amicitia:  
to have been rejected [that he was rejected] from friendship:

cæterum omittere vetera, ac missurum  
but to omit old (matters), and (to be) about-to-send

legatos tum ad senatum, si  
[that he was about to send] ambassadors then to the senate, if

liceret per Marium." Dein, copia  
it might-be-lawful through Marius." Afterwards, opportunity

factâ, animus barbari flexus (est) ab amicis,  
being made, the mind of the barbarian was bent by friends,

quos Jugurtha, legatione Sullæ et Manlii cognita,  
whom Jugurtha, the embassy of Sylla and of Manlius being known,

metuens id quod parabatur, corruerat  
fearing that which was prepared, had corrupted (bribed)

donis. Interea, Marius, exercitu composito in  
by gifts. Mean-time, Marius, the army being arranged in

hibernaculis, proficiscitur cum expeditis cohortibus,  
winter-stations, sets-out with the light-armed cohorts,

et parte equitatûs, in sola loca, obsessum  
and with part of the cavalry, into lonely places, to besiege

regiam turrim, quò Jugurtha imposuerat omnes  
a royal tower, where Jugurtha had placed all

perfugas præsidium. Tum Bocchus rursus, seu  
deserters (as) a garrison. Then Bocchus again, either

reputando quæ venerant sibi duobus  
by reflecting what (things) had come (happened) to himself in two

præliis, seu admonitus ab aliis amicis, quos Jugurtha  
battles, or advised by other friends, whom Jugurtha

reliquerat incorruptos, delegit quinque ex omni  
had left unbribed, chose five out-of all

*copiâ*                      *necessariorum*;                      *fides* *quorum*  
 the plenty (number)    of connexions;    [friends;] the faith    of whom  
*et cognita (est), et ingenia erant validissima.*  
 both    was known,                      and the abilities    were                      most-able.

*Jubet eos ire legatos ad Marium; ac dein,*  
 He orders those to go (as) ambassadors to Marius; and then,  
*si placeat, Romam: permittit ipsis licentiam*  
 if it may please (him), to Rome: he allows to them the liberty  
*rerum agendarum, et belli componendi quocunque*  
 of things to-be-acted, and of the war to-be-arranged in whatsoever  
*modo.*

manner. [He gave them full power to negotiate and bring the war to a

*Illi proficiscuntur maturè ad*  
 close in any manner.] They                      set-out                      early (soon) to

*hiberna Romanorum. Deinde, circumventi*  
 the winter-quarters of the Romans. Afterwards, being surrounded

*que spoliati à Gætulis latronibus in itinere,*  
 and plundered by Gætulian robbers on the journey,

*profugiunt pavidì sine decore ad Sullam,*  
 they escape fearful without ornament [of office] to Sylla,

*quem consul proficiscens in expeditione reliquerat*  
 whom the consul setting-out on the expedition had left

*pro prætore. Ille habuit eos non pro vanis*  
 for pretor. He had (treated) them not for vain

*hostibus, uti meriti-erant, sed accuratè et*  
 (fickle) enemies, as they had deserved, but carefully and

*liberaliter. Quâ re barbari et rati (sunt)*  
 liberally. By which thing the barbarians both thought

*famam avaritiæ Romanorum falsam, et Sullam*  
 the report of the avarice of the Romans false, and Sylla

*amicum in sese ob munificentiam.*  
 friendly unto themselves on-account-of (his) liberality.

*Nam etiam tum largitio erat ignota multis; nemo*  
 For even then bribery was unknown to many; no-one

*putabatur munificus, nisi pariter volens: omnia*  
 was thought liberal, unless equally willing: all

*dona habebantur in benignitate.*  
 gifts were held in kindness. [As the result of kindness.]

Igitur patefaciunt mandata Bocchi Quæstori;  
Therefore they lay-open the commands of Bocchus to the Quæstor;

simul petunt ab eo, uti adsit  
at-the-same-time they request from him, that he may-be-present (as)

fautor que consultor sibi: extollunt  
a favourer and an adviser to themselves: they praise in (their)

oratione copias, fidem, magnitudinem sui regis,  
speech the forces, faith, greatness of their king,

et alia, quæ credebant aut esse utilia aut  
and other (things), which they did believe either to be useful or

benevolentia;

(the part) of benevolence; [or tending to conciliate his good will;]

dein Sullâ pollicito omnia, docti quo  
then Sylla having promised all (things), being taught in what

modo facerent verba apud Marium, item  
manner they should make words at (before) Marius, also

apud senatum,

at the senate, [they should address Marius, and also the senate,]

opperiuntur ibidem circiter quadraginta dies. Postquam  
they wait there about forty days. After-that

Marius, negotio infecto quò  
Marius, the business being undone [unsuccessful] whither (to which)

intenderat, redit Cirtam, factus certior  
he had aimed, returns to Cirta, being made more-sure [being in-

formed] of the arrival of the ambassadors, jubet que illos  
de adventu legatorum, jubet que illos

et Sullam, que item L. Bellienum prætorem, venire  
and Sylla, and also Lucius Bellienus the prætor, to come

Uticâ, præterea omnes senatorii ordinis undique;  
from Utica, besides all of senatorial rank from-every-side;

quibuscum cognoscit mandata Bocchi, in  
with whom he knows (considers) the commands of Bocchus, in

quibus potestas eundi Romam fit  
which [assembly the] power of going to Rome is made [granted]

legatis; et induciæ postulabantur interea  
to the ambassadors; and truces were requested mean-time

ab consule. Ea placuere Sullæ et  
from [the] consul. Those (things) pleased to Sylla and

plerisque: pauci decernunt ferociùs; scilicet, ignari  
 to the most: a few determine more fiercely; forsooth, ignorant  
 humanarum rerum, quæ, semper fluxæ et mobiles,  
 of human things, which, always evanescent and fickle,  
 mutantur in-adversum. Cæterùm tres Mauri,  
 are changed contrarily. But three Moors,  
 omnibus impetratis, profecti (sunt) Romam cum  
 all (things) being obtained, set-out to Rome with  
 Cn. Octavio Rufo, qui quæstor apportaverat  
 Cnæus Octavius Rufus, who (as) quæstor had brought  
 stipendium in Africam; duo redeunt ad regem.  
 the pay [to Africa]; two return to the king.  
 Bocchus lubens accepit ex his cùm  
 Bocchus being-pleased received (heard) from these as-well  
 cætera, tum maxumè benignitatem et studium  
 the-rest, then (as) chiefly the kindness and zeal  
 Sullæ.

of Sylla. [Bocchus, among the rest, heard with pleasure chiefly of the

Que Romæ  
 kindness and zeal of Sylla, in forwarding their mission.] And [at Rome]

respondetur hoc modo legatis ejus,  
 it is answered in this manner to the ambassadors of him,

petentibus amicitiam et fœdus, postquam  
 seeking friendship and a treaty, after-that

deprecati-sunt "regem errâsse, et  
 they deprecated (lamented) "the king to have erred, and

lapsum (esse) scelère Jugurthæ:" "Senatus  
 to have slipped by the wickedness of Jugurtha:" "The senate

et Romanus populus solet esse memor  
 and Roman people is accustomed to be mindful

beneficii et injuriæ; cæterùm facit gratiam  
 of kindness and of injury; but it makes favour (forgiveness)

delicti Boccho, quoniam poenitet:  
 of (his) transgression to Bocchus, since it repents (him):

fœdus et amicitia dabuntur, cùm meruerit."  
 a treaty and friendship shall be given, when he shall have deserved

Quibus rebus cognitis, Bocchus petivit  
 (them)." Which things being known, Bocchus requested

per litteras à Mario, uti mitteret Sullam  
by letters (a letter) from Marius, that he would send Sylla

ad se; arbitrato cujus consuleretur  
to himself; by the arbitration of whom it might be consulted

de communibus negotiis. Is missus (est) cum  
about (their) common affairs. He was sent with

præsidio equitum atque peditum, Baleariorum  
a guard of horse and of foot, of Balearian

funditorum; præterea sagittarii et Peligna cohors  
slingers; besides archers and a Pelignian cohort

cum velitaribus-armis ière causâ itineris  
with light-arms went by cause (for the sake) of the journey

properandi; neque muniti (sunt) secus  
to-be-hastened; nor were they protected otherwise (less)

his, atque aliis armis advorsum tela  
with these, and (than) with other arms against the darts

hostium, quòd ea sunt levia. Sed denique  
of the enemies, because those are light. But finally

quinto die, Volux, filius Bocchi, ostendit sese  
on the fifth day, Volux, the son of Bocchus, shows himself

in itinere repentè in patentibus campis cum non  
on the journey suddenly in the open plains with not

amplius mille equitibus; qui euntes temerè  
more (than) a thousand horsemen; who going rashly

et effusè, efficiebant Sullæ que omnibus  
(in disorder) and dispersedly, did cause to Sylla and to all

aliis et numerum ampliorem vero, et hostilem  
the others both a number larger (than) truth, and hostile

metum.

fear. [Which caused their numbers to appear greater than they really

were to Sylla and the rest, and to excite fear of an approaching enemy.]

Igitur quisque expedire se; tentare arma  
Therefore every-one (began) to prepare himself; to try (his) arms

atque tela, intendere;  
and darts, [to-bend] [his mind to the approaching engagement;]

aliquantus timor, sed amplior spes, quippe  
(there was) some fear, but greater hope, inasmuch-as



victoribus, et advorsum eos quos vicerant  
to conquerors, and against those whom they had conquered

sæpè. Interim equites præmissi exploratum,  
often. Meantime the cavalry sent-before to reconnoitre,

nunciant rem quietam, uti erat. Volux adveniens  
announce the affair quiet, as it was. Volux coming-up

appellat quæstorem, se missum (esse) obviam  
addresses the quæstor, (and says) himself to have been sent toward

illis à patre Boccho, et simul præsidio.  
to them by (his) father Bocchus, and at-the-same-time for protection.

Deinde eunt conjuncti sine metu eum et proximum  
Then they go united without fear that and the next

diem. Pòst ubi castra locata (sunt), et  
day. Afterwards when the camps were placed (pitched), and

erat vesper diei, Maurus incerto  
it was the evening of the day, the Moor [Volux] with uncertain

vultu pavens accurrit repentè ad Sullam, que  
countenance trembling runs-up suddenly to Sylla, and

dicat, "Cognitum (esse) sibi ex speculatoribus  
says, "To have been known to himself from scouts

Jugurtham abesse laud procul, simul rogat  
Jugurtha to be-distant not far, at-the-same-time he entreats

atque hortatur profugeret clam secum  
and exhorts (that) he would escape privately with him

noctu." Ille feroci animo negat, "se pertimescere  
by night." He with fierce mind denies, "himself to fear-much

Numidam toties fusum; credere satis virtuti  
the Numidian so-often routed; to trust sufficiently to the valour

suorum; etiam si certa pestis adesset,  
of his (men); even if certain destruction might be-at-hand,

mansurum potiùs quàm quos ducebat,  
(to be) about-to-remain rather than (those) whom he did lead,

proditis, parceret turpi fugâ incertæ vitæ,  
being betrayed, he should spare by base flight to an uncertain life,

ac forsitan interituræ paullo pòst morbo."  
and perhaps about-to-perish a little after by disease."

Cæterùm monitus ab eodem, uti proficiscerentur  
But being admonished by the same, that they should set-out

noctu, approbat consilium; ac statim jubet  
by night, he approves the plan; and immediately orders

milites coenatos esse in castris; que creberrimos  
the soldiers having supped to be in the camps; and very-frequent

ignes fieri, dein primâ vigiliâ egredi silentio.  
fires to be made, then in the first watch to go out in silence.

Que jam omnibus fessis nocturno itinere,  
And now all being fatigued with the nightly march,

Sulla pariter cum ortu solis metabatur  
Sylla equally (together) with the rising of the sun did measure

castra; cum Mauri equites nunciant Jugurtham  
camps; when the Moorish cavalry announce Jugurtha

consedissee ante eos, intervallo circiter  
to have sat-down (encamped) before them, in a distance about

duûm millium. Postquam quod auditum-est,  
of two miles. After-that which (thing) was heard,

tum verò ingens metus invadit nostros;  
then truly great fear seizes our (men); (they began)

credere se proditos à Voluce, et circumventos  
to believe themselves betrayed by Volux, and surrounded

insidiis. Ac fuere qui  
with snares. And there were (those) who would (did)

dicerent (*imp. sub.*) vindicandum manu,  
say (the thing) to be avenged by hand, [that he (Volux)

neque tantum scelus  
ought to be immediately punished] nor so-great guilt

relinquendum inultum apud illum. At Sulla,  
to-be-left unrevenged at (with) him. But Sylla,

quamquam existumabat eadem, tamen prohibet  
although he did think the same (things), however prohibits

Maurum ab injuriâ; hortatur suos,  
(protects) the Moor from injury; encourages his (men),

“utî gererent fortem animum; pugnatum (esse)  
“that they should carry a brave mind; to have been fought

sæpè antè benè paucis strenuis advorsus  
often before well with a few brave (men) against

multitudinem; quanto minùs pepercissent  
a multitude; by-how-much less they might have spared

sibi in prælio, fore tanto tutiores;  
to themselves in battle, to-be-about-to-be by-so-much more safe;

nec decere quemquam, qui armaverit manus,  
nor to become any-one, who may have armed (his) hands,

petere auxilium ab inermis pedibus, in maximo  
to seek aid from (his) unarmed feet, in the greatest

metu, vertere nudum et cæcum corpus ad  
fear, (and) to turn (his) naked and blind body to

hostes." Deinde obtestatus maximum Jovem, ut  
the enemies." Then having attested the greatest Jupiter, that

adesset testis sceleris atque perfidiæ  
he would be-present a witness of the guilt and of the treachery

Bocchi, jubet Volucem abire castris, quoniam  
of Bocchus, he orders Volux to depart from the camps, since

faceret hostilia. Ille lacrumans  
he might (did) do hostile (acts). He weeping (began)

orare "ne-crederet ea; nihil  
to entreat (that) "he would not-believe those (things); nothing

factum (esse) dolo, ac magis calliditate Jugurthæ;  
to have been done by deceit, and more by the craft of Jugurtha;

cui speculanti videlicet suum iter  
to whom watching forsooth his journey might have (had)

cognitum-esset. Cæterum quoniam  
been known. But since he [Jugurtha] might (did)

haberet (*imp. sub.*) neque ingentem multitudinem,  
have neither a great multitude,

et spes que opes ejus  
and the hopes and resources of him [Jugurtha] might (did)

penderent (*imp. sub.*) ex suo patre, credere  
depend from his [Volux's] father, to believe

illum ausurum nihil palam, cum ipse filius  
him about-to-dare nothing openly, when himself (his) son

adesset (*imp. sub.*) testis; quare  
might be (was) present (as) a witness; wherefore

videri optimum factu transire palam per media  
to seem best to be done to pass openly through the middle

castra ejus; sese solum iturum cum  
camps of him [Jugurtha]; himself [Volux] alone about-to-go with

Sullâ, Mauris vel præmissis, vel relictis  
 Sylla, the Moors either being sent-before, or being left  
 ibidem." Ea res probata (est), uti in tali negotio;  
 there." That thing was approved-of, as in such a business;  
 ac profecti statim, transeunt incolumes,  
 and having set-out immediately, they pass-over safe,  
 Jugurthâ dubio atque hæsitante, quia  
 Jugurtha (being) doubtful and hesitating, because  
 accesserant de-improviso. Deinde  
 they had approached unexpectedly. Afterwards  
 perventum-est paucis diebus, quò intenderant  
 it was arrived in a few days, whither they had determined  
 ire. Ibi quidam Numida, nomine Aspar, agebat  
 to go. There a certain Numidian, by name Aspar, did act  
 multum et familiariter cum Boccho, præmissus  
 much and familiarly with Bocchus, being sent-before (as)  
 orator ab Jugurthâ, postquam audierat  
 a pleader [agent] by Jugurtha, after-that he had heard  
 Sullam accitum, et speculatum subdolè consilia  
 Sylla sent-for, and to watch craftily the designs  
 Bocchi; præterea Dabar, filius Mussugradæ, ex  
 of Bocchus; besides Dabar, son of Mussugrada, out-of  
 gente Masinissæ, cæterum impar materno  
 the nation (family) of Masinissa, but unequal by the maternal  
 genere, nam pater ejus ortus-erat ex concubinâ;  
 race, for the father of him had sprung from a concubine;  
 carus que acceptus Mauro ob multa  
 dear and accepted (esteemed) to the Moor on-account-of many  
 bona ingenii, quem Bocchus expertus  
 good (qualities) of understanding, whom Bocchus having experienced  
 esse fidum Romanis multis tempestatibus antè,  
 to be faithful to the Romans in many occasions before,  
 mittit illicò nunciatum ad Sullam, "Sese  
 sends immediately to announce to Sylla, "Himself (to be)  
 paratum facere quæ Romanus populus vellet;  
 prepared to do what (things) the Roman people might will;  
 ipse deligeret diem, locum, tempus colloquio;  
 himself might choose the day, place, time for a conference;

sese habere omnia consulta integra cum illo;  
himself to have all deliberations entire with him;

neu pertimesceret

nor he might fear [that he had kept every thing to be deliberated

legatum Jugurthæ:"]

with him, so that he might not fear] the ambassador of Jugurtha:"]

quò communis res gereretur licentiùs;  
and in-order-that the common affair might be carried-on more freely;

nam nequivisse caveri aliter ab insidiis  
for to have been-unable to be guarded otherwise from the snares

ejus. Sed ego comperior Bocchum attinuisse  
of him. But I find Bocchus to have detained

Romanos et Numidam simul spe  
the Romans and the Numidian at-the-same-time with the hope

pacis, magis Punicâ fide, quàm ob ea,  
of peace, rather with Punic faith, than on-account-of those

quæ prædicabat; quæ solitum (esse)  
(things), which he did declare; and to have been accustomed

volvere multùm cum suo animo, traderet  
to revolve much with his mind, (whether) he should deliver

Jugurtham Romanis, an Sullam illi; libidinem  
Jugurtha to the Romans, or Sylla to him; desire

suasisse advorsum nos, metum pro nobis.  
to have persuaded (him) against us, fear for us.

Igitur Sulla respondit, se locuturum pauca  
Therefore Sylla answered, himself about-to-speak a few (words)

coram Aspare, cætera occultè, aut nullo, aut  
before Aspar, the rest secretly, either no-one, or

quàm-paucissimis presentibus; simul edocet  
as-few-as-possible being present; at-the-same-time he informs

quæ responderentur. Postquam  
(him) what (things) should be answered. After-that

congressi (sunt), sicuti voluerant, dicit se missum  
they met, so-as they had willed, he says himself being sent

à consule venisse, quæsitum ab eo,  
by the consul to have come, to inquire from him, (whether)

foret agiturus pacem an bellum. Tum  
he might be about-to-transact peace or war. Then

rex, uti fuerat præceptum, jubet redire, post  
the king, as had been instructed, orders (him) to return, after

decimum diem, ac decrevisse nihil etiam nunc,  
the tenth day, and to have determined nothing even now,

sed responsurum illo die. Deinde ambo  
but about-to-answer in that day. Then both

digressi (sunt) in sua castra. Sed ubi plerumque  
departed into their camps. But when most

noctis processit, Sulla arcessitur occultè à  
of the night advanced, Sylla is sent-for secretly by

Boccho; fidi interpretes tantummodò adhibentur  
Bocchus; faithful interpreters only are applied

ab utroque. Præterea, Dabar internuncius,  
(retained) by each. Besides, Dabar the inter-messenger,

sanctus vir, jurat ambobus ex  
a holy (upright) man, swears to both according-to (their)

sententiâ; ac rex statim incipit sic. Ego  
opinion; and the king immediately begins thus. I

nunquam ratus-sum fore, uti maxumus  
never thought (the thing) to be about-to-be, that the greatest

rex in hâc terrâ, et opulentissimus omnium, quos  
king in this land, and the most-wealthy of all, whom

novi, deberem gratiam privato homini. Et  
I have known, should owe a favour to a private man. And

Hercule, Sulla, ante te cognitum, egomet tuli  
by Hercules, Sylla, before thee being known, I-myself have brought

opem ultrò multis aliis orantibus; indigui  
assistance voluntarily to many others begging (it); I have wanted

nullius. Ego lætor id, quod cæteri  
of none. I rejoice that, which the rest (of the world)

solent dolere, imminutum (esse). Fuerit  
are accustomed to grieve, to have been diminished. It will have been

pretium mihi eguisse aliquando tuæ amicitiae;  
a price (a reward) to me to have wanted [at length] of thy friendship;

quâ habeo nihil carius apud meum animum.  
(than) which I have nothing dearer at (in) my mind.

Adeò licet experiri id; sume, utere arma, viros,  
Thus it is-lawful to try that; take, use arms, men,

pecuniam, postremò quicquid lubet animo; et  
 money, lastly whatever it pleases to (thy) mind; and  
 putaveris gratiam nunquam redditam  
 thou shalt have thought (think) the favour never returned  
 tibi, quoad vives; erit semper integra  
 to thee, as-long-as thou shalt live; it shall be always entire  
 apud me; denique, voles nihil  
 with me; finally, thou shalt will [thou shalt want] nothing  
 frustrâ, me sciente. Nam, ut ego existumo,  
 in-vain, I knowing (it). For, as I think, (it is)  
 minus flagitiosum regem vinci armis, quàm  
 less disgraceful a king to be conquered by arms, than  
 munificentiâ. Cæterùm accipe paucis  
 by liberality. But receive (hear) in a few (words)  
 de vestrâ republicâ, cujus missus-es  
 concerning your state, of which thou hast been sent  
 huc curator. Ego neque feci bellum Romano  
 hither (as) manager. I neither have made war to the Roman  
 populo, neque volui unquam factum; tutus-sum  
 people, nor have I willed (it) ever made; I have defended  
 meos fines advorsum armatos armis. Omitto  
 my borders against armed (men) by arms. I lay-aside  
 id; quando placet vobis ita, gerite bellum cum  
 that; since it pleases to you thus, carry-on the war with  
 Jugurthâ, uti vultis. Ego non-egrediar flumen  
 Jugurtha, as you will. I shall not-go-without the river  
 Mulucham, quod fuit inter me et Micipsam,  
 Mulucha, which has been between me and Micipsa,  
 neque sinam Jugurtham intrare id. Præterea, si  
 nor will I suffer Jugurtha to enter that. Besides, if  
 petiveris quid dignum que me que  
 thou'shalt have sought any (thing) worthy both me and  
 vobis, (abl.) abibis haud repulsus. Sulla disseruit  
 you, thou shalt depart not rejected. Sylla discoursed  
 breviter et modicè ad ea pro se; multis  
 briefly and moderately to those (words) for himself; in many (words)  
 de pace et communibus rebus. Denique, patefecit  
 about peace and the common affairs. Finally, he disclosed

regi, "Senatum et Romanum populum non  
to the king, "The senate and Roman people not

habituos in gratiâ, quod polliceatur (*pres. sub.*),  
about-to-have in favour, what he may promise (does promise),

quoniam valuissent ampliùs armis; aliquid  
since they might have prevailed more by arms; some

faciundum, quod videretur retulisse illorum,  
(thing) to-be-done, which might seem to have concerned of them,

magis quàm suâ, adeo id esse in promptu,  
more than his-own (interest), thus that to be in readiness

quoniam haberet copiam  
(easily done), since he might (did) have power

Jugurthæ, quem si tradidisset Romanis,  
of Jugurtha, whom if he might have (had) delivered to the Romans,

fore, ut plurimum deberetur illi;  
to be about-to-be, that very-much should be-due to him;

amicitiam, fœdus, partem Numidiæ, quam  
friendship, a treaty, the part of Numidia, which he might (did)

peteret (*imp. sub.*) nunc, adventuram tunc  
solicit now, about-to-come-to (him) then

ultrò." Rex primò negitare affinitatem,  
voluntarily." The king firstly (began) to deny-often [that] affinity,

cognitionem, præterea fœdus intervenisse;  
kindred, besides a treaty to have intervened [existed be-

ad hoc metuere, ne usus  
tween them]; to this (besides) to fear, lest having used

fluxâ fide averteret animos  
an unsteady faith [bad faith] he might turn-away the minds of (his)

popularium, quîs et Jugurtha carus et  
countrymen, to whom both Jugurtha (was) dear and

Romani essent inuisi. Denique, fatigatus  
the Romans might be (were) hateful. Finally, being importuned

sæpiùs, lenitur; et promittit se facturum  
more-frequently, he is softened; and promises himself about-to-do

omnia ex voluntate Sullæ. Cæterùm  
all (things) according-to the will of Sylla. But

constituunt quæ visa (sunt) utilia ad pacem  
they settle what (things) seemed useful to peace



simulandam, cujus Numida, defessus bello,  
to-be-feigned, of which the Numidian, wearied by the war, (was)

avidissimus. Ita dolo composito, digrediuntur.  
most-eager. Thus the plot being arranged, they separate.

At rex postero die appellat Asparem,  
But the king on the following day calls Aspar,

legatum Jugurthæ, que dicit cognitum (esse)  
the ambassador of Jugurtha, and says (it) to have been known

ex Sullâ, per Dabarem, bellum posse componi  
from Sylla, through Dabar, the war to be-able to be arranged

conditionibus: quamobrem exquireret sententiam  
by conditions: wherefore he should seek the opinion

sui regis. Ille, lætus, venit in castra Jugurthæ.  
of his king. He, glad, came into the camps of Jugurtha.

Deinde edoctus cuncta ab illo, itinere  
Then being instructed all (things) by him, the journey

properato, redit ad Bocchum post octavum  
being hastened, he returns to Bocchus after the eighth

diem, et nunciat ei, Jugurtham cupere facere  
day, and announces to him, Jugurtha to desire to do

omnia, quæ imperarentur; sed fidere  
all (things), which might be commanded; but to trust [but that

parum Mario: pacem conventam cum  
he trusted] little to Marius: the peace agreed-on with

Romanis imperatoribus fuisse frustrâ sæpè antè.  
the Roman commanders to have been in-vain often before.

Cæterùm si Bocchus vellet, consultum ambobus,  
But if Bocchus might will, to consult for both,

et ratam pacem, daret operam, ut  
and a stable peace, he should give (his) assistance, that

veniretur unâ in colloquium ab omnibus,  
it might be come together into a conference by all,

quasi de pace; que  
[that all should meet in conference,] as-if about the peace; and

ibi traderet Sullam sibi: cùm  
there he should deliver Sylla to himself: when he might (did)

haberet talem virum in potestate, tum fore,  
have such a man in (his) power, then to be about-to-be

utì fœdus fieret jussu senatûs que  
that a treaty might be made by command of the senate and

Romani populi; neque nobilem hominem  
of the Roman people; neither a noble man

relictum-iri in potestate hostium, non suâ  
to be about-to-be-left in the power of enemies, [not by his

ignavirâ, sed ob rempublicam. Maurus  
indolence, [or fault], but] on-account-of the commonwealth. The Moor

ipse, volvens hæc diu secum, tandem  
himself, revolving these (things) long with himself, at-length

promisit. Cæterùm comperimus parum  
promised. But we have discovered little (whether)

cunctatus (est) dolo, an verè. Sed ut regiæ  
he delayed by deceit, or truly. But as royal

voluntates plerumque vehementes, sic  
wills (are) generally vehement, so (they are)

mobiles; ipsæ sæpè advorsæ sibi. Postea  
fickle; themselves often opposite to themselves. Afterwards

tempore et loco constituto, utì veniretur in  
a time and place being appointed, that it might be come into

colloquium de pace, Bocchus appellare Sullam  
a conference about peace, Bocchus (began) to address Sylla

modò, legatum Jugurthæ modò; habere  
now, the ambassador of Jugurtha now; to have (treat them)

benignè; polliceri idem ambobus. Illi  
kindly; to promise the same (thing) to both. They (began)

esse pariter læti, ac pleni bonæ spei. Sed eâ  
to be equally glad, and full of good hope. But in that

nocte, quæ fuit proxima antè diem decretum  
night, which was the next before the day decreed

colloquio, Maurus, amicis adhibitis,  
for the conference, the Moor, (his) friends being applied (called-in),

ac voluntate immutatâ, cæteris remotis,  
and (his) will being changed, the rest being removed,

ipse dicitur agitavisse multa secum, varius  
himself is said to have pondered much with himself, changeable

pariter vultu corporis atque animo: quæ  
equally in the look of (his) body and in mind: which

scilicet, ipso tacente, patefecisse  
 forsooth, himself being-silent, (tended) to have disclosed

occulta pectoris. Tamen, postremò, jubet  
 the hidden (things) of the breast. However, lastly, he orders

Sullam arcessiri; et tendit insidias Numidæ  
 Sylla to be sent-for; and stretches (lays) snares for the Numidian

ex sententiâ ejus. Deinde ubi dies advenit,  
 according-to the opinion of him. Then when the day came,

et nunciatum-est ei Jugurtham abesse haud  
 and it was announced to him Jugurtha to be-distant not

procul, procedit obvius, quasi causâ  
 far, he proceeds opposite (towards), as-if by cause (for the sake)

honoris, cum paucis amicis et nostro quæstore,  
 of honour, with a few friends and our quæstor, [Sylla,]

in tumulum facillumum visu insidiantibus.  
 unto a hillock very-easy to be seen to (those) lying-in-wait.

Numida accedit eodem cum plerisque suis  
 The Numidian approaches to the same (place) with most-of his

necessariis inermis, ut dictum-erat; ac  
 friends unarmed, as had been said (appointed); and

statim signo dato, invaditur undique  
 [immediately] a signal being given, he is attacked from-every-side

simul ex insidiis. Cæteri obtruncati (sunt):  
 together from the ambushes. The rest were slaughtered:

Jugurtha traditur vinctus Sullæ, et deductus  
 Jugurtha is delivered-up bound to Sylla, and was conducted

ab eo ad Marium. Per idem tempus,  
 by him to Marius. Through (during) the same time,

pugnatum (est) malè adversum Gallos ab nostris  
 it was fought badly against the Gauls by our

ducibus Q. Cæpione, et M. Manlio. Quo metu  
 generals Quintus Cæpio, and Marcus Manlius. From which fear

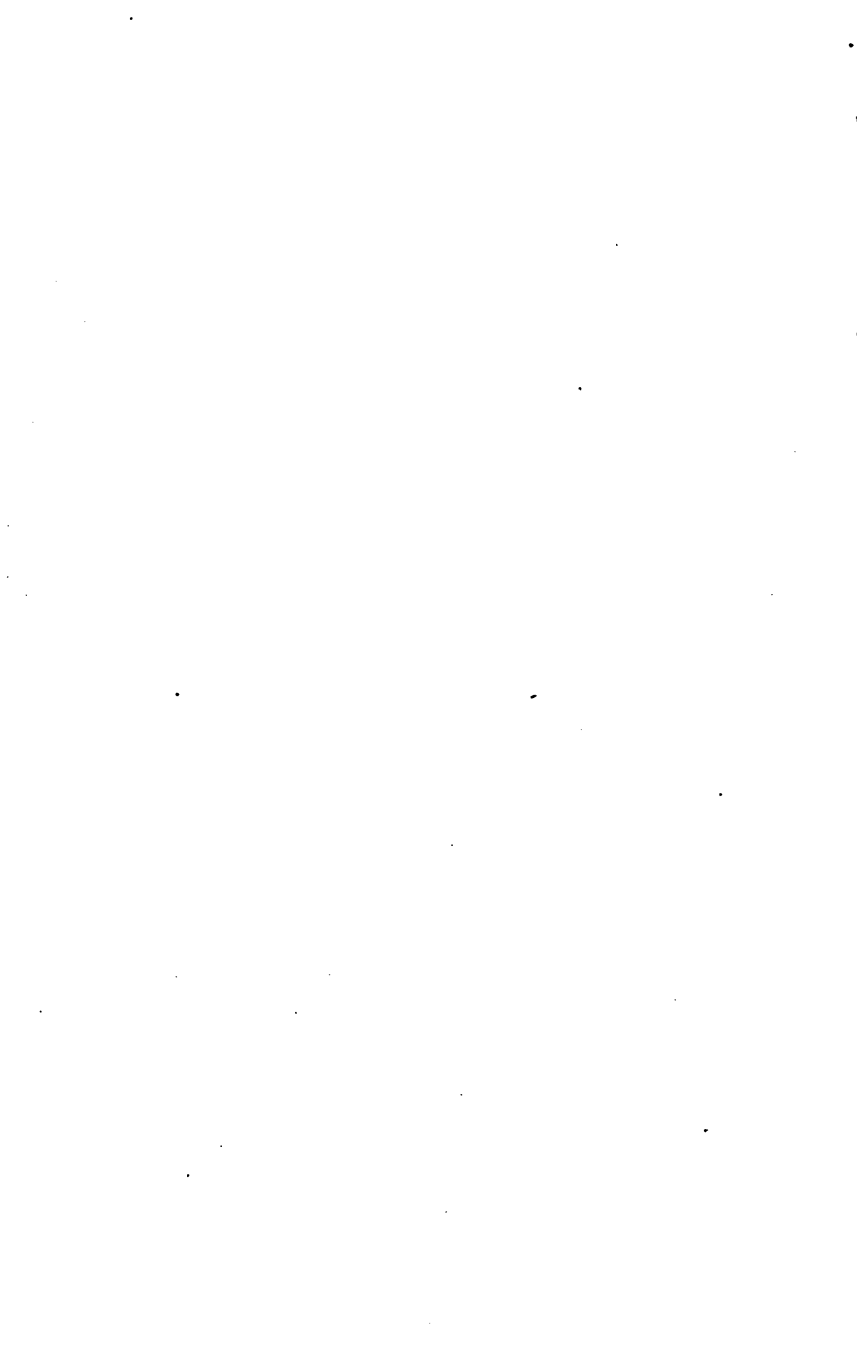
omnis Italia contremuerat. Que illi et  
 all Italy had trembled. And those (Romans) and

Romani inde, usque ad nostram memoriam habuêre  
 the Romans thence, until to our memory held

sic; omnia alia esse prona  
 (the matter) thus; all other (things) to be inclined (yielding)

suæ virtuti; certare cum Gallis pro salute, non pro  
 to their valour; to contend with the Gauls for safety, not for  
 gloriâ. Sed postquam nunciatum (est) bellum  
 glory. But after-that it was announced the war  
 confectum (esse) in Numidiâ, et Jugurtham adduci  
 to have been finished in Numidia, and Jugurtha to be led  
 vinctum Romam, Marius, absens, factus-est  
 bound to Rome, Marius, (though) absent, was made  
 consul, et provincia, Gallia decreta (est) ei; que  
 consul, and the province, Gaul was decreed to him; and  
 is triumphavit consul magnâ gloriâ Januariis  
 he triumphed (as) consul with great glory in the Januarian  
 calendis. Ex eâ tempestate, spes atque opes  
 calends. From that time, the hopes and resources  
 civitatis sitæ in illo.  
 of the state (were) placed in him.

THE END.



# HAMILTON AND LOCKE AND CLARK'S SYSTEM OF CLASSICAL INSTRUCTION.

PUBLISHED BY CHARLES DESILVER,

714 CHESNUT ST., PHILADELPHIA.

---

We do amiss to spend seven or eight years merely scraping together so much miserable Latin and Greek as might be learned otherwise easily and delightfully in one year. — MILTON.

---

- VIRGIL:** interlinear translation by Hart and Osborne — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- CÆSAR:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark — 1 volume, royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- HORACE:** interlinear translation by Stirling, Nuttall, and Clark — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- CICERO:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark — 1 volume, royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- SALLUST:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey ..... Price, \$1.50
- CLARK'S PRACTICAL AND PROGRESSIVE LATIN GRAMMAR:**  
adapted to the Interlinear Series of Classics, and to all other systems — 1 vol. royal 12mo, half Turkey..... Price, \$1.00

The plan of this Grammar is altogether of a practical nature; for, while the scholar is learning the declensions and conjugations, he has them exemplified in lessons extracted from the Classics. Where this method has been properly applied, a more rapid and thorough knowledge of the elements of Latin has always been the result.

## IN PREPARATION:

**OVID:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark.

**XENOPHON'S ANABASIS:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark.

**HOMER'S ILIAD:** interlinear translation by Hamilton and Clark.

*To be followed by School Editions of the other Classic Writers, on the same plan.*

The plan of these works is not new. It is merely the adaptation of the experience of many of the best and most inquiring minds in educational pursuits — methodizing what was vague and loose. When the Latin tongue was the only language of diplomacy and scientific international communication, to acquire a knowledge of it was considered of more importance than now. This method was then recommended by Cardinal Wolsey, John Ascham, Latin Secretary to Queen Elizabeth, and by the best *Latin scholar and writer* of his time, John Milton; and in testimony of it John Locke says: — "When, by this way of interlining Latin and English one with another, he has got a moderate knowledge of the Latin tongue, he may then be advanced a little further. *Nor let the objection that he will then know it only by rote, fright any one.* This, when well considered, is not of any moment against, but plainly *for*, this way of learning a language. The languages are only to be learned by rote; and he that speaks them well has no other rule but that." In teaching classes by oral dictation, these works present advantages that no others do.

C. DESILVER, PUBLISHER, PHILADELPHIA.

## ABSTRACTS

*From Reviews, Notices, and Recommendations of the Interlinear Series of Latin Classics, published by CHAR. DESILVER, No. 714 Chestnut St., Philadelphia.*

---

*From the New York Daily Times*

The use of interlinear translations of the Classics has the sanction of common sense, and has been warmly recommended by such men as Cardinal Wolsey, Erasmus, Roger Ascham, John Milton, John Locke, and Sidney Smith.

We believe, with Sidney Smith, that this system, "the time being given, will make better scholars; and, the degree of scholarship being given, a much shorter time will be needed."

Charles Desilver, the Philadelphia publisher, has commenced issuing a series of Greek and Latin Classics, with interlinear translations, greatly superior to any we have yet seen.

---

*From Eliza D. Willard, New York, Correspondent of the Boston Atlas.*

Permit me to propose to all amateur students of the Greek and Latin Classics, from Maine to California, a vote of thanks to Mr. Charles Desilver, of Philadelphia, for the interlinear translations, which he is now issuing.

Having myself spent five weary years at Greek and Latin, I think I may pretend to venture an opinion in favour of the new system, that is, to the general class of students, but with teachers, quite old enough.

---

*From the Daily Delta, New Orleans.*

CÆSAR. — A more admirable literal translation of every word in Cæsar's great work, it would be impossible to meet with.

It must serve as the best possible work for the Latin student.

HORACE. — A new edition, carefully revised and collated by Thomas Clark. Too much praise cannot be given for the conscientious manner in which the task has been performed.

---

*From the Bulletin, New Orleans.*

VIRGIL AND HORACE, INTERLINEAR. — These two books should be in the hands of every scholar. They are gotten up in superior style, and would adorn any library

SCHOOL LIBRARY BOOKS.

---

## Valuable Books for School Libraries.



## LORD'S HISTORY.

A MODERN HISTORY,

FROM THE TIME OF LUTHER TO THE FALL OF NAPOLEON. BY JOHN LORD, A.M.  
LECTURER ON HISTORY.

A gentleman who has been listened to and eulogized as a lecturer on history, by Dr. Chalmers, and scores of other eminent men in Great Britain, and whose lectures are just now attracting much admiration in our own city, has no occasion for newspaper praise. It would be difficult to imagine how a volume like the present could be used as a class-book in a public institution without imparting benefits rarely experienced in kindred studies. Indeed we know no other compend covering the same ground equal to it; and it will be found as interesting and instructive in the family as in schools. No District School should be without it.—*Newark, N. J. Advertiser.*

(38)



HISTORICAL SERIES.

---

LORD'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

---

A New History of the United States of America,

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

BY JOHN LORD, A.M.,

AUTHOR OF A MODERN HISTORY FROM THE TIME OF LUTHER TO THE  
FALL OF NAPOLEON.

---

This work is written in the attractive style for which the author is so noted, and is admirably calculated to produce in the minds of pupils who shall use it a love for the study.

It is beautifully illustrated with numerous fine Engravings, and contains an excellent coloured Map of the United States, and several additional maps showing the position of various battle-fields and noted places in our history.

NOTICES.

*From the Philadelphia American Courier.*

This may very safely be pronounced a much needed and at the same time a most admirably executed volume for the schools of the country, and for which we unhesitatingly predict great popularity and an immense demand. The great leading facts in our national history are presented in plain, well expressed terms, without verboseness or ambiguity, by one who has proved himself to be an able scholar, a just historian, and a patriot of enlarged, liberal views. It is just the work to give the youthful mind right and lasting impressions of the history of the country.

*From the New York Evening Mirror.*

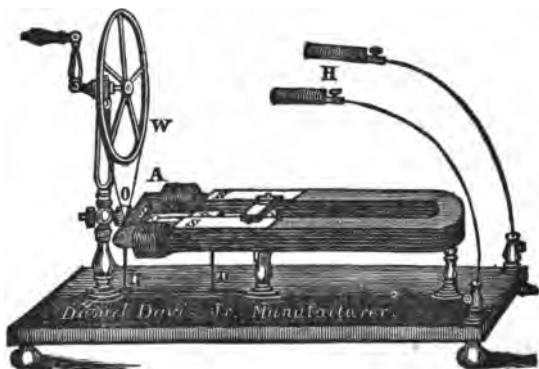
It is not only an excellent School History, but an excellent general history, that may be perused with profit by readers of all ages and acquirements.

*From the Philadelphia City Item.*

This book will supply a deficiency long acknowledged in school literature. We doubt if any other man in the country is so well calculated to write this history. Mr. Lord is a great favourite of ours. His style is eminently lucid, vigorous, and comprehensive. We think we can, without fear of contradiction, pronounce him a master of the English tongue. With a wealth of language known to but few, he is singularly simple in his choice of words. His sentences are direct and to the point, and his matter is always the gist of the story. These are rare qualifications, and almost indispensable in a historian. We shall be mistaken if this work is not at once hailed with acclamation as by far the best school history in the United States yet published. It should at once be introduced into our Public Schools.

**WORKS ON THE NATURAL SCIENCES.**

---



**PARTICULAR ATTENTION**

**IS INVITED TO**

**Charles Desilver's  
SCHOOL PUBLICATIONS  
UPON THE NATURAL SCIENCES.**

**AMONG THEM ARE**

**JOHNSTON'S SERIES.**

---

**JOHNSTON'S TURNER'S CHEMISTRY.**

**A MANUAL OF CHEMISTRY,**

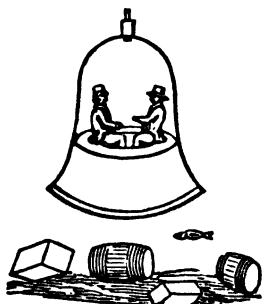
**ON THE BASIS OF DR. TURNER'S ELEMENTS OF CHEMISTRY, CONTAINING, IN A  
CONDENSED FORM, ALL THE MOST IMPORTANT FACTS AND PRINCIPLES  
OF THE SCIENCE. DESIGNED AS A TEXT-BOOK IN COLLEGES  
AND OTHER SEMINARIES OF LEARNING.**

**A NEW EDITION.**

**BY JOHN JOHNSTON, A. M.,**  
Professor of Natural Science in Wesleyan University.

---

**JOHNSTON'S TURNER'S ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY**  
**FOR THE USE OF COMMON SCHOOLS. One Vol. 18mo.**



## JOHNSTON'S NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

REVISED EDITION.

ENLARGED AND IMPROVED.

*A Manual of Natural Philosophy,*

COMPILED FROM VARIOUS SOURCES, AND DESIGNED AS A TEXT-BOOK IN HIGH SCHOOLS AND ACADEMIES.

BY JOHN JOHNSTON, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF NATURAL SCIENCE IN THE WESLEYAN UNIVERSITY.

---

The above valuable series of books were prepared by JOHN JOHNSTON, A.M., Professor of Natural Science in the Wesleyan University, Middletown, Ct. The Chemistry is the standard text-book of many of the leading Colleges and prominent Medical Institutions of the country. The Elementary Chemistry, very recently published, has been adopted in many High Schools and Academies, in all parts of the country.

The present edition of Johnston's Natural Philosophy will be found much enlarged and improved. Exact in its definitions, original in its illustrations, full and familiar in explanation, the publishers are assured it will require only to be examined to be approved. It has been recently recommended by the Board of Education of the State of New Hampshire for the use of the Common Schools of the State; it has also been adopted in the High School of Cambridge, Massachusetts, and in many Academies and Schools in various sections of the country.

A few notices of the series, from among many which have been received, are appended

## MODERN LANGUAGES.

---

# MANESCA'S FRENCH GRAMMAR; Or the Serial and Oral Method of Teaching Languages:—Adapted to the French

BY L. MANESCA.

---

## SERIAL AND ORAL METHOD.

### MANESCA'S FRENCH READER.

Prepared for the use of Students who have gone through the Course of Lessons contained in the method; to which is added,

#### A TABLE OF THE FRENCH VERBS,

Arranged and classified on a new plan, calculated to facilitate greatly their acquisition. BY L. MANESCA.

---

#### EXTRACTS OF NOTICES OF MANESCA'S FRENCH GRAMMAR.

*From the New York Daily Tribune.*

This is no doubt one of the most rational and effective manuals for the teaching of languages that has ever been prepared; any person, with an ordinary degree of attention, may, with its aid, be certain of obtaining a sound, practical knowledge of the French in a short time. The Serial and Oral method was discovered by JOHN MANESCA, who devoted a life of profound philosophical investigation to the subject of teaching languages. The result of his labours was the creation of the system in question. Various imitations have been made of his matchless method, and it has become more widely and popularly known under other names than his own. The most successful imitation is that made by OLLENDORFF, of Paris, a German teacher, into whose hands the system fell by accident, a few years since, and who appropriated it as an invention of his own.

*From the New York Evening Post.*

This appears to us a very able work, arranged with great order and method, and admirably adapted to the end it has in view. "I call the method, the Serial," says the author in the preface, "because the elements of our language are distributed and classified in a series, that is, in a naturally progressive and connected order, conformable to the nature of language and to the laws of acquisition of the understanding." The elements are arranged, each in its proper place, forming one great chain of connected and dependent links. With the aid of this Serial arrangement the student is led on by easy steps, from the simpler to the more complex part of the language, and acquires it without the vexatious labour, growing out of the artificial difficulties which false systems create. The term Oral indicates that the method communicates a knowledge of the spoken language.

The oral exercises have been prepared, and are introduced for the purpose of communicating this knowledge. The serial and oral method is the same in principle as that which nature employs in teaching the child its mother tongue, but being adapted to maturer age, the series of which the language is composed, is condensed and greatly abridged, so that an amount of language can, in a few months, be acquired by the student, which the child requires years to learn.

HISTORICAL SERIES.

---



PINNOCK'S HISTORICAL SERIES.

---

## PINNOCK'S ENGLAND.

REVISED EDITION.

**PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION OF DR. GOLDSMITH'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND  
FROM THE INVASION OF JULIUS CÆSAR  
TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE THE II.**

WITH A CONTINUATION TO THE YEAR 1845:

WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION,

BESIDES A VARIETY OF VALUABLE INFORMATION ADDED THROUGHOUT THE WORK,  
Consisting of Tables of Contemporary Sovereigns and eminent Persons, copious Explanatory Notes, Remarks on the Politics, Manners and Literature of the Age,  
and an Outline of the Constitution.

ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS

ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTH AMERICAN. CORRECTED AND REVISED FROM THE THIRTY-FIFTH ENGLISH EDITION.

By W. C. TAYLOR, J.L. D., OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN,  
Author of a Manual of Ancient and Modern History, &c. &c.

(9)

---

## PINNOCK'S FRANCE,

HISTORY OF FRANCE AND NORMANDY, FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO  
THE REVOLUTION OF 1848,

WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION,

By W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D., OF TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN,  
Author of a Manual of Ancient and Modern History, &c. &c., and Editor of Pinnock's  
Improved editions of Goldsmith's Greece, Rome, and England.

ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS.

TWENTY-FIFTH AMERICAN FROM THE THIRD ENGLISH EDITION.

---

## PINNOCK'S ROME,

REVISED EDITION,

PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION OF DR. GOLDSMITH'S HISTORY OF ROME,  
TO WHICH IS PREFIXED

AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF ROMAN HISTORY,

AND A GREAT VARIETY OF INFORMATION THROUGHOUT THE WORK,

ON THE MANNERS, INSTITUTIONS, AND ANTIQUITIES OF THE ROMANS;

WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION.

SIXTY-FIFTH AMERICAN, FROM THE TWENTY-THIRD LONDON EDITION, IMPROVED

BY W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D.,

WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS BY ATHERTON AND OTHERS.

---

## PINNOCK'S GREECE,

REVISED EDITION,

PINNOCK'S IMPROVED EDITION OF DR. GOLDSMITH'S HISTORY OF GREECE,  
REVISED, CORRECTED, AND VERY CONSIDERABLY ENLARGED,

BY THE ADDITION OF SEVERAL NEW CHAPTERS, AND NUMEROUS  
USEFUL NOTES.

WITH QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION AT THE END OF EACH SECTION.

FORTY-FIFTH AMERICAN, FROM THE NINETEENTH LONDON EDITION, IMPROVED

BY W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D.,

WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS, BY ATHERTON AND OTHERS.

Pinnock's Series have been recommended by several State Superintendents for the School Libraries of their respective States, and great numbers of them have been sold for that purpose. The present editions of the Histories of England, Greece and Rome, were revised by the eminent Historian, W. C. TAYLOR, LL. D., of Trinity College, Dublin, who is also the author of the History of France. The different volumes of the series are handsomely illustrated and substantially bound.

HISTORICAL SERIES.

---



HISTORICAL SCHOOL PUBLICATIONS

OF

CHARLES DESILVER.

---

LORD'S HISTORY.

*A Modern History,*

FROM THE TIME OF LUTHER TO THE FALL OF NAPOLEON

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY JOHN LORD, A.M.,

LECTURER ON HISTORY.

---

Of the fitness of Mr. Lord to prepare such a history, some opinion has been formed from a perusal of the English and American testimonials of his Historical Lectures, a few of which are appended.

**MATHEMATICAL WORKS.**

---

**VIRGINIA MILITARY INSTITUTE  
MATHEMATICAL SERIES,**

**BY COL. FRANCIS H. SMITH,  
SUPERINTENDENT OF THE VIRGINIA MILITARY INSTITUTE.**

---

**INTRODUCTION TO SMITH AND DUKE'S  
ARITHMETIC.**

**BY FRANCIS H. SMITH, A.M.**

---

**AMERICAN STATISTICAL ARITHMETIC.**

**DESIGNED FOR ACADEMIES AND SCHOOLS.**

**BY FRANCIS H. SMITH, A.M.**

*Superintendent and Professor of Mathematics in the Virginia Military Institute; late  
Professor of Mathematics in Hampden Sydney College, and formerly Assistant  
Professor in the United States Military Academy, West Point;*

**AND R. T. W. DUKE,**  
*Assistant Professor of Mathematics in the Virginia Military Institute.*

**THIRD EDITION.**

---

**KEY TO SMITH AND DUKE'S AMERICAN  
STATISTICAL ARITHMETIC.**

**PREPARED BY WILLIAM FORBES,**  
*Assistant Professor of Mathematics in the Virginia Military Institute.*

---

**SMITH'S ALGEBRA.**

**AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON ALGEBRA,**

**PREPARED FOR THE USE OF THE CADETS OF THE VIRGINIA MILITARY  
INSTITUTE, AND ADAPTED TO THE PRESENT STATE OF MATHE-  
MATICAL INSTRUCTION IN THE SCHOOLS, ACADEMIES,  
AND COLLEGES OF THE UNITED STATES.**

**BY FRANCIS H. SMITH, A.M.**

This work is designed to present as complete an Elementary course of Algebra, as the time devoted to the study of Mathematics in the College of our country will allow; while it will be equally within the comprehension of the pupil of the High School or Academy.



**SARGENT'S STANDARD SPEAKER.**

JUST PUBLISHED,

*In one demi-octavo volume of 558 pages.*

**THE STANDARD SPEAKER,**

CONTAINING

**Exercises in Prose and Poetry,**

**FOR DECLAMATION IN SCHOOLS, ACADEMIES, LYCEUMS, COLLEGES.**

**newly translated or compiled from celebrated Orators, Authors, and popular  
Debaters, ancient and modern.**

**A TREATISE ON ORATORY AND ELOCUTION,**

**WITH NOTES EXPLANATORY AND BIOGRAPHICAL.**

**BY EPES SARGENT.**

This work has been compiled with great care, and contains a majority of new pieces. It is far more comprehensive than any similar work, and is adapted for use not only as a Speaker, but to the general reader, as a collection containing many new, rare, and elegant extracts.

From among a great number of commendatory notices received from essayists, the press, and teachers of elocution, a few are subjoined.

*From E. P. WHIPPLE, Esq., the well-known Essayist and Critic.*

We have no hesitation in saying that this is the best compilation of the kind, in the variety and in the comprehensiveness of its selections, which has been made on either side of the Atlantic. The various pieces are selected with great judgment from a long array of celebrated orators and writers. A good portion of the work is devoted to extracts from late speeches in France, England, and America, which have never before appeared in a collection of the kind; and the works of the great masters of eloquence, Chatham, Burke, Pitt, Fox, Grattan, Emmett, Shiel, and Webster, have been carefully studied for new specimens. The original translations from the French are admirably executed, and add a novel feature to the work. The amount of editorial labor expended on the whole compilation must have been very great — greater, we think, than that of any other Speaker.

The introductory treatise on Oratory and Elocution is a model of condensation, full of matter, clear, sensible, and available in every part. Not only is the volume admirably adapted to serve its primal purpose as a Speaker, but to the general reader it will be found to be a most stimulating and attractive book, better than any work of "elegant extracts" we have seen.

## SARGENT'S STANDARD SPEAKER.

---

*From the Knickerbocker (N. Y.) Magazine.*

While he (the compiler) has retained all the indispensable masterpieces, and restored many that have been omitted from the collections the last twenty years, he has given an amount of fresh, new, and appropriate matter, that will astonish and delight the youthful prize-seeking orators of our academies and schools. He has translated from Mirabeau and Victor Hugo a number of speeches of appropriate length, that will become as familiar as the "Give me liberty or give me death" speech of Patrick Henry.

---

*From E. S. DIXWELL, Esq., late Principal of the Public Latin School, Boston.*

The volume seems to me to be a very valuable one, and to contain more available matter than any book of the kind I ever saw. Beside the old standard pieces, you have given us a great many new ones, and, to my surprise, have put a new vigor into some of the old translations, which makes them quite new and redolent of their originals.

---

*From the Lowell Courier.*

The whole range of ancient and modern oratory, pulpit, forensic, or occasional, as well as of poetry, dramatic, lyrical, or epic, has been explored, and the choicest gems from each brought together into this literary casket. The volume should be on the table of every friend of elegant letters, as a collection of rare and beautiful extracts, to be read and read again.

---

*From the Boston Daily Advertiser.*

The volume deserves to be, what its title claims, a "STANDARD SPEAKER."

---

*From the New York Express.*

The Standard Speaker is one of the most superbly executed works that ever emanated from the American press, and is the best book for the purposes for which it was designed, ever issued in the language. It must become a standard school-book, wherever reading and elocution are taught.

---

*From the New York Home Journal.*

The chimerical "systems," through which a short cut to the attainment of good elocution is promised, are set down at their true value. All the available information on the subject is here summed up. The principal department is the Senatorial; and this is much more full and satisfactory than anything of the kind that has yet appeared in any elocutionary collection.

---

It is adapted to the wants of the whole Union, and not of a section.—*New Orleans Picayune.*

X

SARGENT'S SELECTIONS IN POETRY.

---

**SELECTIONS IN POETRY,**  
FOR EXERCISES AT SCHOOL AND AT HOME.

EDITED BY EPES SARGENT.

WITH ILLUSTRATIONS BY BILLINGS AND OTHERS.

---

This beautiful collection has been received with scarcely less enthusiasm than the well-known "Standard Speaker," compiled by the same author.

NOTICES OF THE PRESS.

*From the Home Journal.*

"Many a school will be enlightened, and many a fireside enlivened by the perusal of these pure and beautiful effusions of the muse."

---

*From the Boston Traveller.*

"The editor, with an observant and practised eye, seems to have ranged the whole field of periodical literature, and to have culled therefrom a rare collection of unfading flowers. The volume is an excellent one for the use of schools, and no less valuable as a table and literary companion."

---

*From the Boston Journal.*

"Every piece in the book is a gem. British and American collections of poetry have been rifled of their choicest sweets, to make up the contents."

---

*From Godey's Lady's Book.*

"The selections are most judicious, chaste and numerous, and the illustrations beautiful."

---

*From a Roxbury (Mass.) Paper.*

"We certainly know of no collection of English poetry that at all approaches this in value."

---

*From the Boston Commonwealth.*

"The artists, in the illustrations which adorn this book, have shown a true appreciation of the thoughts of the poets."

---

*From the Cambridge (Mass.) Chronicle.*

"We believe this to be the best collection of English poetry that can be found in any single volume, of similar size."









JUN 22 1965

